

Units 1&2

(Vocabulary Revision)

Key Vocabulary

association (n)	مۇسىد/مىللىد
attachment (n)	مناحق/مترفق
average (n)	متوسط/معدل
believer (n)	مؤمن
confused (adj)	مرتبك
cultural (adj)	ثقافي
customs (n)	غابات
disabled (adj)	معاق
discipline (n) (v) (d)	انضباط/يعذب
district (n)	منطقة/مى
establish (v) (ed)	يوطد قدمه/يرسخ
fatherly (adj)	آيوي
honour (n) (y) (ed)	شرف/يشرغا يتشرف
importance (n)	اهمية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تائير/ يؤثر على
nsist (v) (ed)	يصر
aw (n)	القانون
ayer (n)	ملبقة

مداضرة ايحاضر
منتصف النعار
ورارة
نو طراز قديم
رواد
اخطة/ينطط
الشعر
علم السياسة
تاشر إمار تشر
مسلول
روتين
سكرتير
نصف دائرة
جاد/خطير
صعت أبنسكت
يفسد/يدلل
صارم احازم
اسلوب

achieve (v) (d archaeologis archaeology area (n) article (n) author (n) award (n) behaviou career (n) chat (n) (collectio commu compar compe culture demar design devel diplo discu divid

earn

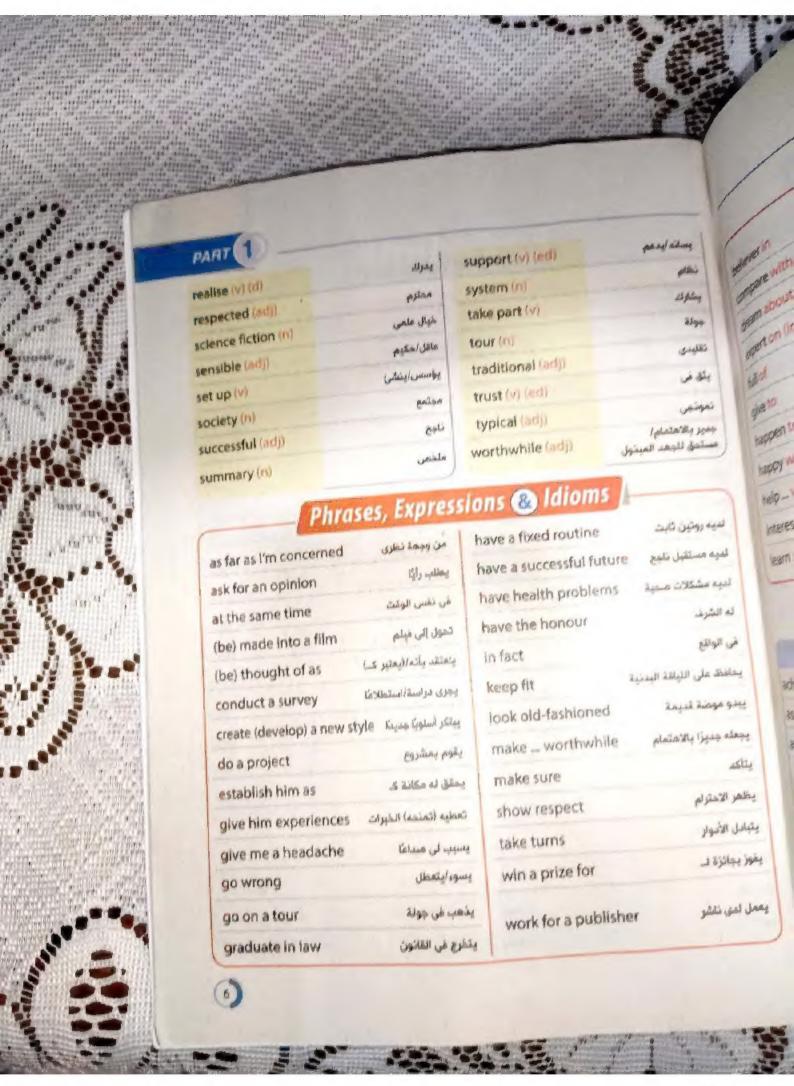
abroad (adv)

(Units (1 6. 2)

Helpful Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالطارج
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز
archaeologist (n)	عالم اثار
archaeology (n)	علم الأثار
area (n)	2.Eloia
article (n)	مقال
author (n)	مؤلف
award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/وسام/يمنح وسام
behaviour(n)	سلوك/تصرف
career (n)	حياة عملية
chat (n) (v) (ted)	دردشة/يدردش
collection (n)	مجموعة
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
culture (n)	ثقافة
demand (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/يطلب
design (n) (v) (ed)	تمميم/يممم
develop (v) (ped)	يطور ايتطور
diplomat (n)	ديلوماسي
discussion (n)	مناقشة
divide (v) (d)	يقسم
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب

Cabalary	
editor(n)	رئيس تحرير
education (n)	التعليم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
event (n)	2 ans
experiences (n)	تجارب/خبرات
fiction (n)	خيال
fixed (adj)	ثابت
fresh (adj)	طارّج /حديث
function (n)	وظيفة (طريقة أداء)
graduate (n) (v) (d)	حَريج/ بِتخرج
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يطور
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم أيحث
Introduction (n)	مقدمة
level (n)	مستوى
life (n)	حياة
literature (n)	الأدب
material (n)	مادة خام
non-fiction (n)	واقع/غير خيالي
obey (v) (ed)	يطبع
paintings (n)	رسومات
partner(n)	شريك/رمَيق
politician (n)	سياسي ارجل سياسة
practice (n)	ممارسة



13

- 20%		pō		- B		-
- 20	Sec.	min		ri	กเ	arc.
-	re:	טע	21	ш	vı	
	2.00					

believerin	مؤمن پ
compare with/between	يقارن مع
dream about/of	يعلم و
expert on (in/at)	خبیر فی
full of	ملیء پ
give to	يعطى إلى
happen to	يحدث ال
happy with	بالقوم أ
helpwith	يساعد في
interested in	معتم ب
leam about	يعرف عن

مياند/يد

إملان

بشارك

جولة

تغليف

يثق في

لديه

له ال

في

يحا

يبد

يجا

يتأ

يذ

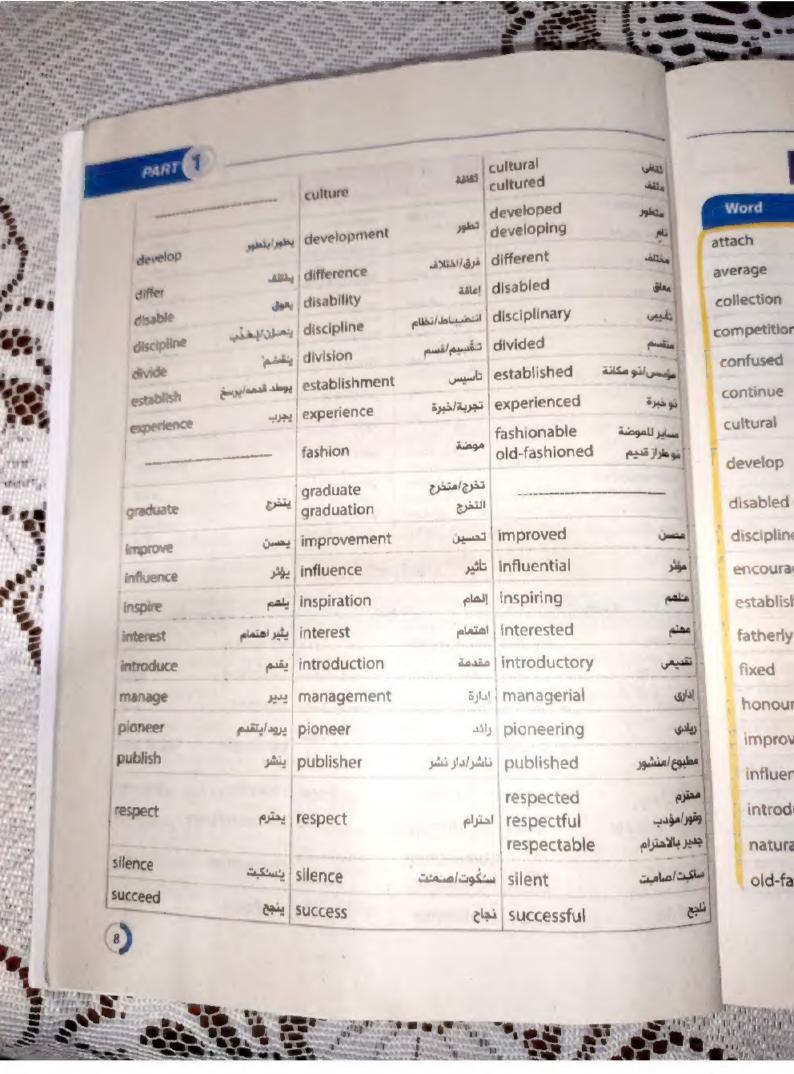
يت

ية

lecture at	يحاضر في	
look forward to + v.ing	يتطلع إلى	
responsible for	مسئول عن	
speak to	يتصث ا	
succeed in	ينجح في	
thinkof	يفكر في	
translate into	يترجم إلى	
type into/in/onto	یکتب علی (الکمبیوتر)	
workfor/with	يعمل لدى امع	
worried about	قلق عن	
write about	يكتب عن	

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	انجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
associate	يربط	association	جمعية/مؤسسة	associated	مرتبط
attach	يُلمِقَ/يُرفِق	attachment	مُلحق امْرَفْق	attached	متصل
believe	يؤمن/يصدق	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يعكن تصديقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جمعی/جماعی
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	ثواصلي
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة/مسابقة متنافس	competitive	غافسي
confide	يثق في	confidence	الثقة	confident	اثق



(Units (1 & 2)

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

ثقافی مثاف متطور نام منتلف

معاق

تأديبي

منقسم

مؤسس

نو دير

مسایر دو طرا

مؤثر

مالم

مشتم

تقدي

إداري

ريادو

عطيا

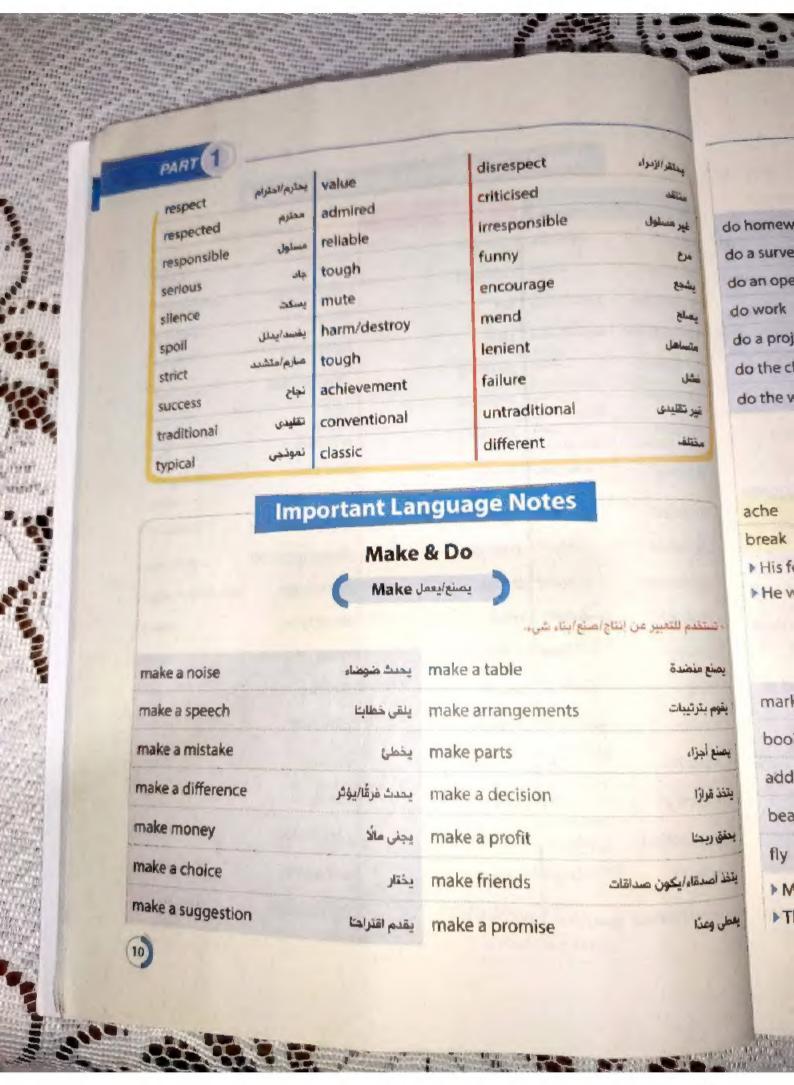
محتر وقور جدیر

ساك

ناجو

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym -	المضاد m	
attach	يصل/يرفق	connect	detach	يقصل	
average	ملوسط	ordinary	extraordinary	مميز/غير مالوت	
collection	مجموعة/تجميع	set	division	قسم/تقسيم	
competition	مثلقبية/مسايقة	race	agreement	اثفاق	
confused	مرتبث	puzzled	clear-headed	صاقى النهن	
continue	يستمز	proceed	stop	يوقف ايتوشف	
cultural	تقاقى	artistic	primitive	يدائى	
Contone		and the same of th	decrease	يخفض ايتحفض	
develop	يطور/يثطور	evolve	deteriorate	يتمور	
disabled	معاق	handicapped	healthy	بصحة جيدة	
discipline	انضباط	control	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم	
encourage	يشجع	boost	discourage	يتوهبن العيزيمنة ليتثبتط	
establish	يتشئ/يۇسس	base	destroy	تبعر	
fatherly	أيوي	affectionate	cruel	قلس	
fixed	ئابت/محس	settled	flexible	مرن	
honour	شرقه/تكريم	esteem	criticism	انتقاد	
improve	يحسن	progress	decline	يتدهور	
influence	تأثير	effect	cause	ميسه	
introduction	مقدمة	Initiation	conclusion	فاتمة	
	طبيعى	normal	unnatural	ير طبيعي	
natural old-fashioned		outdated	fashionable	عاير للموضة	

9





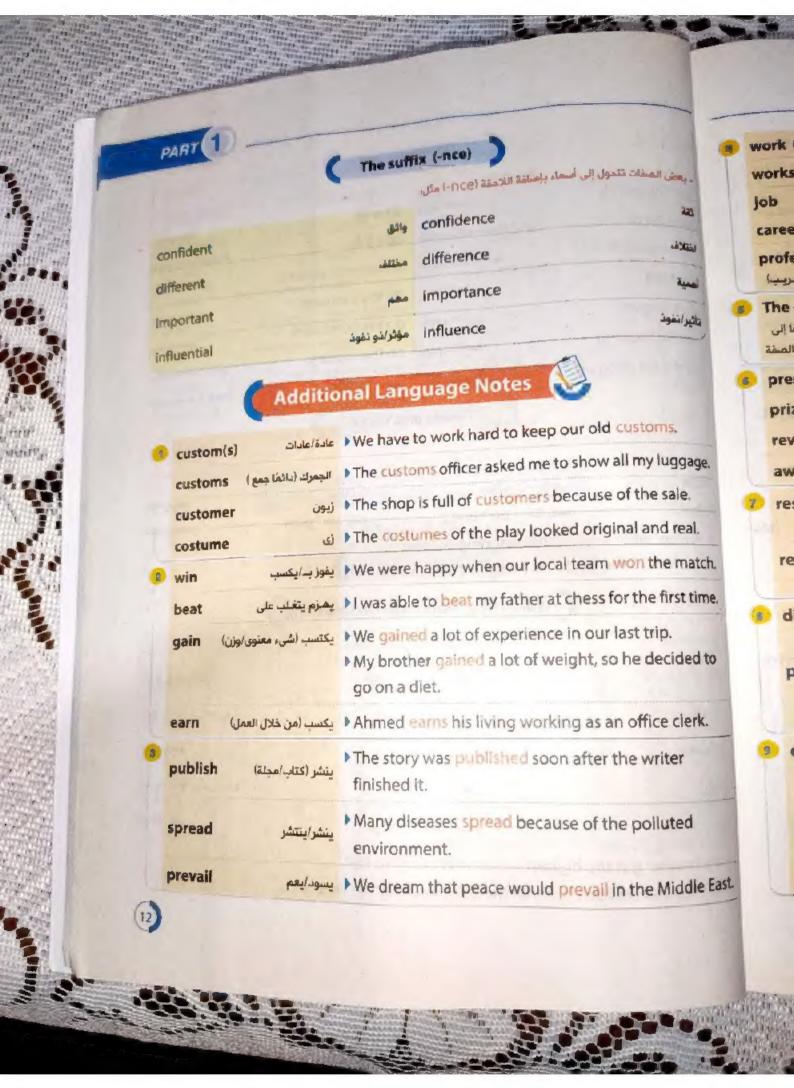
يصنع

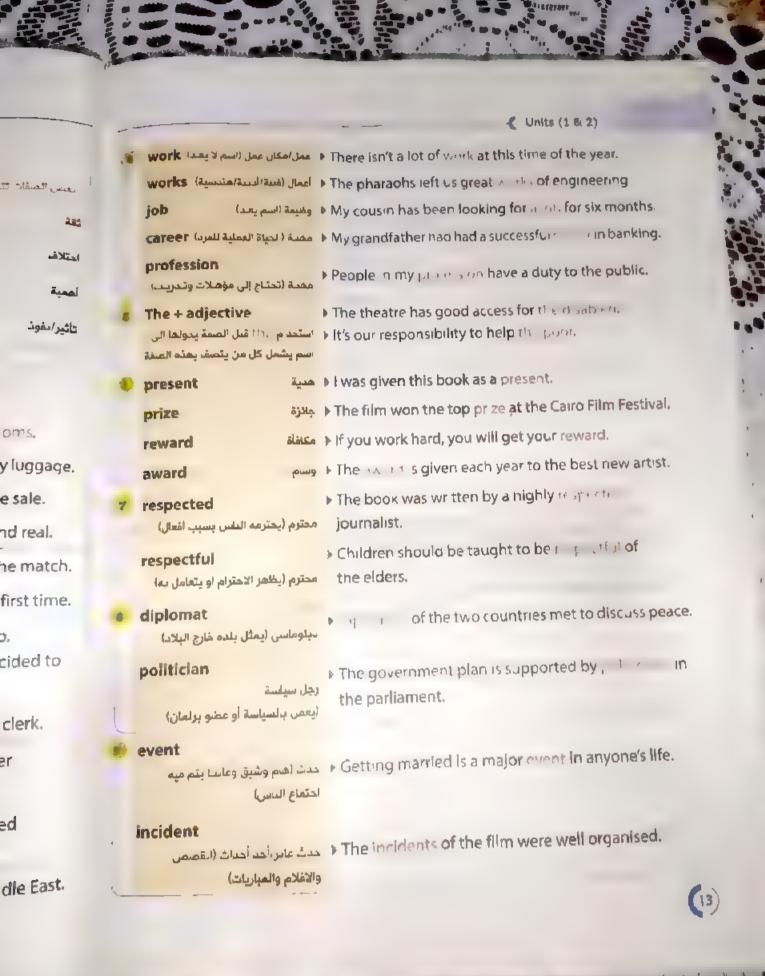
يتخد

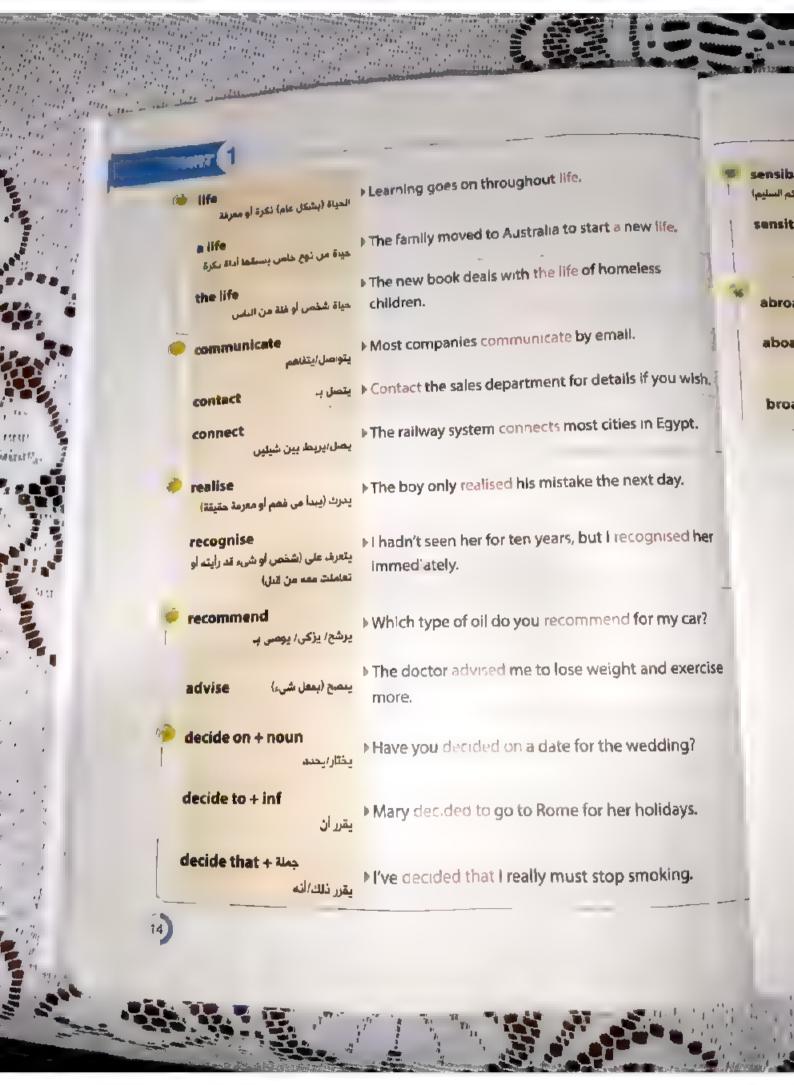
يحقق

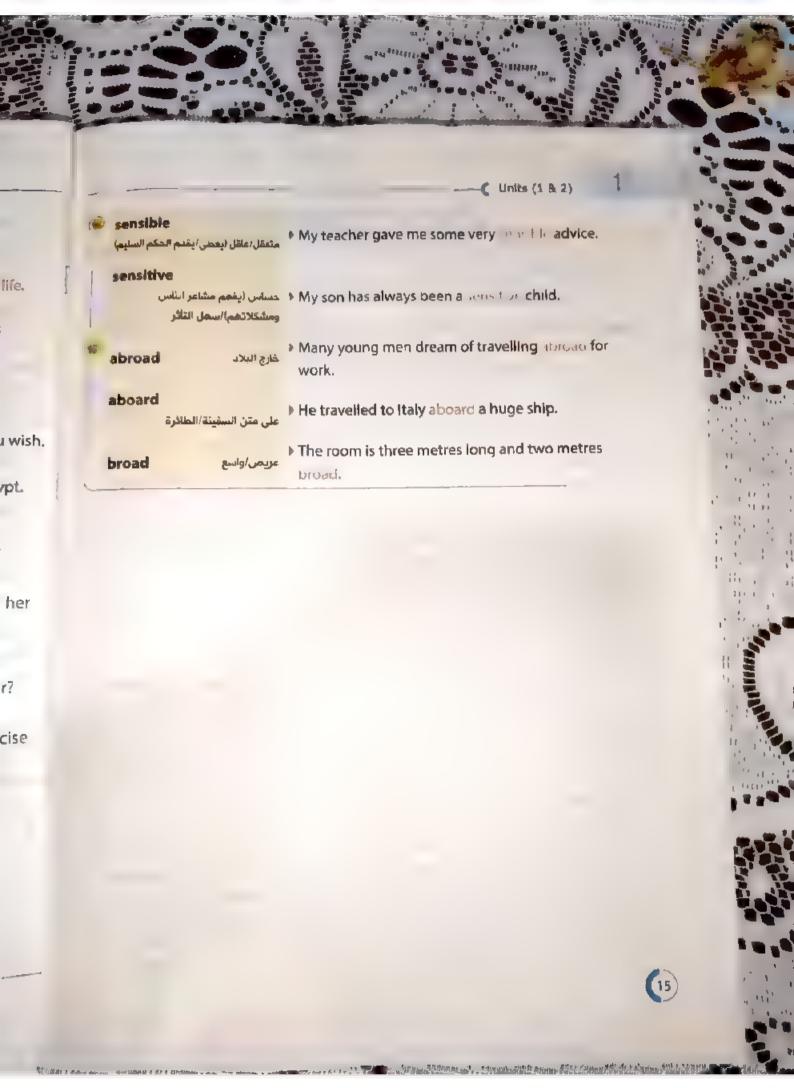
يتخذ

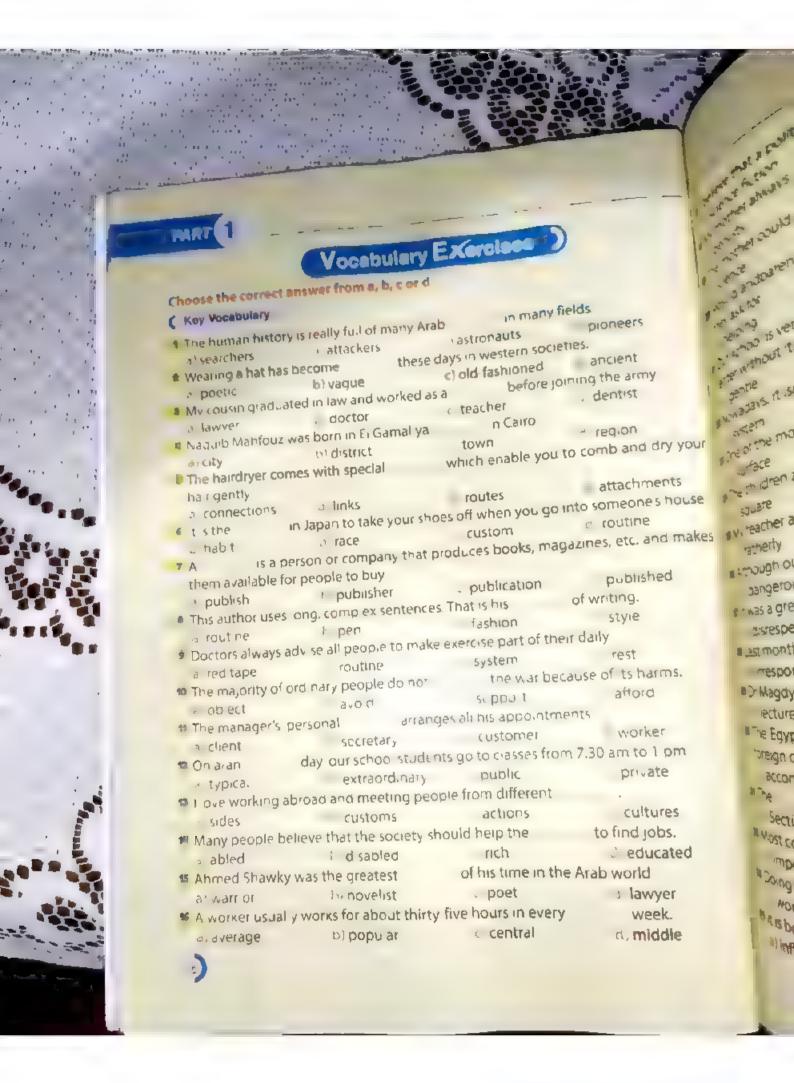
يعطر











n mean ngiess

b) result

a worthless

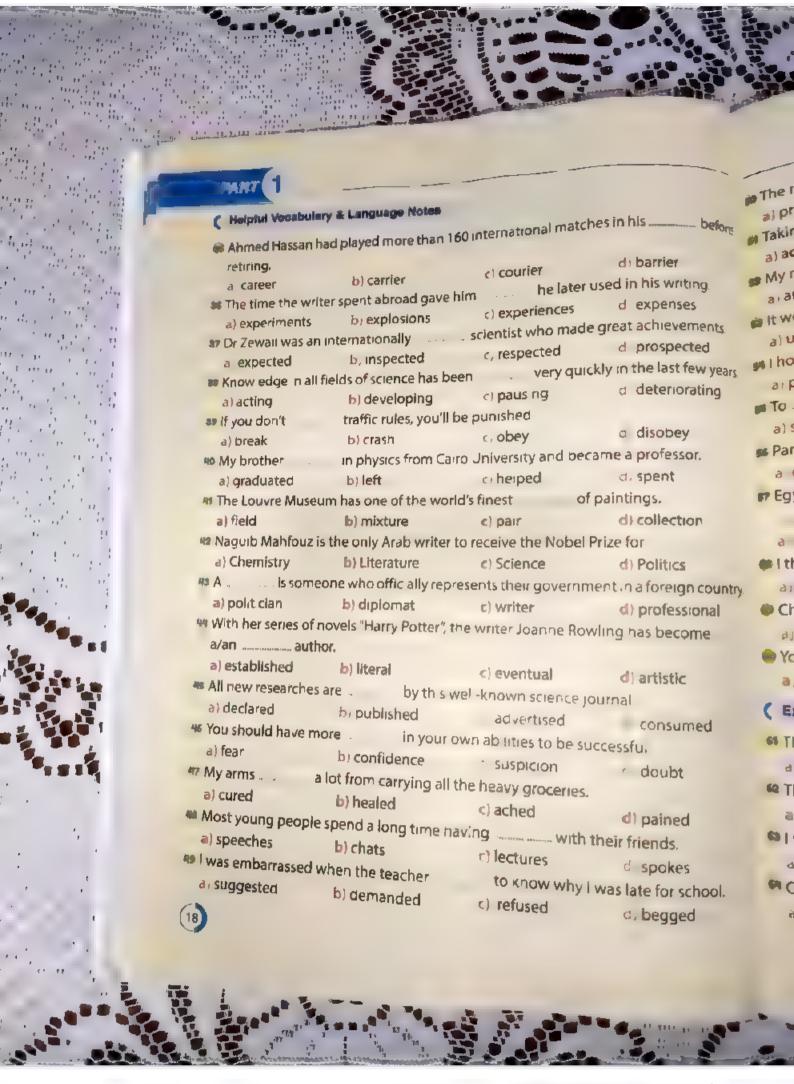
a) influence

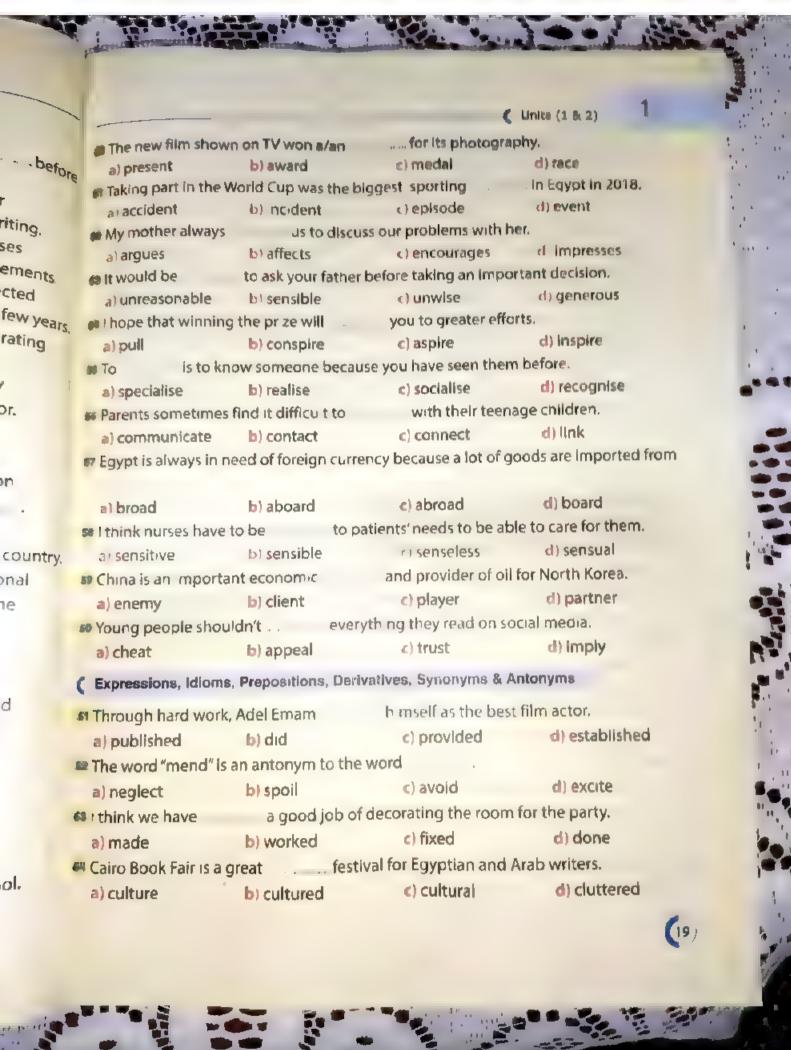
It is believed that TV advertisements what people buy to a great extent.

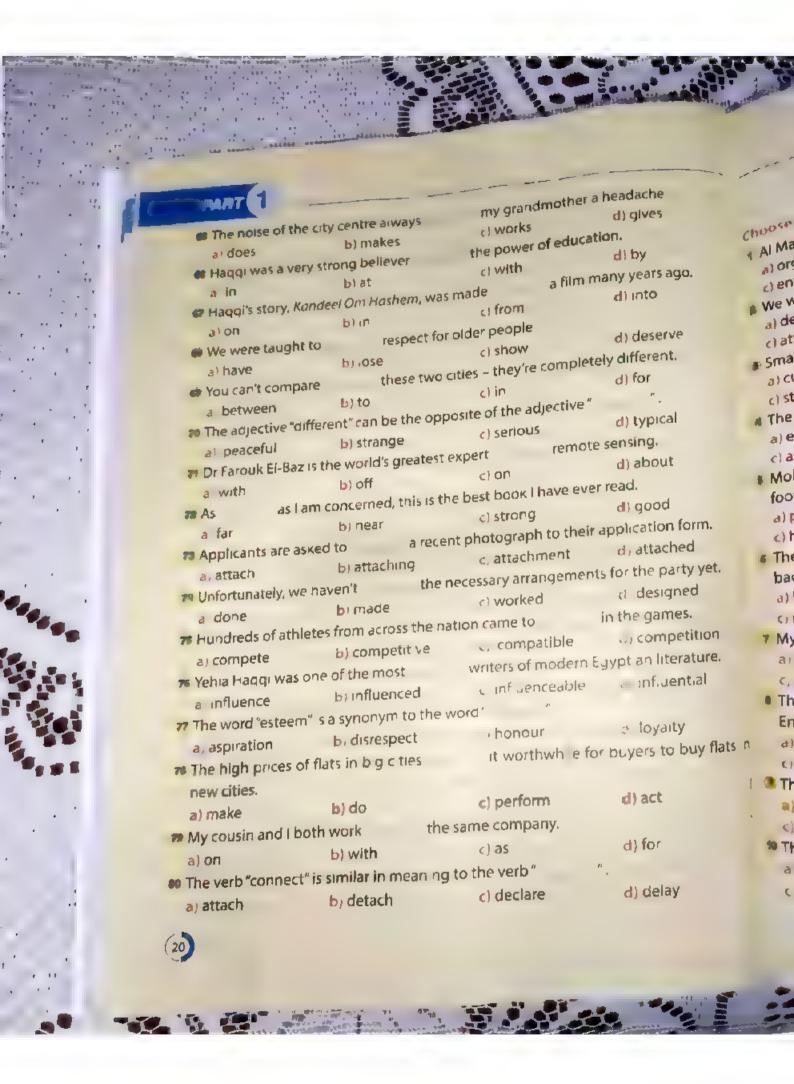
c, effect

house

makes







.... to it.

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Al Manala City has had a long . with the weaving industry.
 - a) organisation
 - c.enforcement
- we were sad to sell our old house because we all have a deep
 - a development
 - clattachment
- Smaller shops lose a lot of
 - a) custom
 - c) stock
- The police are still trying to
 - a) evaluate
 - c) abide
- Mohamed Salah received nearly every
 - footballer
 - a) protection
 - c) honour
- 6 The Egyptian authorities sometimes go to
 - back.
 - a) law
 - c) row
- 7 My father caught me smoking and gave me a long
- a) chat
- c) dialogue
- England or Ireland. a) discoverers

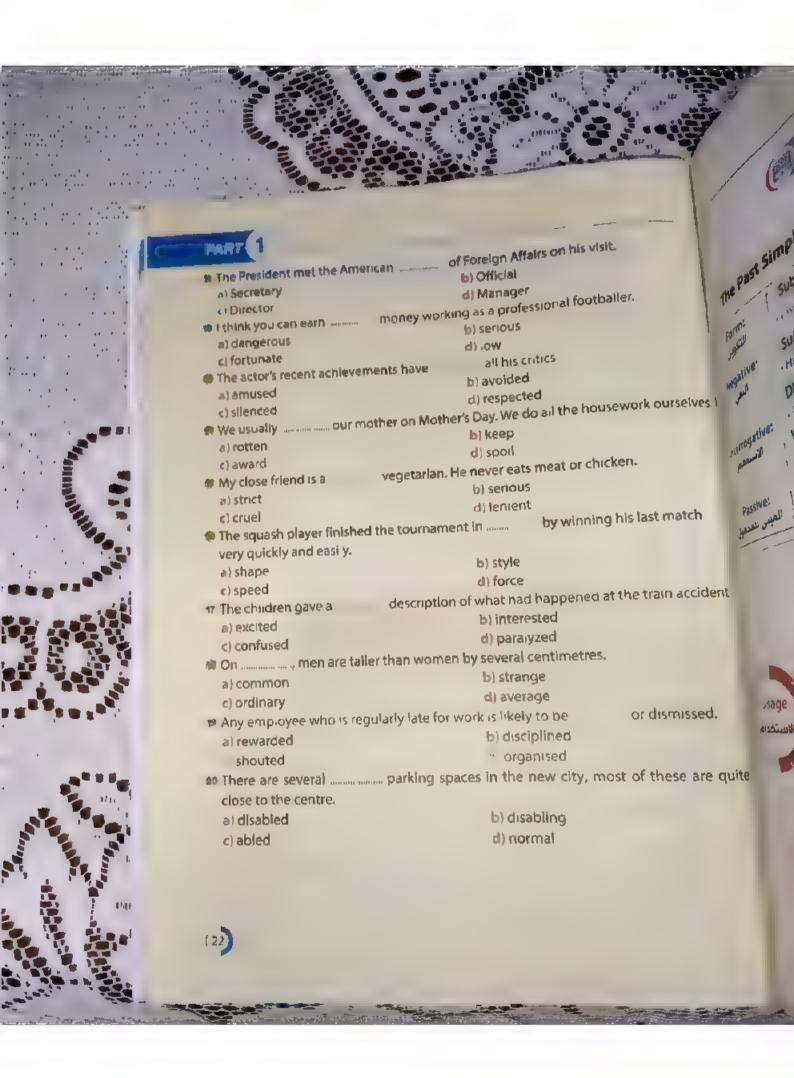
ts In

- a) habit
- The new manager got a higher salary and a more .
 - a) available c) responsible

- - b) association
 - d) foundation
 - b) prevailing
- d) astonishment
- when supermarkets open nearby.
 - b) habit
 - d) aspect
 - the identity of the dead man.
 - b) solve
 - d) establish
 - that can be given to an Egyptian
 - **b)** horror
 - d) affection
 - to get the stolen monuments
 - b) station
 - d) respect
 - about the dangers of it.
 - b lecture
 - d) debate
- who settled in the American West in the 19th century were mostly from
 - ro specialists
 - di pioneers
- The company keeps a copy of all their business letters as a matter of

 - d) routine
- position at the company.

 - d) avoidable





Grammar Revision

Unit (1)

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضى البسي

Form: التكوين

التصريف الثاني انفعل + Subj.

I watched the match yesterday.

Negative: النقى

Subj. + didn't + inf.

· He dic mobile phones 10 years ago.

Did + subi. + inf.?

Interrogative: الاستفهام

· Maher II • te you to the party last Friday?

Wh-word + did + subj. + inf.?

• Where did you find your book?

Passive:

Obj. + was/were + P.P.

الميثى للمجمول

Usage

الاستخداق

-The Pyramids were part by the ancient Egyptians.

٠١- حيث ثم وانتمى في الماضي ويوجد ما يدل عليه من كلمات.

It rained heavily yesterday.

٧- حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي ولا يوجِد ما يدل عليه من كلمات (الماضي البديمي).

▶The ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.

٣- عادات الماميي (وقين أن تكون عادات في الماضي كالث عادات في المضارع)

People in the past traveiled on camels.

When I was on holiday, I wen, to the beach every day.

 ٤- ئستمدم (أ) عادات لماضي وليس لحدث مند زمن قريب ولم يكن عادة in the street.

When I was young, !-

▶ He (e d :) went to the sports club three times last week

٥- لسرد أحداث أو قصص في الماضي.

Once, we saw a man in

٦- يستحدم عاليًا مع الكلمات الأتية

yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Friday, etc, two i video etc. months ago, then, when, How long ago?, in 1900/2000/2000 to other day, etc.

I fell off my bike the other day.

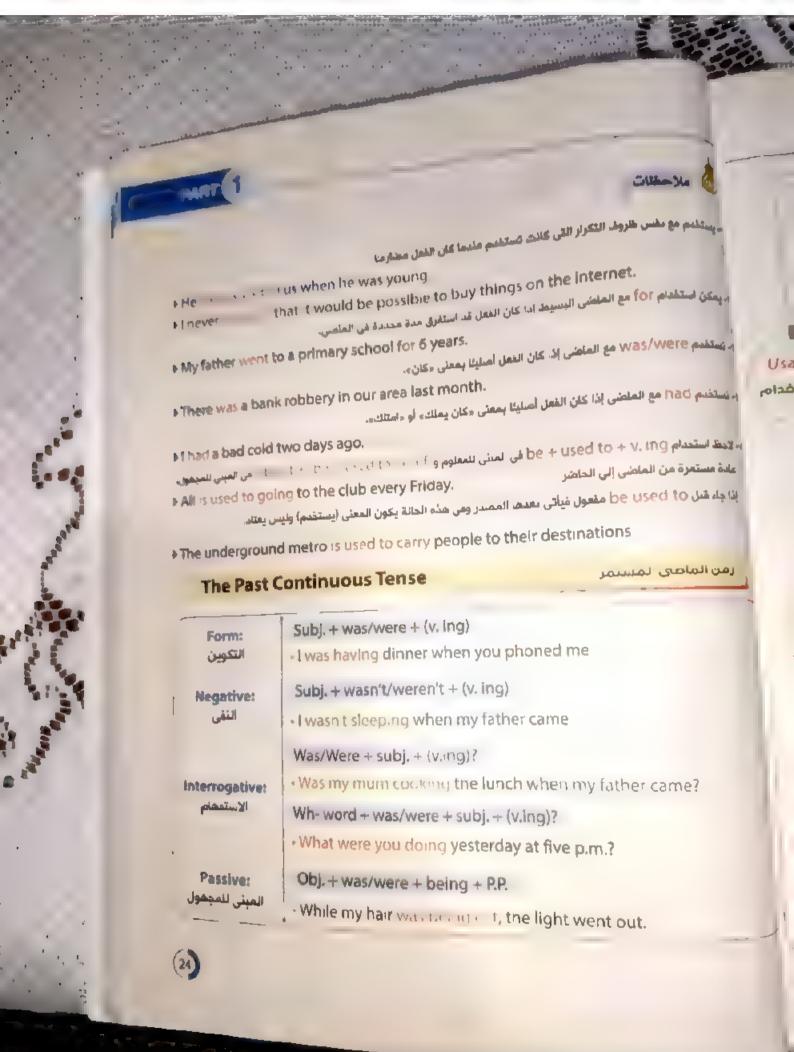
سد بصعة أيام .

th

selves

dent.

ujte



C Links (1 8.2)

ا ١٠- حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي مع بيان مثرة الاستمرار

It was raining all day yesterday.

From 3 to 5 yesterday I was helping my father.

٧- عبد تحديد وقت معين في الملشي.

▶I was watching the match at 7 p.m. yesterday.

٣- حدث كان مستمرًا في العاصي ميدما قطعه حدث أغر.

• (While/As/Just as/When) she was cooking, she burnt her hand, عدثان كانا مستمرين في العاضي ولم يقطع أي منحما الأخر.

▶ While I was studying, Ali was watching TV.

يمكن أن يأتي بعد When الماض البسيط أو المستمر حسب المعنى.

I was walking in the street when I saw the thief

When I was walking in the street, I saw the thief.

 لا نستحيم being بعد Was لانها فعل ليس حركياً مثل معال الملكية والرأى والحب والكراهية. والشعور والإحساس،

▶ While I was ill, I took much medicine.

٧- تستخدم ٧، ing بعد While عندما يكون فاعل الجستين ولميزا.

▶ While staying in England, Ahmed learnt English.

ال تستخدم الاسم بعد و١٠ : 'De ولا نستخدم الاسم بعد و١١٠ - ١٠٥

During the night, a burglar broke into my flat.

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Subj + had + P.P. Form:

- Load . - - - - - - - my homework before I went to sleep.

Subj. + hadn't + P.P. Negative:

my work when Ali phoned me. الثقي

> Had + subj. + P.P.? . red to a long the office?

Interrogative: Wh-word + had + subj. + P.P.? الاستفمام

Where had you been before you arrived?

Obj. + had been + P.P. Passive:

• The dinner had been prepared by 7 pm. yesterday. المبنى للمجهول

ر ـ يمكن استخدام ٢ were مستخدم Usage

الاستخداق

التكوين

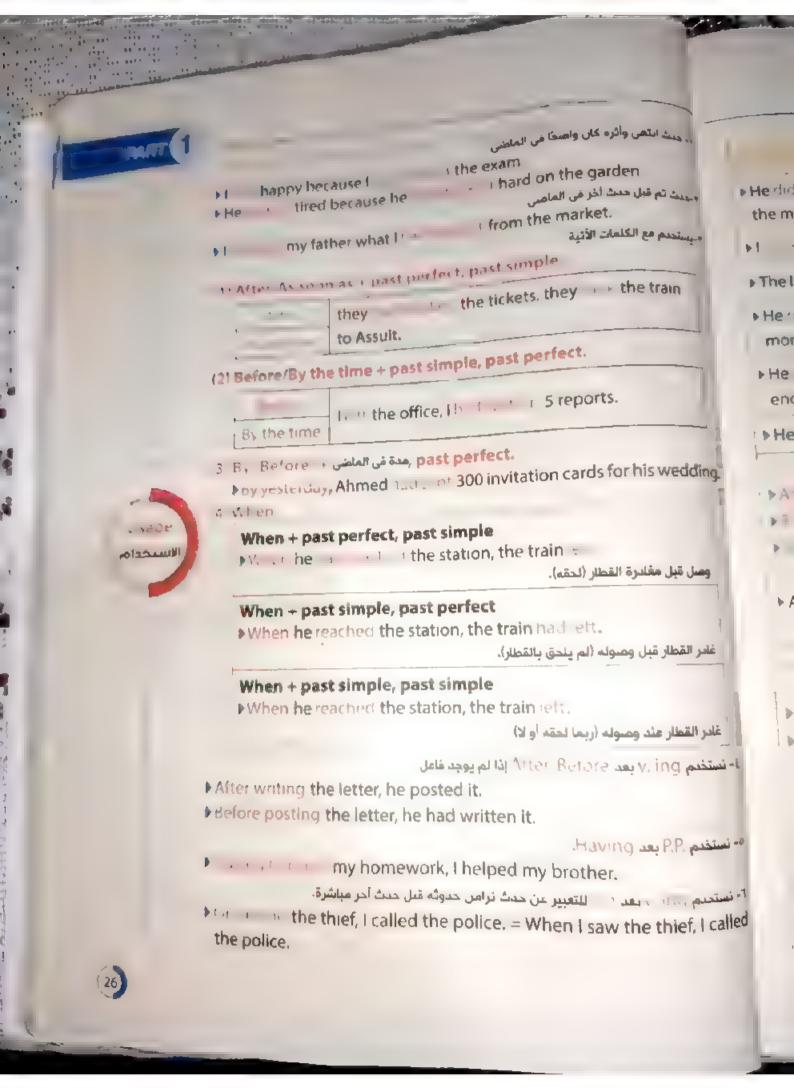
ن لاحظه استخدام عندة مستمرة ه

had مريتندم

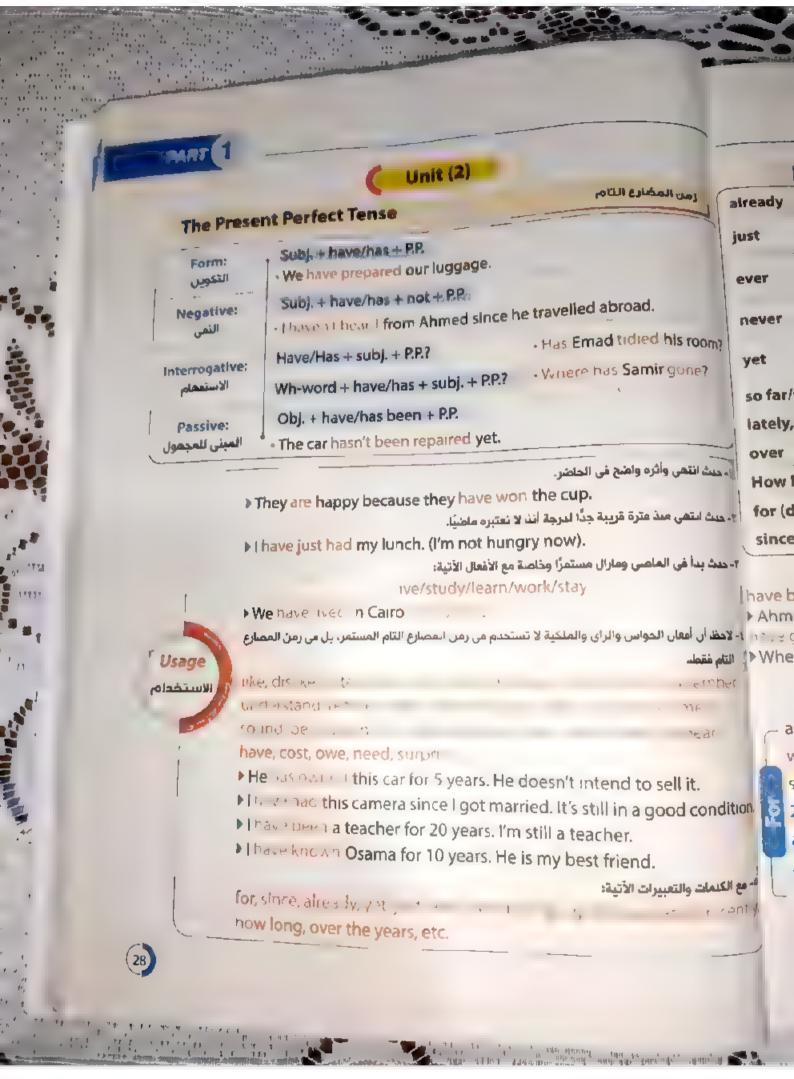
ر بستخدم مع تمس

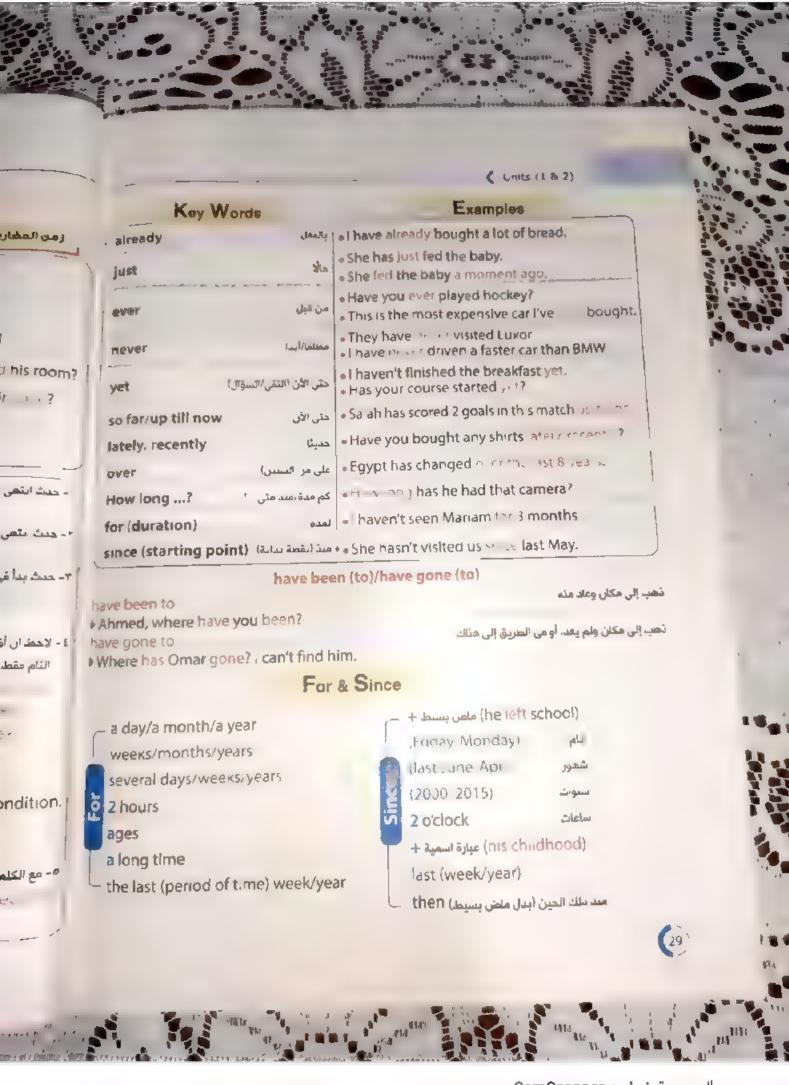
ادًا جاء قبل 🕜

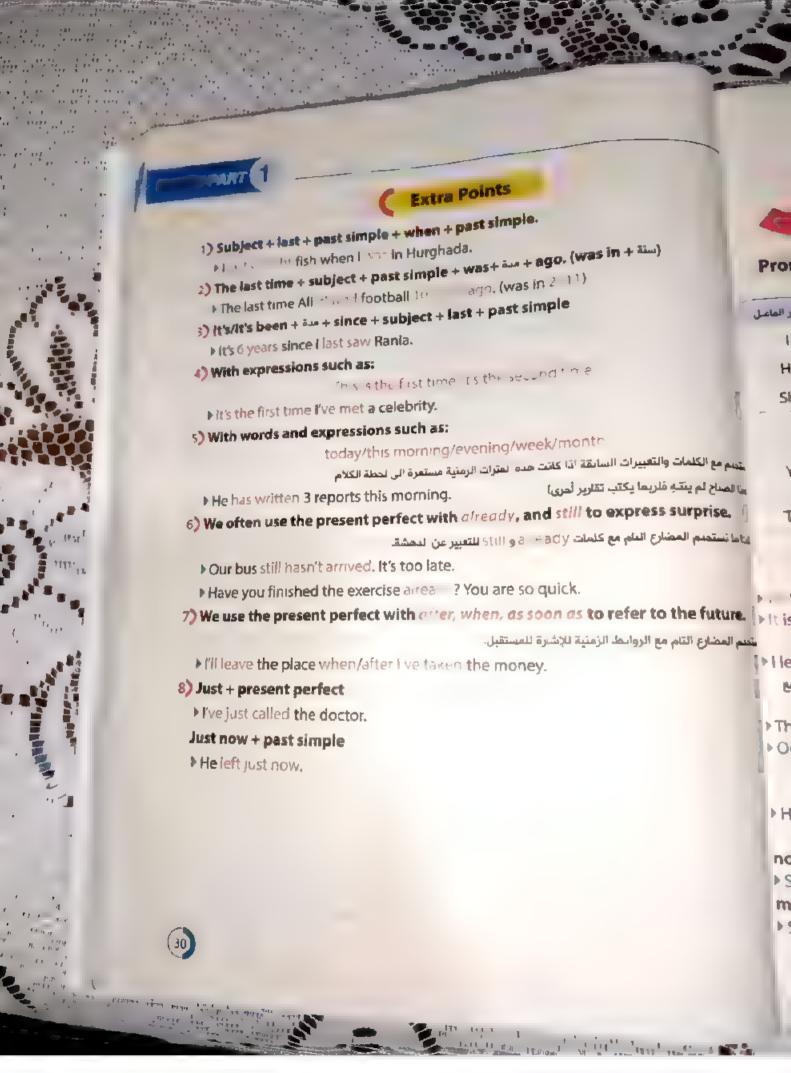
رمن الماء

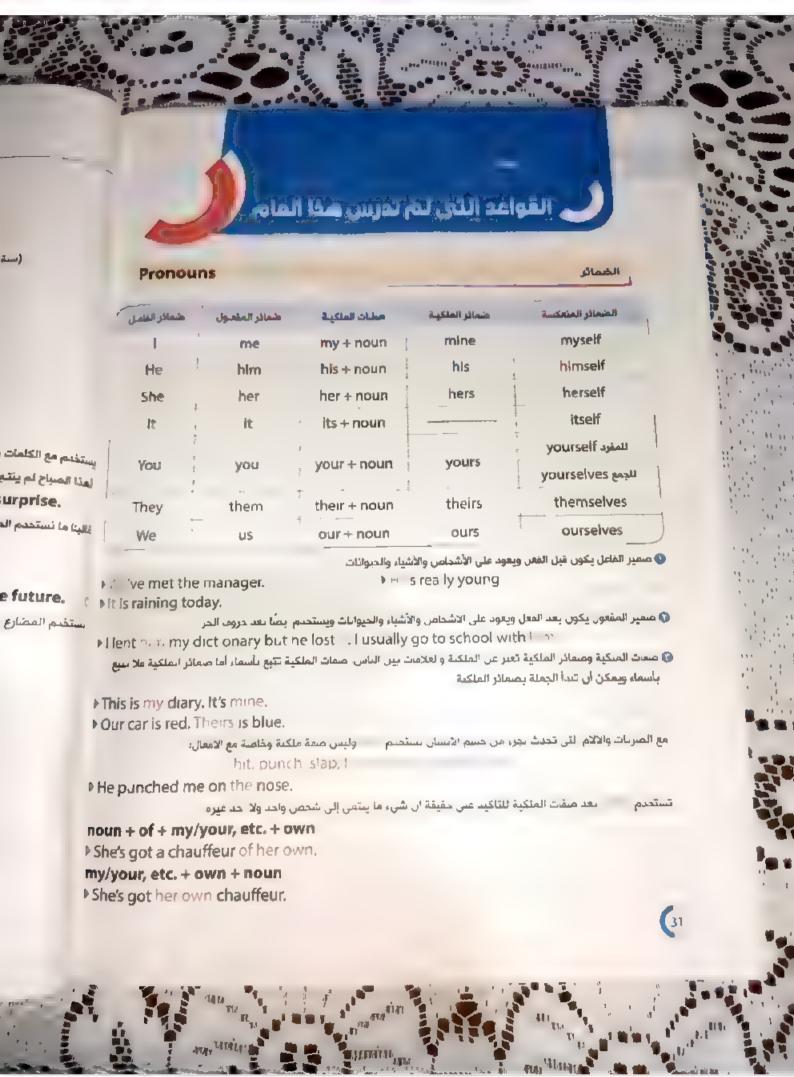


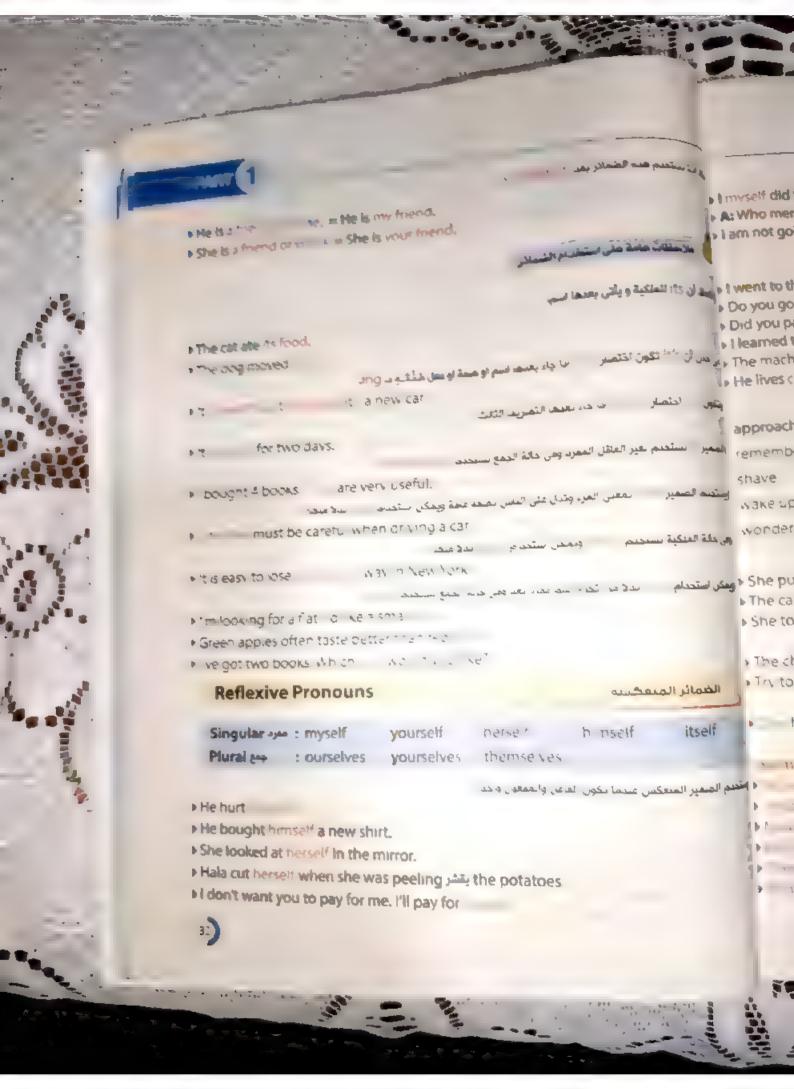
€ Units (1 & 2) Until/till He is the car it he is it is ملص تام 🕴 🗆 تا تا 🛨 + مامن بسیط مند the money. wasn't wait the exam مبنى للمجهول The letter it 1 200 % feet. He to leave ... he at the إثيات قبلها يعطى معنى النهي money. He the car until he tind cave if النفي يد couldn't enough money. ماض بسيط عثبت قبله ويكون الحبث الأول. ▶He in Cairo he in 2007 ٧- عندما لا يكون هناك عارق زمني بمكن استحدام الحدثين مي الماضي النسيط. . the flat, he took off his shoes) he he he he closed the door. he pald the driver, he got out of the taxi. ٨- إذا كان هناك اكثر من حدثين مالاول منهم ماض تام والناقي ماض بسيط أو مستمر his money. back home, he: that someone After he ٩- لم يكد حتى الماضي التلم عبي شكل سؤال إذا كانت م No sooner/Hardly/Scarce أول الكلام، cooking we started to eat. cooking we started to eat اذا لم تكن ون الكلام لا تقيم القعن المساعد على الماعل. He had no sooner known the truth than he told me. لاحظ القاعدة الإثبة: اt was only when (it wasn't until, + ماص بام + tn it was only when the money her the car. ▶he = It wasn't until

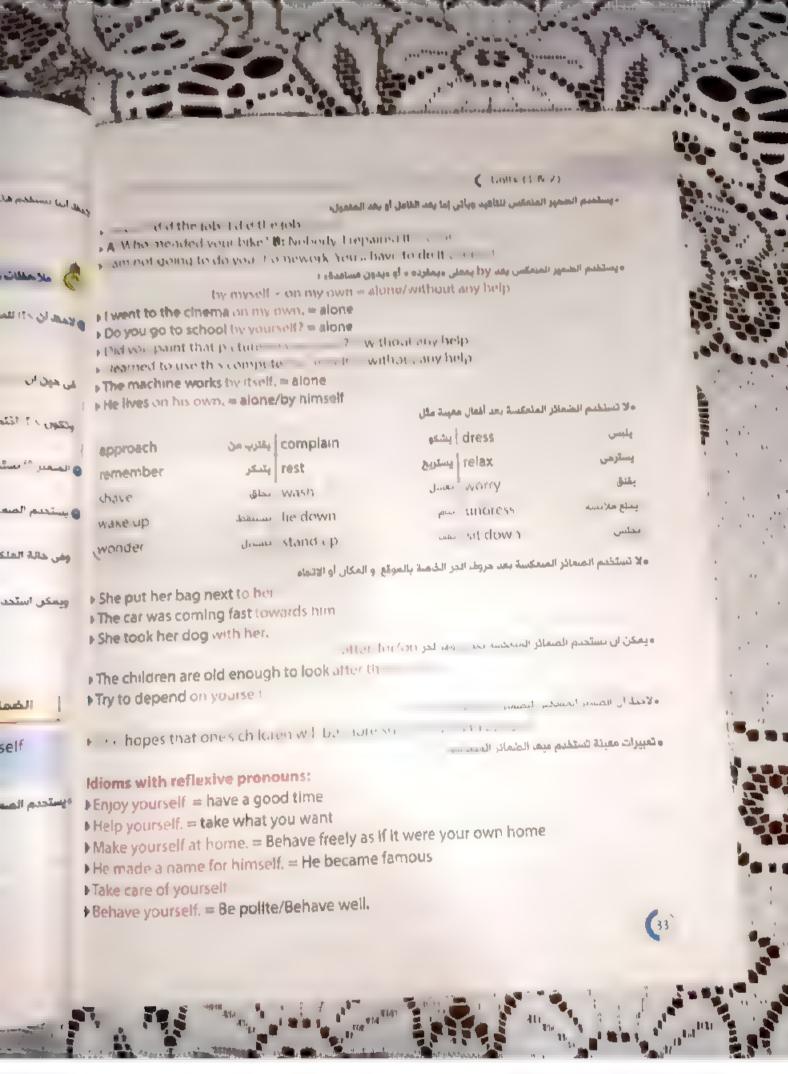


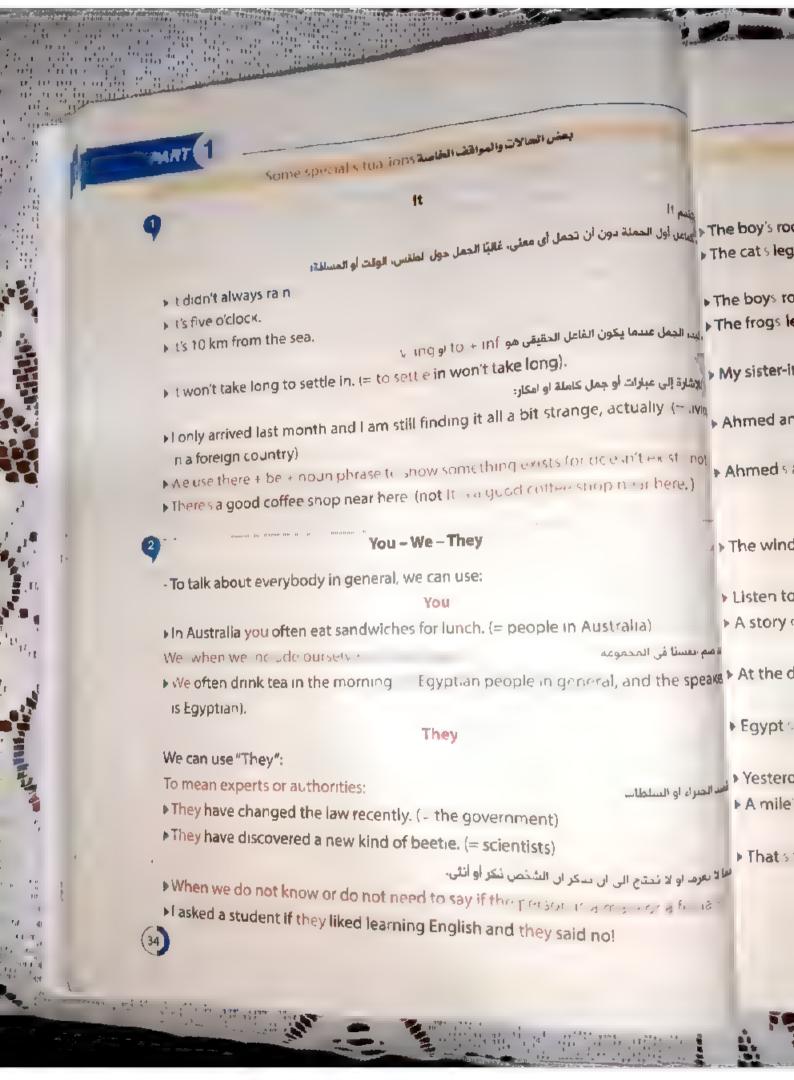












("t/s\/of) authory hold divin

🕳 المنكية يد 🤄 و - الإنسان والعيوان: -

الاسم المقرد أو الجمع الذي لا ينتهي بـ المد ():

- السماء الأطفال The children names المطفال
- كيل المصان The horse tall نيل المصان

الاسم المفرد أو الجمع الذي ينتمن بـ ﴿ يَأْمُدُ [] الْأَمَا بعد ١٠

- فصل المتيات The girl class
- الكلاب The dog barking الكلاب

هناك أسماء مركبة تلفق . أقر الاسم المركب

مىرل روجة احى .house مىرل روجة احى .www.

The boy - room styli has

The boy room shirt ins

The frog legs established

The cat : leg that du

- بمثلك الاثنان سيارة واحدة .car ومثلك الاثنان سيارة واحدة .car
- ه Ahmed : and Osama s cars. كل واحد يملك سيارة
- بوامد المبرل the house بوامد المبرل شيء واحد من كثير
- اعنية من أعاني عمرو . Amr من عمرو المنابق الم
- فصة من قصص طه دسين Taha Hussein فصة
- مي عبادة طبيب الاسس At the dentist مي
- علمه مصر Egypt capita = the capital Egypt مصر
- منازاة أمس Yesterday match
- تمشية ميل A mile < walk ليه عشية

teamer.

ale.

▶That the daughter + one ← my relatives.

بعد أخر اسعين أو أكثر لإظمار الحيازة المشتركة:

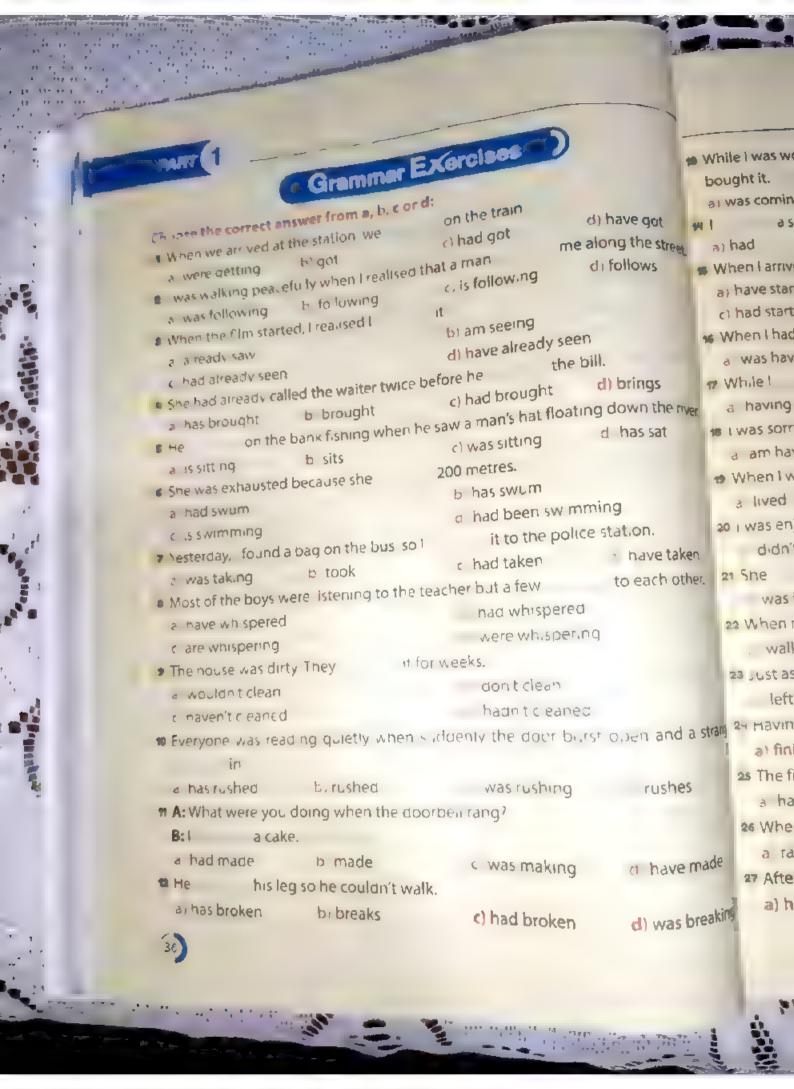
بعد كل أسم لإظمار الحيازة الذردية:

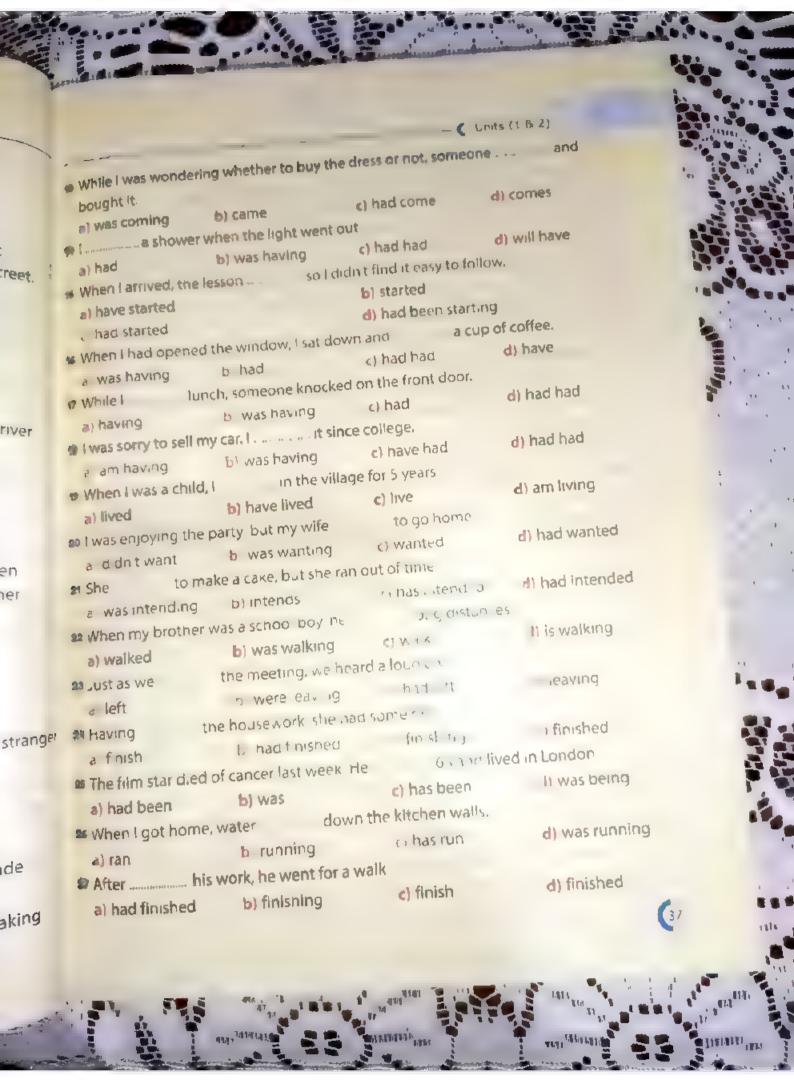
😉 الملكية للجماد بـ (١٥)

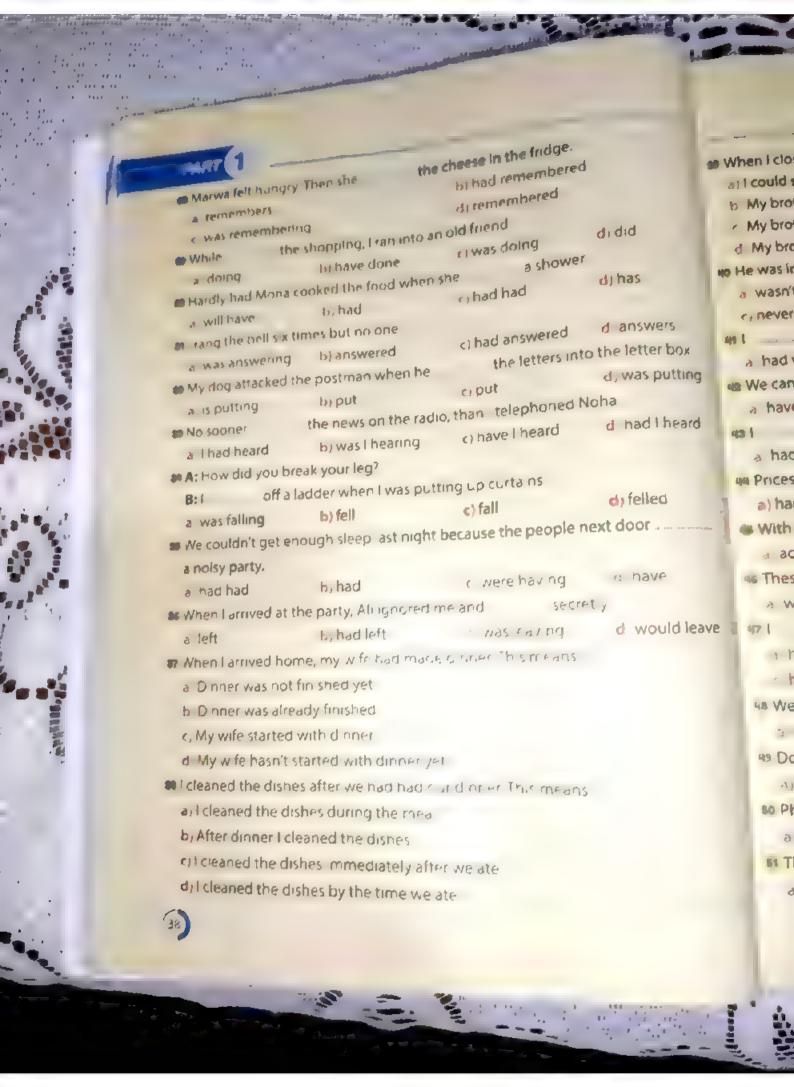
نستخدم 🌣 ثم الإسم الجماد أو الاسم المجرد (المعنوي)

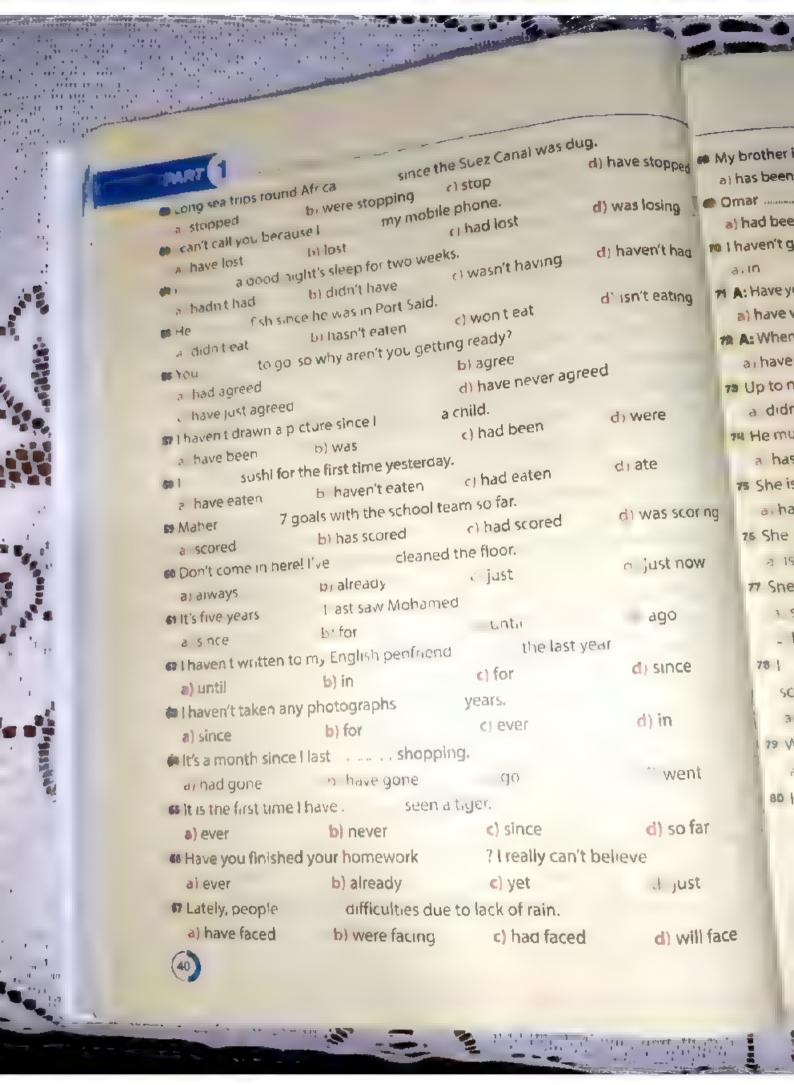
- € کمی النجاح The price | success
 - 🥥 تستخدم صعير الملكية أو حالة المنكية
- A friend mine.
- A car yours.
- ادا أصیمت للوصیمة تعطی لمکان لدی یعمن منه مثل.
 - ▶ At the baker |عدد محل الحيار (المرن)
 - 💿 نستخدم 💮 أو مع الأماكن والعنظمات:
 - منظل المس The building entrance
 - 🕥 الزمن والمسافات تأخذ 📗 و
 - عمل يومين Two day work عمل يومين
 - 🔇 نستحدم 🕟 مع الأشخاص في العبارات الطويلة:

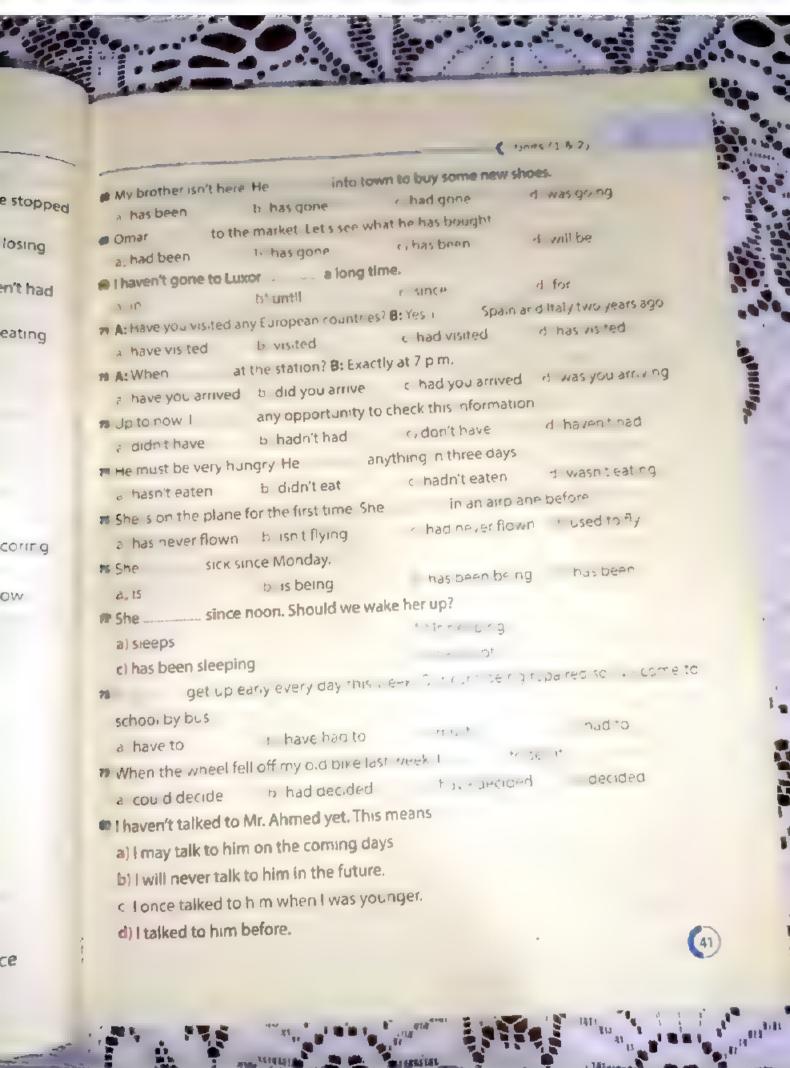
35)

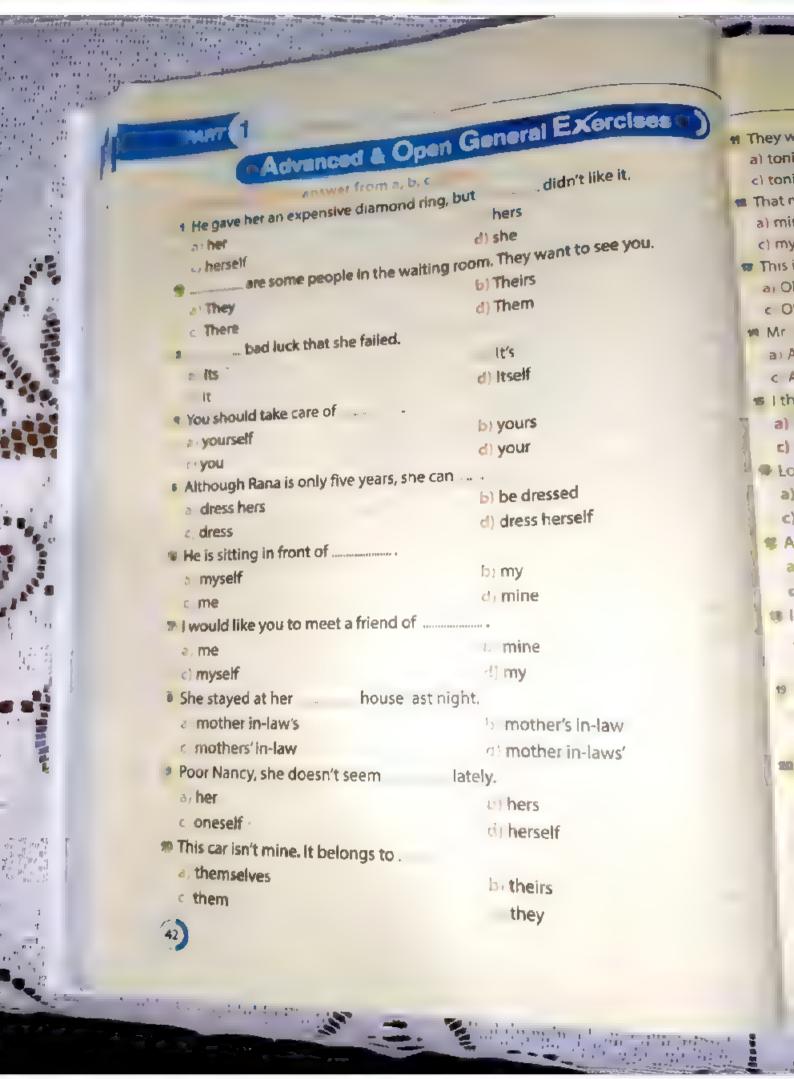


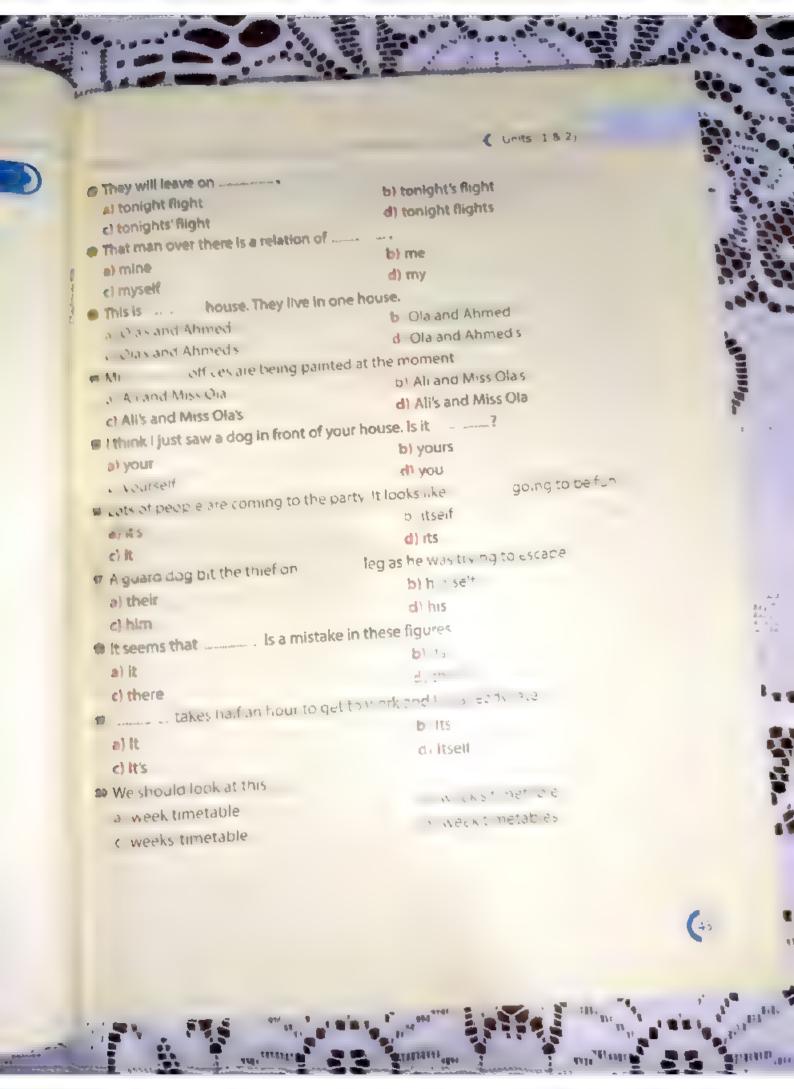


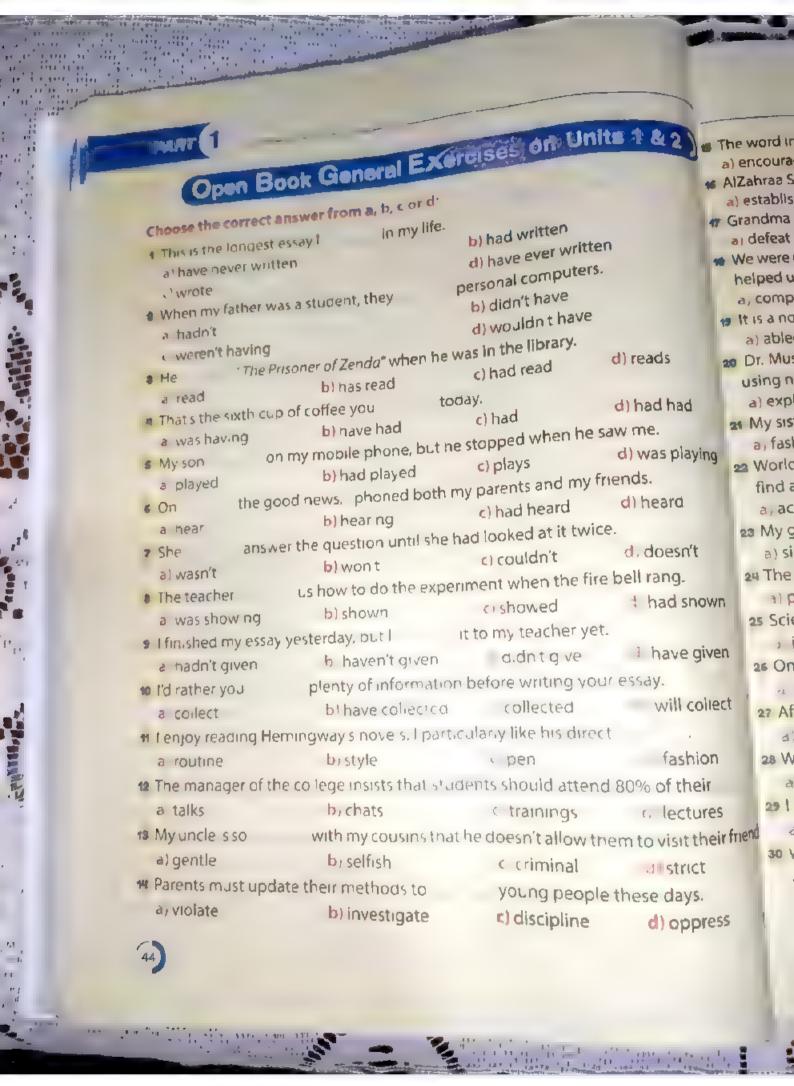


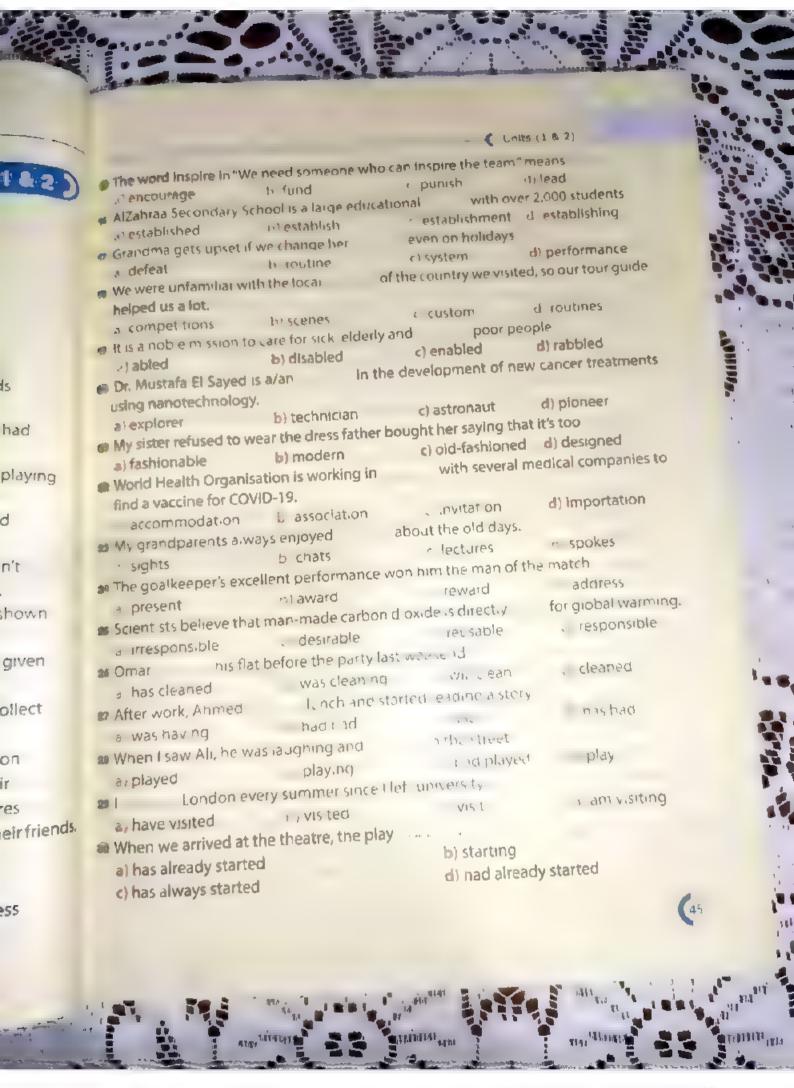












יום

di

C Units (1 % 2)

The article suggests that in order to discipline children, parents first of all should

- a) find an effective way to correct their children's behaviour
- b) treat them as harshly as possible
- c) stop beating them

iour at

n calm

e is to

shing

me is

How

most

k as

ion.

ber

Dest

role

ght

to

nd

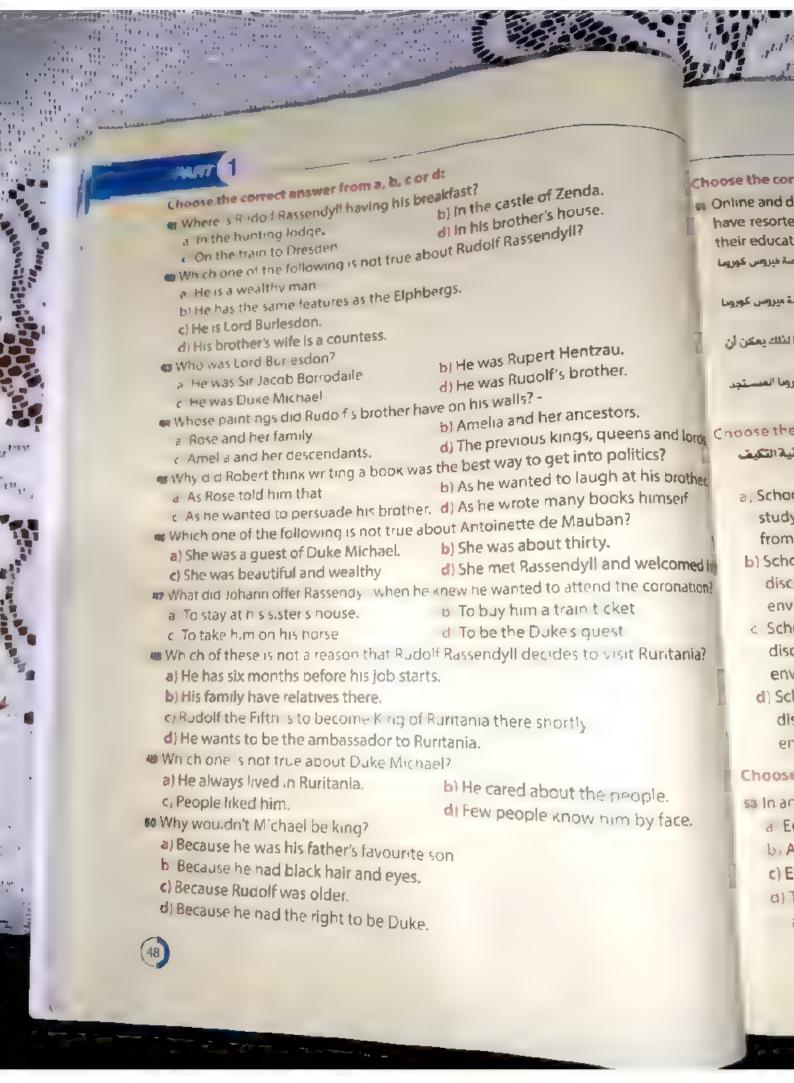
ine.

?

g.

- d) teach them how they have to behave themselves
- we learn from this article that
 - a) only naughtiness attracts attention
 - b) preventing children from watching their favourite TV program is an ideal science.
 - c) giving positive feedback for good behaviour is necessary
 - d) children's naughty behaviour is something good
- m Instead of punishing children, parents should
 - a) encourage them to follow the necessary rules
 - b) give them everything they ask for
 - c) give them negative feedback
 - d) praise them all the time
- * According to the article, what happens when parents get angry too often?
 - a) Their children become frightened of them.
 - b) Their children stop taking notice of them
 - c) Their children do what they want at once-
 - d) Their children follow the rules of a good behav our
- # A suitable title to this passage would be
 - a) "How to punish naughty children effectively"
 - b) "How to set role models for children"
 - c) "How to discipline naughty children"
 - d) "How to reward good children"
- How do you think role play can help discipline children?
 - a) Children can have roles to play at school
 - b) Children are encouraged to tell their parents about their needs
 - c) Children can understand why they are punished.
 - d) Children can imitate their parents

47



Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Online and distance learning is becoming more and more important. Most countries have resorted to it in the novel Coronavirus cris s so that students could complete their education at home.
 - يصبح النعلم عبر الاسترنث والتعلم البعيد أكثر و كثر أهمية ولقد لجات معظم البلدان إلى دلك مي أزمة قصة غيروس كوروبا لدلك يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم في مثارلهم.
 - يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترمت وانتعلم عن بعد اكثر وأكثر أهمية اولجنات معظم البلدان إلى دلك منى أرمه ميروس كوروبا المستجد لكي يتمكن الطلاب من إكمان تعليمهم في منازلهم.
 - يصبح التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت اكثر أهمية، ولقد بجات معظم البلدان الى دلك في ارمة ميروس كورود الدلب يمكن المتلاب من اكمال تعليمهم في منازلهم.
 - بصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم عن بعد أكثر اهمية ولحات معهم التلدان إلى دلك في ارمة مبروس كورونا المساتحد ولذلك يمكن أن يتمكن الضلاب من إكمال تعليمهم في منازلهم.

Choose the correct English translation:

rds

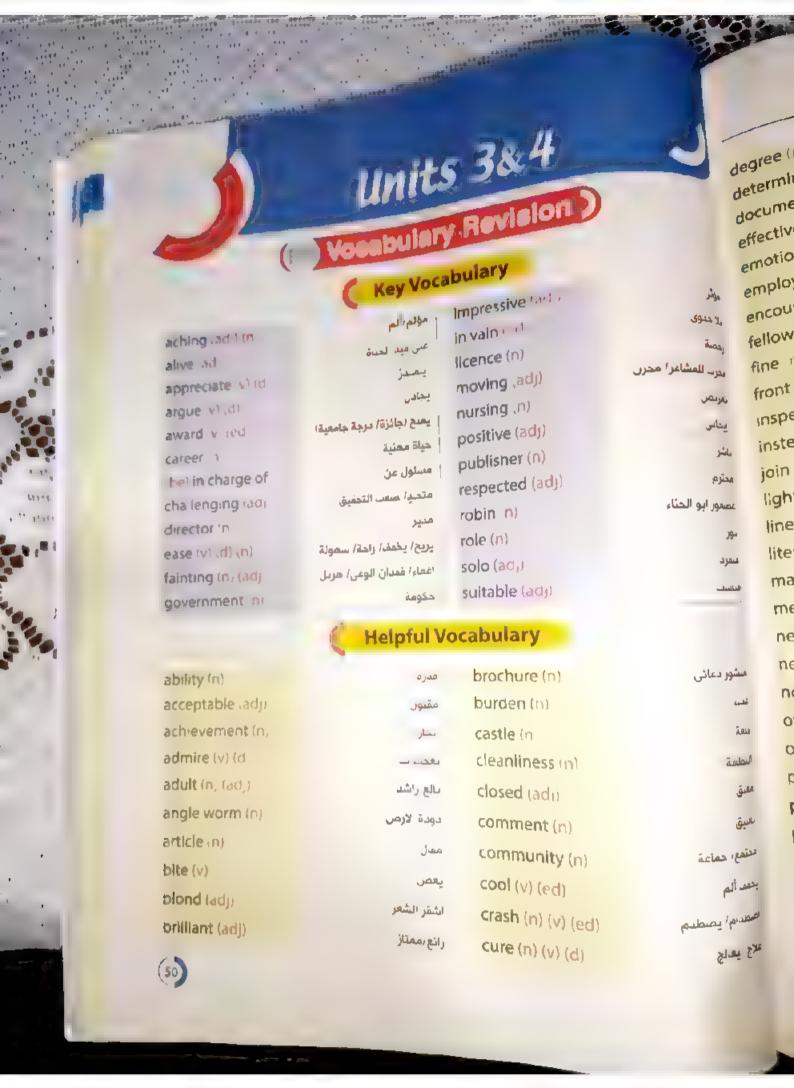
er.

him

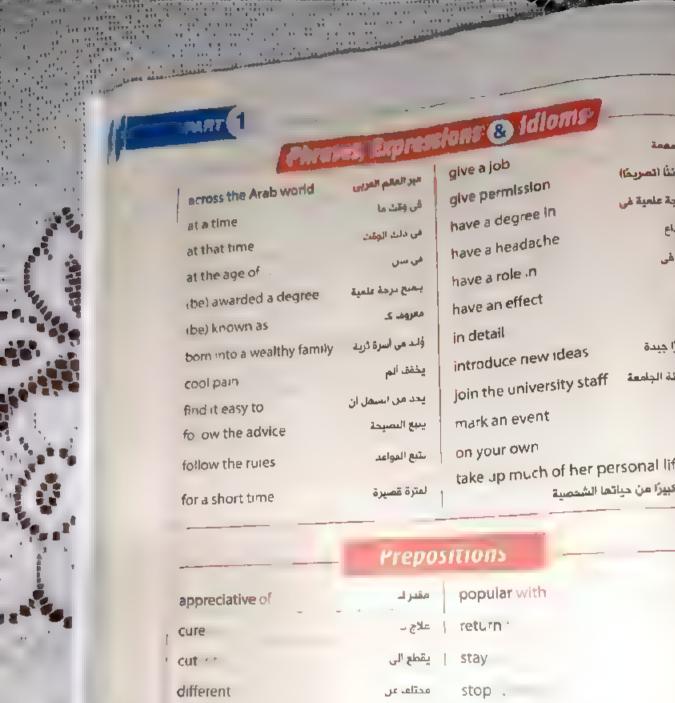
- 52 الحياة المدرسية مهمة جدا في حياة المره، لأنها توظر فرمية للدراسة والانصباط، يتعلم الطالب ايضًا كيفية التكيف على الحياة مع اشحاص من بينان مختلفة.
- a School life is very important in the person's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student is a so learned how to adapt to live with people from different environments.
- b School life is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student is learned how to adapt to living with people from different environments.
- c; School I fe is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. The student also learns how to adapt to living with people from different environments
- d) School life is very important in one's life, as it shows an opportunity for study and discipline. The student also learns how to adapt to live with people from different environments.

Choose the correct answer:

- so In an essay about "Education" which of the following sentences can be a topic sentence?
 - a) Education en ightens, empowers, and creates a positive development
 - b, As explained, there are three distinct types of Education.
 - c) Education is a process of learning through which we acquire knowledge.
 - d) Therefore, it is highly important to educate the children and youth to live a productive life.



			(Units (364) . 7
	degree	anja	poet	مثاغر
	determined	مصمم عاقد العرم	poetry (n)	انشعر
	document	وليقة/ مستبد	popular (adj)	مشعور محبوب
	effective	مؤثر معال	position (n)	موقع؛ مكانة
	emotions in	مشاعر	present (v) (ed)	ومنقد
يا رويوي	employ (v) (ed)	موظف	qualification (n)	مؤهل
	encourage (v) (d)	بشجع	race (n)	فسناق
seline of	fellow (n)	شخض	raw (adj)	ميءا غير مطفى
		عزامة، يغرم	rescuer (n)	maña
Links		مقدمة / جنهة	research assistant (n,	بحث معيد (في الجامعة)
nes	inspector in	ممتش	respond (v) (ed)	يستحيد/ يقوم برد فعل
34	instead ad-	مدلاً من ذلك	review (n)	مقال مقدى
P)Sag	join \	يلتحق د	rhyme (n) (v) (d	فليبة يسهم
يهمور ايو ۱۱	lighten /s	بضيء	sadness (n)	خرن
Jje	line ,n,	مبطر شعري	skill 'n	محاره
يبعرد	literature in	ادمب	staff	هينه الغاملين أطامم الغمل
e design	marry IV Lyned	سروج	tate	دوله ولاپه
-	member 'r	عصوا مرد	summar se	بحب
	negative ad	فيسي	take up	سسعرق مشعل وستا
61.	nest 'n	عش انطانز	technology	مكنولوجيا
مشورده	normal ad	عسيالي	title	عبوان
<u> </u>	official	رسفی	traditionally	ليحيت
245	outdoor (ad,	مارح البيث	unconscious	ماقد للوعى
التظافة		عده صياعه، يعبر صباعه	value	غمية
عقلق				اليث من الشعر
تعليق	partly (adv)	حرني	verse	
1	perfect (ad),	كامل/ تام	voyage	رحلة بحريه
العقمع	permission (n)	إدن/ تصريح	waste n)(v) d	نفانة يصيع، يسرم
إيتعد	personal (adj)	شحصي	wealthy (adj,	ثرى
المطا	pilot (n)	طيار		محروح/مصاب
bacds	poem (n)	هميده	wounded (adj)	(1)



تأثير على

بكتشف

یعتنی ب

بثمرك إلى

VIII	يعطى معمة	V
give a job	ا يعطى إنثاً (تصريحًا)	-40
give permission	1	ache
Jagree in	ليه درجة علمية في	admire
have a degree in	وساع	affect
have a headache	کیپه دور قی	appreclate
have a role in	المليه مقال سي	
	يه تاثير	argue
have an effect	بالتفصيل	challenge
in detail	Ommer!	commer
in de annu ideas	يقدم افكارًا جبدة	,
introduce new ideas	e 1.031.e. 2.0	determi
join the university staff	بلتحق بهيئة الجامعة	
	مير هدثا	direct
mark an event		
on your own	مفرمك	ease
Off your own	rsonal life	
take up much of her pe	TO SUCTION 14	
ها الشنصية	غل جرءًا كبيرًا من حياة	encou

faint

gover

impro

Inspe

pain

peri

res

sui

Wa

قيعة ال

10110	
popular with	عبوب من
return *	نود الی
[stay	يم قى
stop .	ند عن
successful at	ج غی
suitable tor	ب لامالح لـ
talk about	شص
value	وال_

effect on

find out

look after

move to

Units (384)

Adjective

Derivatives 🜙

لديه دور عي

رہ تاثیر

بالتقصيل

يقدح أمكارا ج

يميز حدثًا

بممردك

تشفل حرءًا

يعود إلى

يقيم في

پومم

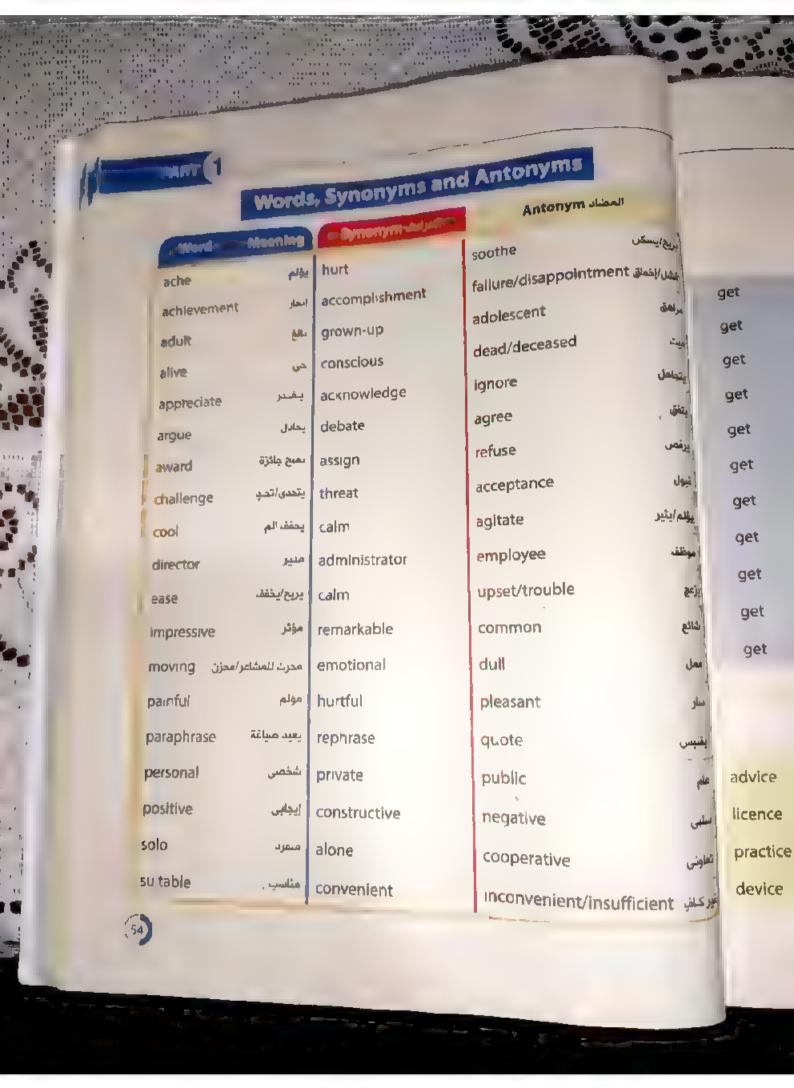
تاجح في

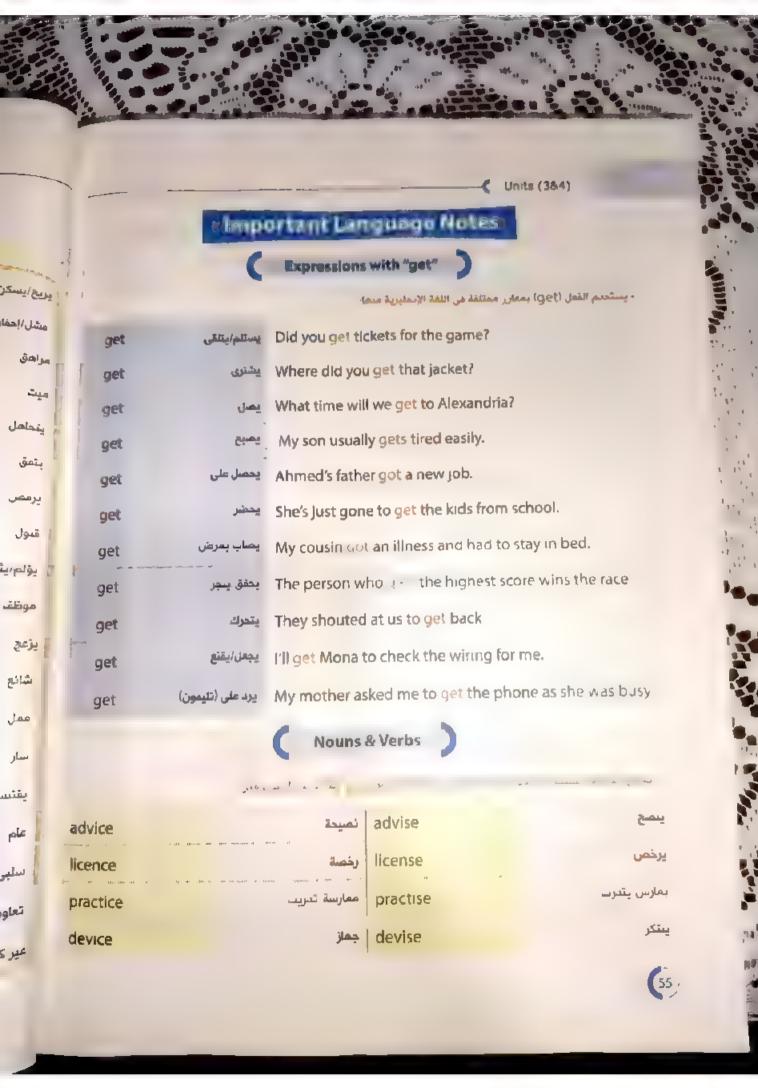
يتحدث ع

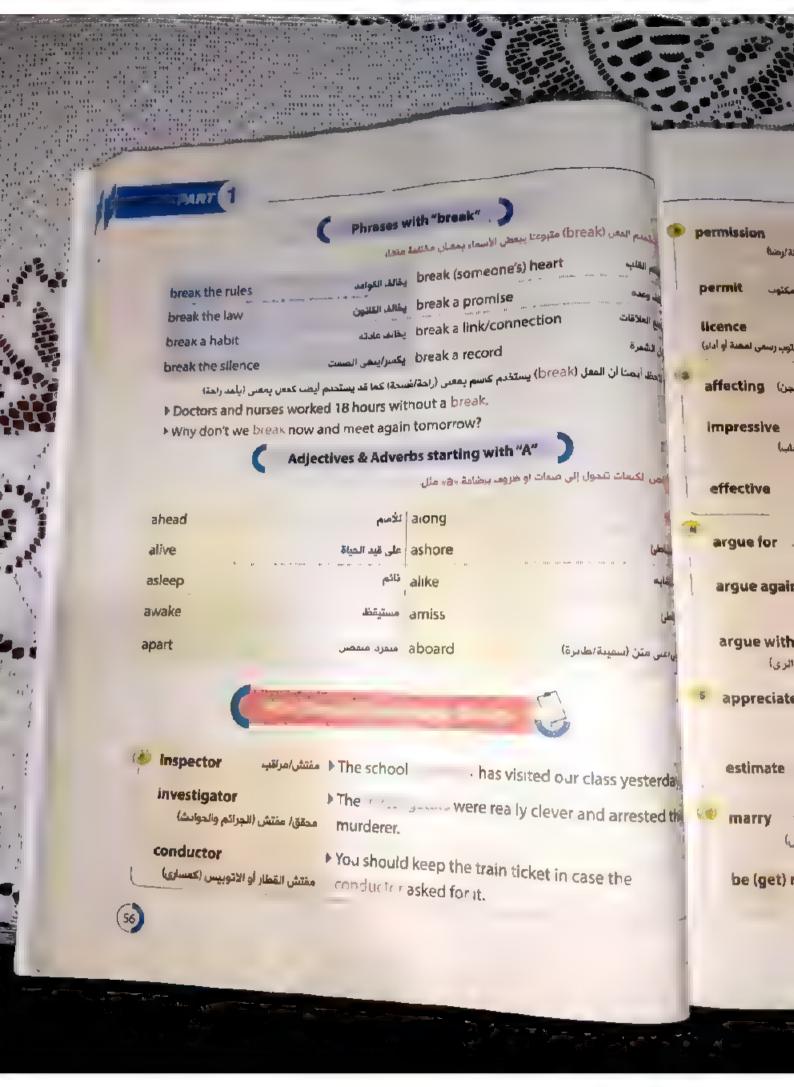
ميمة ال

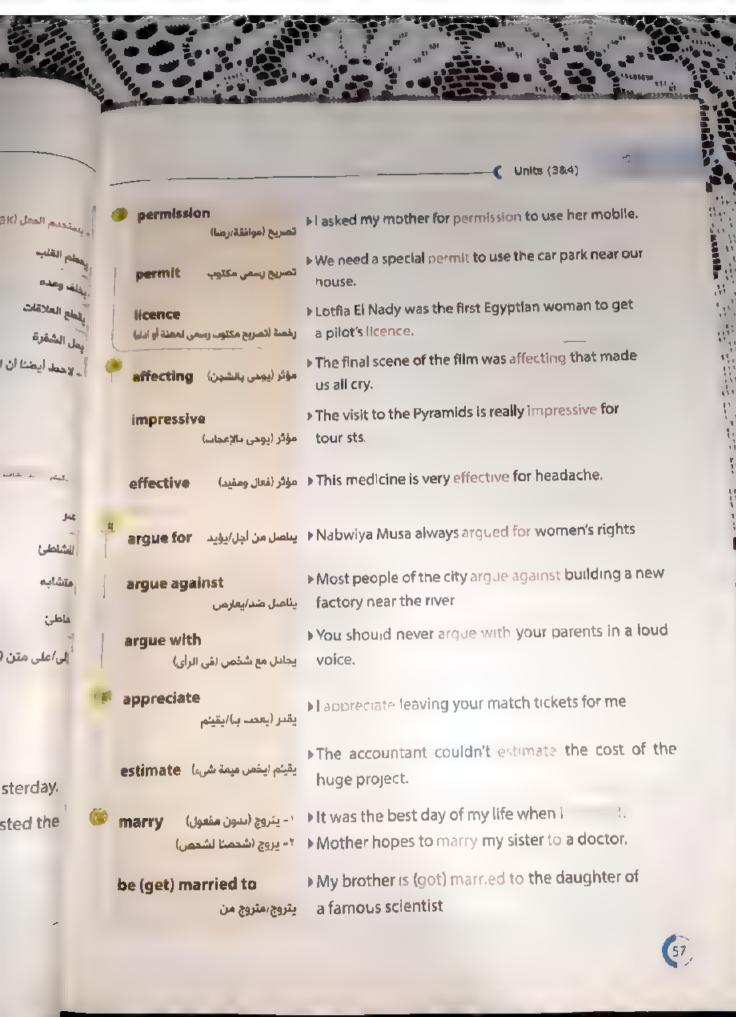
Verb		Noun ,		Valective			
			د الم	ching	مؤلم		
ache	يؤلم	ache	· ·	_	معجب		
admire	العجب ب	admiration		dmiring			
affect	بؤثر على	effectiveness	-	effective	مؤثر/فعال		
appreciate	ينمسر	appreciation		apprec ative	مقدر/ممتن		
argue	بخابل	argument	مقاش حاداجيال	argumentativ	1		
chaffenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحبى	challenging	متدداصعب التحقيق		
comment	يعلق	comment	اتعليق	commentary	تعليفى		
determine	بصعم/يعقد العرم	determination	عزيمة/إصرار	determined	مصمم عاقد العزم		
		direction	إرشاد اتوجيه				
direct	يدير/يرشد	director	اهدير		1		
ease		easiness	راحة	easy	مرتاح امسترح		
		emotion	شعور عاطمة	emotional	عاطعي		
encourage	يشجع	encouragement		encouraging			
fa nt	يعقد الوعي	faint ng	اعماء،ممدان الوعي	faint ng	هريل/مي حالة اعياء		
govern	يحكم	government	حكومة	governing	حاكم		
impress	يۇثر فى	impression	تثير بطاع	impressive	مؤثر		
		inspection	تمييش				
inspect	يفتش	inspector	مفتش				
pain	يؤلم	pain	les.	painful	مۇلم		
perm't	 يصرح/تصريح	permission	ان تصریح	permitted	مسموح		
		personality	بخصية	personal	شخصی		
		rescue	مَادِ	, 1			
rescue	ينقن	rescuer	1.5				
suit	يلائم	su tability	اسبة / ملائمة	suitable م	مناسب		
waste	يسرف،يعدر		بية	wasteful	مسرم اميثر		

53









partition.



ne staff salary r book.

a lot of revision onfortomorrows.

woman.

plete this form eve a Facebook

f 10 000 people

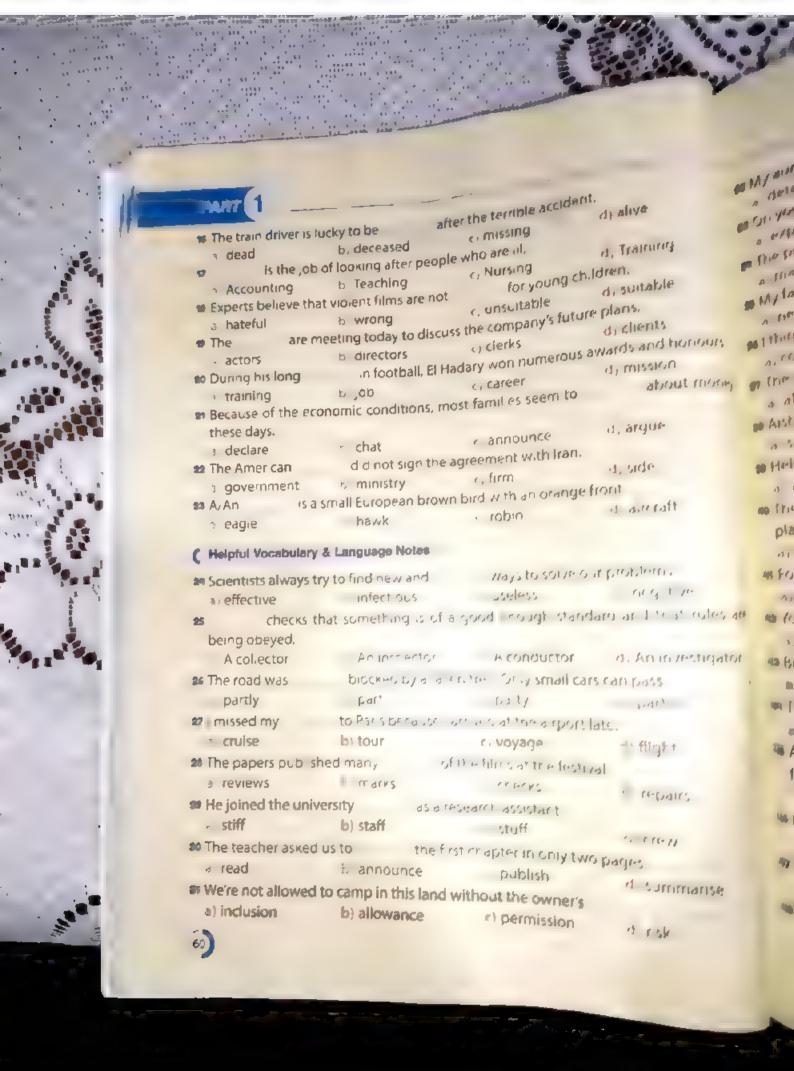
Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

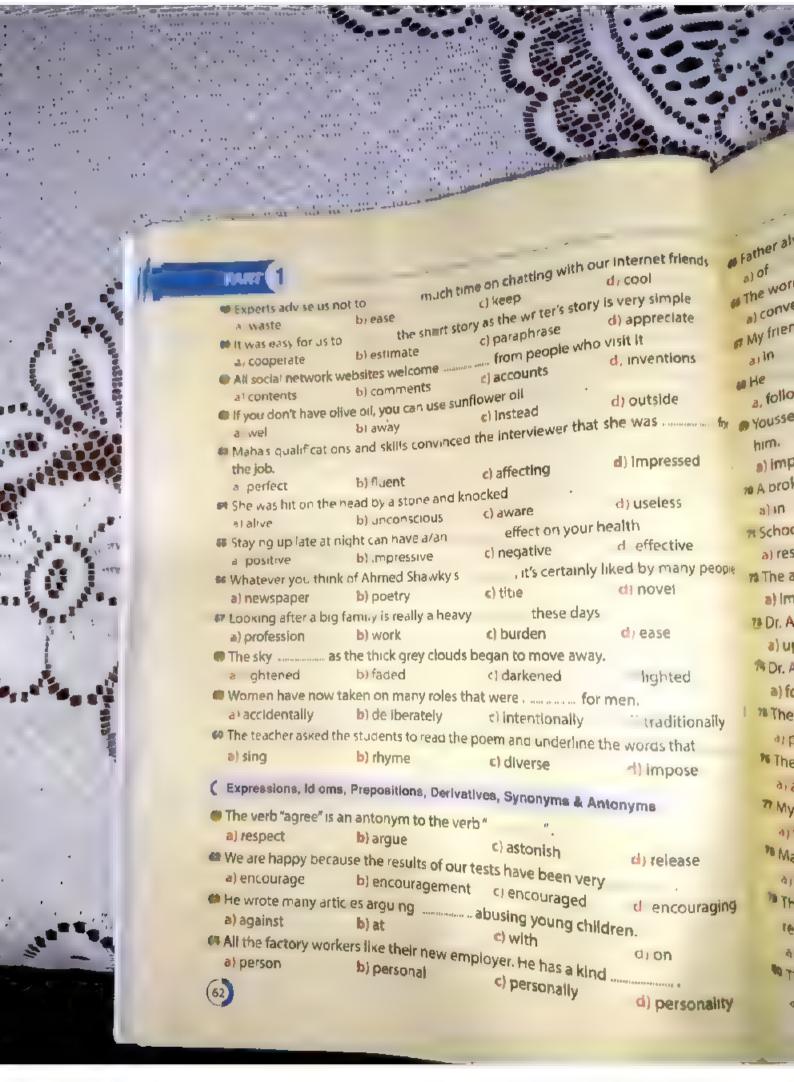
(Key Vocabulary

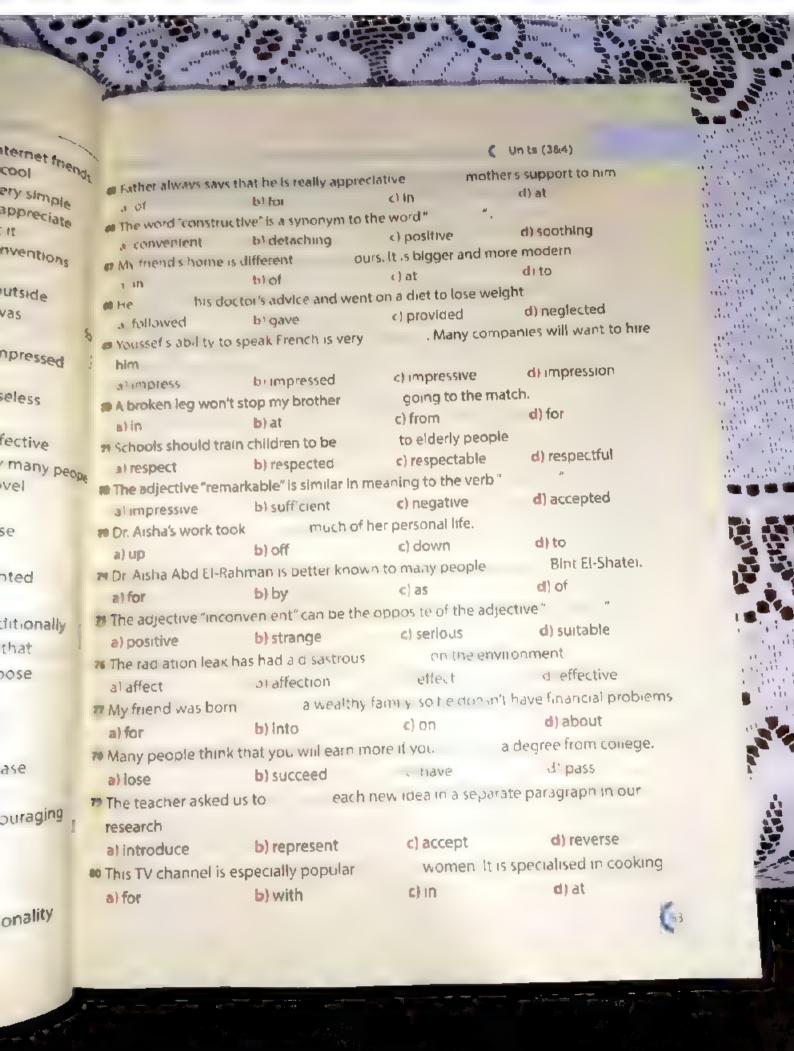
- Taha Hussein's works are still by writers and scholars c) appreciated a) appeared b) applied
- Parents play an important in their child's learning
 - d rat b) role
- Mary Curie was the Nobel Prize twice for Chemistry and Physics b) got cideserved direwarded a) awarded
- ail over the world. a Anwar El Sadat was much loved and a nspected b prospected c refused d respected
- Before you can fly alone, you need to have a phot's
- a qualification bidegree clagreement dicence
- Television and other mass media can have a an influence on this tren a detective b accusative is positive dinfinitive
- means done on your own without he person another person
- a Polio b For 0 Co. O
- Mir Fouad put his son in of the compan, when had read and proced
- a change b charge recharge
- Microsoft Corporation is the world's biddest to like to a discoverer b pub sher
- no The new firm tells the story crab on a control the same ring
- a, moving pleased to a second and an area of the second and area of the second area of the s and exciting this to the contract of the contr # This job is a an skills.
- archallenge in challenged in an entire
- ★ The concert hall was hot and crowded indicate a up indicate
 - a breathed b s.ept
- after moving those head posession india idus My back really
- b) rests c) aches a) stops a) comforts ₩ The doctor gave me some pills to the pain of my broken arm
- a) increase b) ease c) heat d) develop
- All the police's efforts to find the murderer were Helescaped abroad
 - b) in detail c) in advance d) in a hurry a) in vain

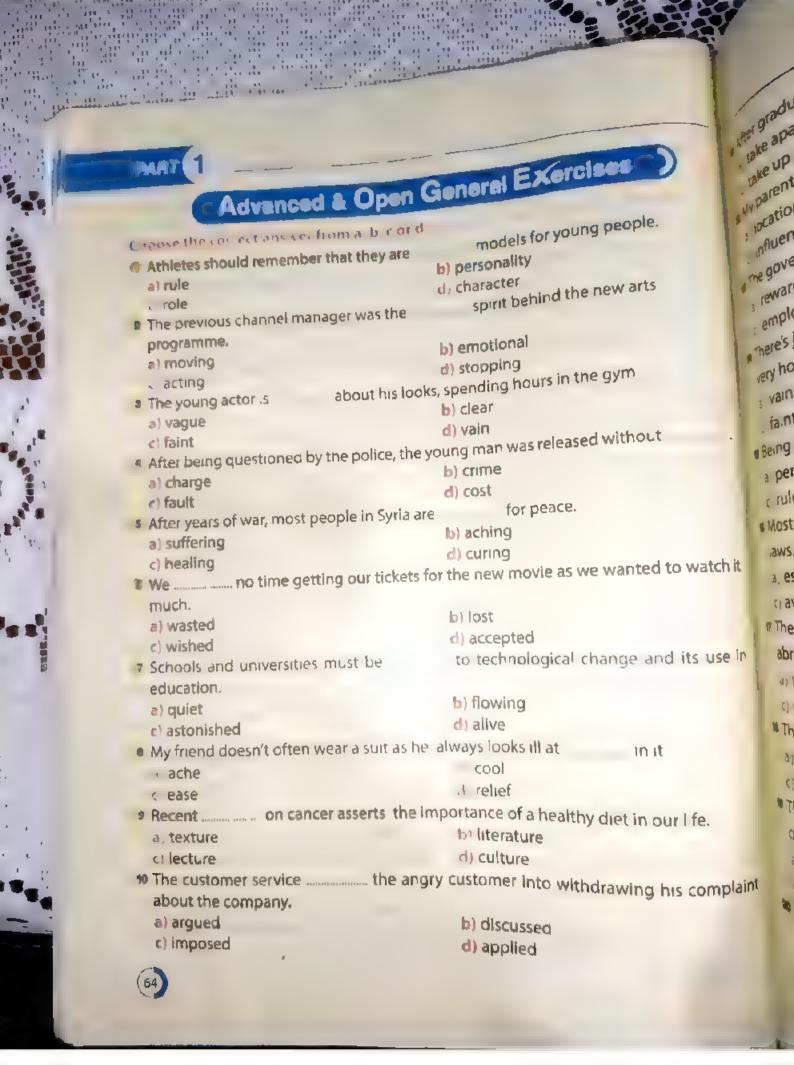
d appointed



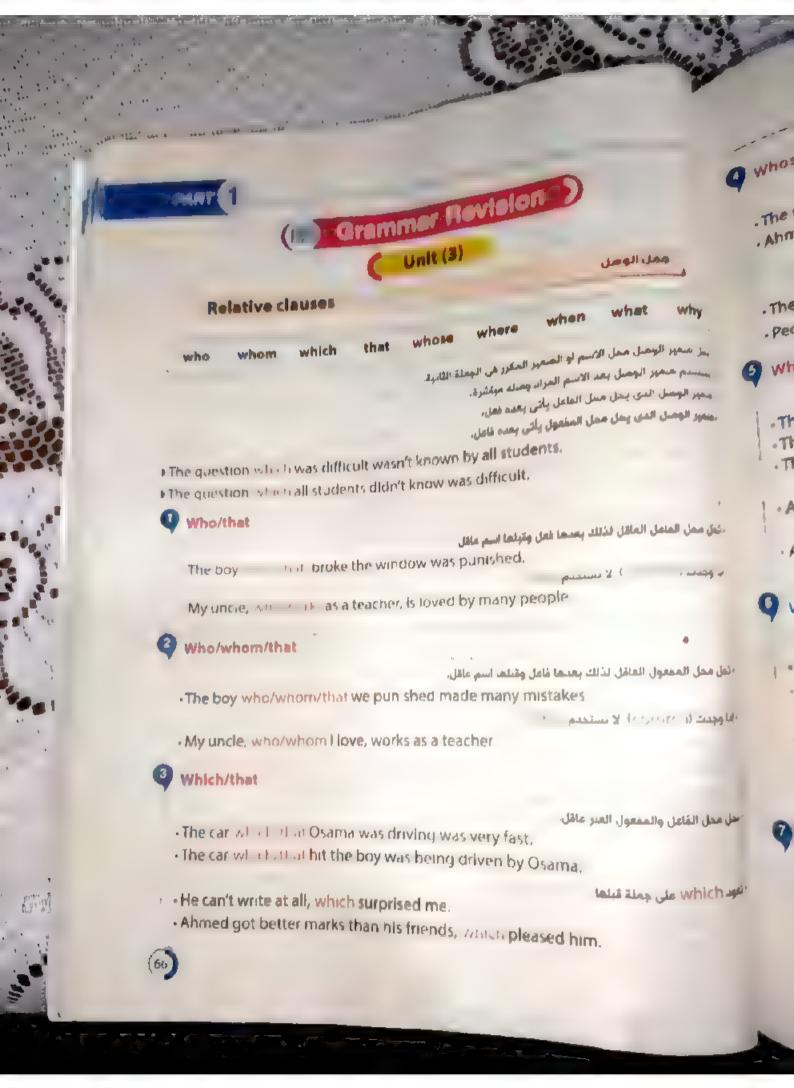
(Units (364) that her children should have the pest possible education se My aunt was d) accepted ive c) agreed b) decided al determined as On your first day in a new job, you should make a good d) tradition aining c) depression b) impression a) expression people at the church is an old man on The priest who d) was married itable () marriage b) got married a married My father has always told me that it is important never to break my d law ents c) record o) promise and honours a neck to apply for this Job. 36 I think you should have suitable d) qualifications sion c) licence b) permission o contract about mone 37 The metro had to stop because there was a broken one d, al ve c) ahead b) apart a along in society ann. se A sha Abd El-Rahman helped to improve women's d) position c) post b disposition soldiers from the war zone. a site # He icopters have been sent in to rescue the d) wounds < wounding b wounded a wound to choose the The travel agent handed me a copy of their summer travel aft place for my holiday. an brochure agency b) newspaper a research শ For a time, Dr Aisha worked as a research at Cairo University. 15. ' colleague teacher ib) assistant it.ve a, sel er in this club. ■ You have to pay extra money to be a/an nat rules are member 13, partner a, off cer ** Brave firefighters were able to the children of the burning house vestigator pun.sh hurt h drown a) rescue to his speech The student was told to make some revisions - checks b) imits is a large strong building with thick walls, built to protect the people inside a) repairs from being attacked di prison c) nursery b) castle a) cottage ** My mother was overcome with and burst into tears. d) emotion c) gift b) pain a) alarm The author's name was printed below the of the novel c) cover b) title a) address * I know the first of this poem, but I don't know what comes next. narise c) verse b) paragraph a) copy 61







€ Units (3&4) his post at the beginning of the year. After graduation, my son will .. b) take part a) take apart g|qof d) take place c) take up that going to bed early meant healthy children My parents always took the b) opposition a) location arts d) position c) influence a British company the contract to drill for oil. The government b) awarded a) rewarded d) promoted c) employed There's just a/an possibility that the weather will improve by tomorrow it is very hot. b) apparent a) vain tus d) alive c) faint .. to treat others so rudely Being angry doesn't give you b) licence a) permit d) role c) rule at a steady rate after the new economic Most investments are expected to ... to watchi b) value a) estimate d) appreciate 77 The old man had to give up his house and go into a home after his son travelled c) average abroad. d its use in b) nursery a) nursing d) sweet. c) summer . proof that life exists on other planets. # There is no b) affirmative a) negative d) siding c) positive shocked the band as they counted much The main singer's decision to go life. on him. b) solo a) lonely d) isolated c) alone on the bad road systems in the city. complaint The number of accidents is a sad b) sign a) recipe d) comment c) stage





1:



حمل الو

حل ضمير الوصل

رضمير الوصل الد:

يدر مجل الماغز

وتحل محل العف

النا وحدث (

ازا وجعت (

Whose

- تحل محل ضمير الملكية (his/her/their/its) وبعدها أسم يملكه ما تيلما.
- . The woman whose bag was stolen was angry.
- · Ahmed, whose wife is English, travels to London a lot.
 - هناك يعض الكلمت تستحدم كاسم ومعل فإدا استحدمت كاسم فإنف تسبق بـ ١٠٥٥٠ White

stay, dream, work, play, like, stand, dislike, end, hopes, etc.

- The man whose dream has come true is very happy.
- · People whose stay ended should renew it.
- 9

Where = which ... prep.

- تحل محل المكان بدل (here/there) وتساوي which مع حرف جر،
- The house where I live is very old.
- The house which I live in Is very old.
- The house in which I live is very old.
- تستخدم Which للمكان بدون حرما جر إذا كانت محل الضمير fi
- Aswan is a city which my family always enjoy visiting.
- مكانت الجملة الثنية هكدا
- Aswan is a city. My family always enjoy visiting it.
- 6

When = which ... prep.

- تحل محل الزمان وتساوي ۱۷/۱۱/۲۱ مع حرف جر
- · August is the month when I go on holiday
 - August is the month in which I go on holiday
 - تستخدم Which للزمان بدون حرف جر إدا كانت مجن الصمير ١٤.
 - Friday, which comes after Thursday, is a holiday

- فكانت الجملة الثانية هكذا

Friday is a holiday. It comes after Thursday



What

- I didn't understand what he had said.
- I gave Ahmed (him) what he wanted.

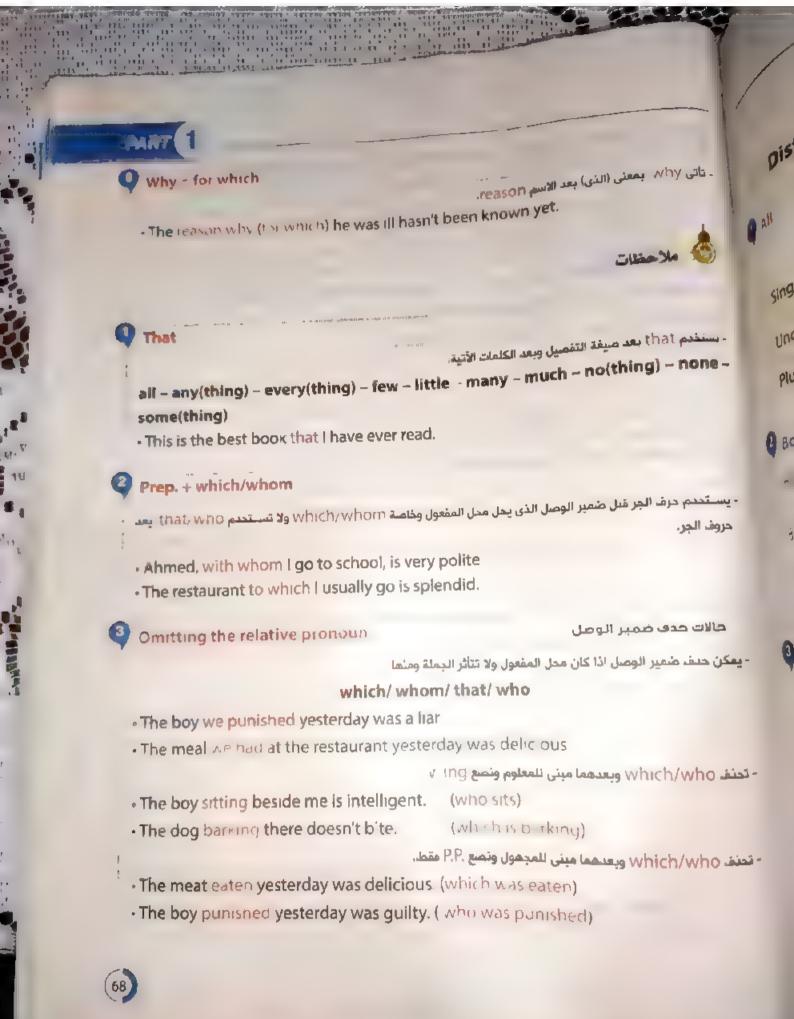
= أداة ربط بمعنى (ما) بعد فعل أو ضمير أو اسم

67

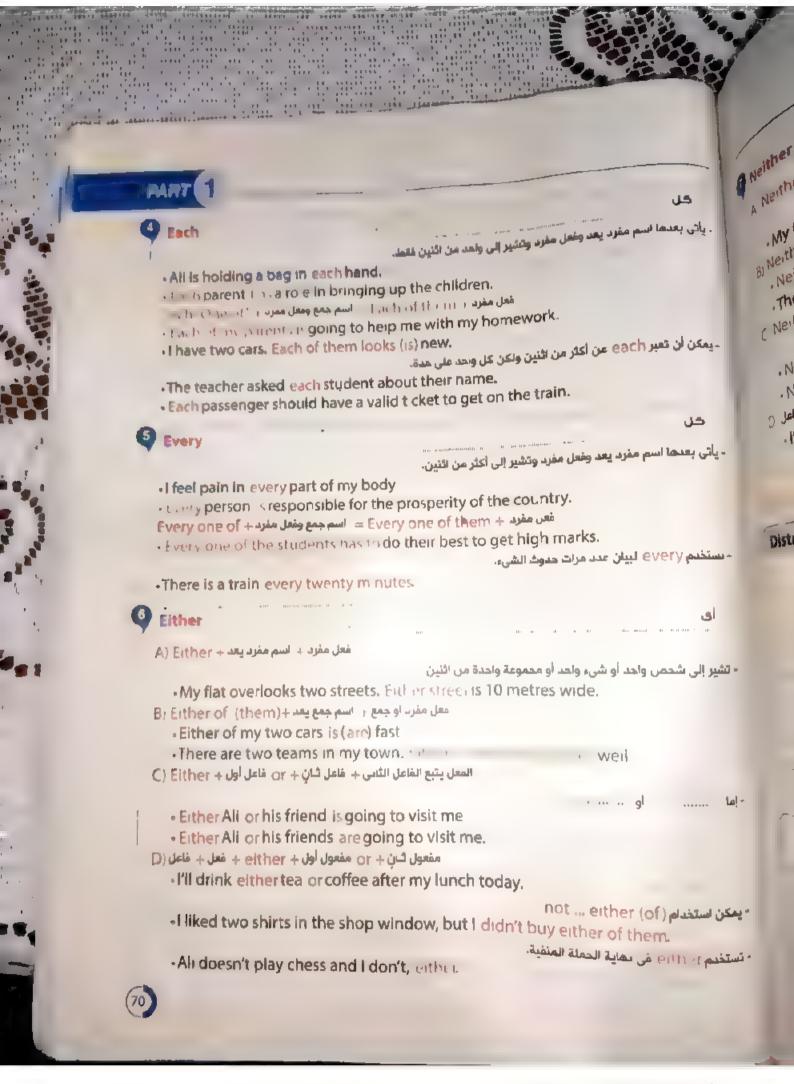
- 1

hich spil

تحل محل الفا



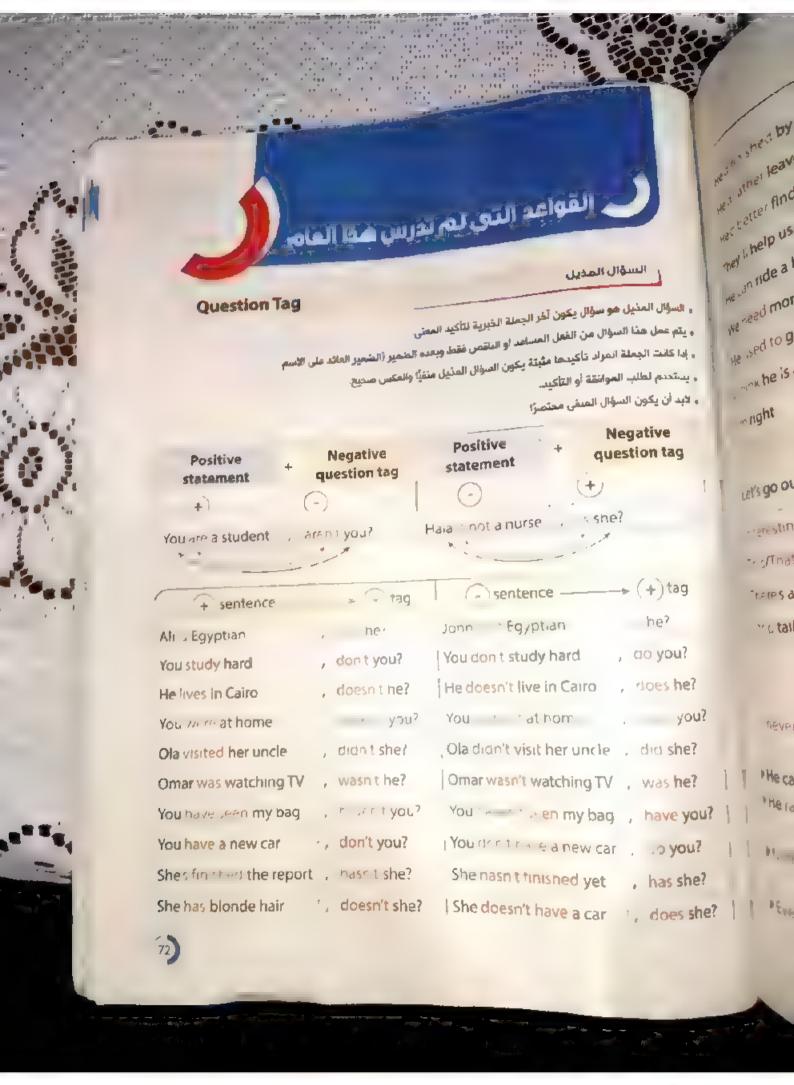
Units (384) **Unit (4)** Distributives: all, both, half, each, every, either, neither كل إجميع اطوال · يأتي بعدها اسم مغرد واسم لا يعد والفعل مغرد. • يأتي بعدها اسم جمع والفعل جمع. All night yesterday was cold and I couldn't Singular noun sleep well. Uncountable noun • All the food I had yesterday was delicious. اسم لا يعد Plural noun All the people in my street are cooperative اسم دمع Both (of) ڪڻ من كلُّ من للعشي: (شخصين - شيئين - مجموعتين) تثبع بفعل جمع · Both of them have clinics sector of minorants are doctors. فعل حمع 🕳 فاعل ثبان 👍 😁 ماغل لول 🗕 🕾 😙 ج . Both Sameh and his wife are clever engineers. ممعول ثان + and مقعول أول + both + فعل + فاعل () I like both Arabic and English حالاه Half (of) • ياني بعدها اسم مقرد واسم لا بعد والعفل مدران • يأتي بعدها أسم جمع والقعل جمع enough for me السم معرد Singular noun Half (of) the flour isn't enough to make a big Uncountable noun cake. Half (of) the students in my class are intelligent. اسم جمع Plural noun وتعنف - لا نستخيم ٥٢ مع تعبيرات الكميات والمسافات Half a kilometre isn't a long way to walk or run. The doctor advised my sister to feed her son with half a kilo of milk a day. 69



Units (384) Neither تر هذا ولا ذاك غال مليد جا اينم مقرد يغد جا (Neither (%) جاء معالم ال - تشير إلى شخص ولحد أو شيء ولعد أو مجمومة ولحدة من التلين. - My flat overlooks two streets, No their street is 20 metres wide. B) Neither of (them) + way gap and + gap is said and said · Neither of my two cars is (are) fast. There are two teams in my town. Neither of them plays (play) well. القعل يتبع القامل الثاني + قامل ثبانٍ + nor فامل أول + (أول + Neither 3g 3'-· Neither Ali nor his friend is going to visit me. Neither Ali nor his friends are going to visit me. مقعول ثان + neither + مقعول أول + neither + قطل + قاعل •I'll drink neither tea nor coffee after my lunch today. - تعبر neither عن النفي لذلك بأتي الفعل قبلها مثبت. ولتلخيص القاهدة اتبع الأتيء

Distributive		Singular noun		Plural noun	1	Uncountable noun
٦		All (of) the class		All (of) the classes		All (of) the food
both	=	×	±	Both (of) the cars	7	×
Fr. 5. *		Half (of) the loaf		Half of, the loaves		Half (of) the milk
each	444 11	Each applicant		Each of the applicants	144	×
÷ t		Every page		Every one of the pages	-	×
= -		Erther player		Either of the players		×
7, 1		Neither cat		Neither of the cats		х

	The te D		VC >	
3	+ / `. /	المغل ممرد	+	المعل جمع
۲ 1 م			F = 2 +	المعل جمع
he f	+5-2.37 00 ,000	المعل معرد	+ 2 - 3	الفعل جمع
F35H	i+ orguar	القعل مقرد	f + crurar	الععل ممرد
ever,	+ 5,01.0	الععل ممرد	one of + plura	القعل ممرد
ether	+ Singular 1	المعل مقرد	2+ F - 14	العُعل جِمع ،ممرد
n, ther	+ 5 ngular	الفغل ممرد	of + ptura	الععل جمع امفرد
_	±			



		(Units (38.4)
Hed finished by 6 p.m.	, hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m. , had he?
Hed rather leave now	, wou dothe?	Hed rather not come , would he?
He the find a job	, h in the?	Heid hettir not go now , had he?
They help us	, won t they?	They won't help us , wilthey?
He an ride a horse	, danahe?	He can t ride a horse , can he?
We reed more money	, dortwe?	We needn't more money , need we?
He ised to get up early	dianthe?	He didn't use to help us / did he?
Jahrik he is a thief	, shit he?	I don't think he is a thief , she?
I'm right	, aren't !?	I'm not mistaken , am !?
	. عاصة	عالا
ا ت ترح go out د٠٠	, i shall 'shan't we?	Let us go out you?
Interesting	, isn't it?	Beautiful , isn't she?
r s/That is Ahmed's car	, isn't 17	are Ali's pens , aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	, isntone in	're 2 cars here , aren't there?
30020000		loudly w. 1 you?





🕥 الجملة التي تحتوى على ١٠٠ هـ ، نور السؤال المشيل مثبتًا ، نور ١٥٠٤ منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المشيل مثبتًا

He can hardly run, can he?

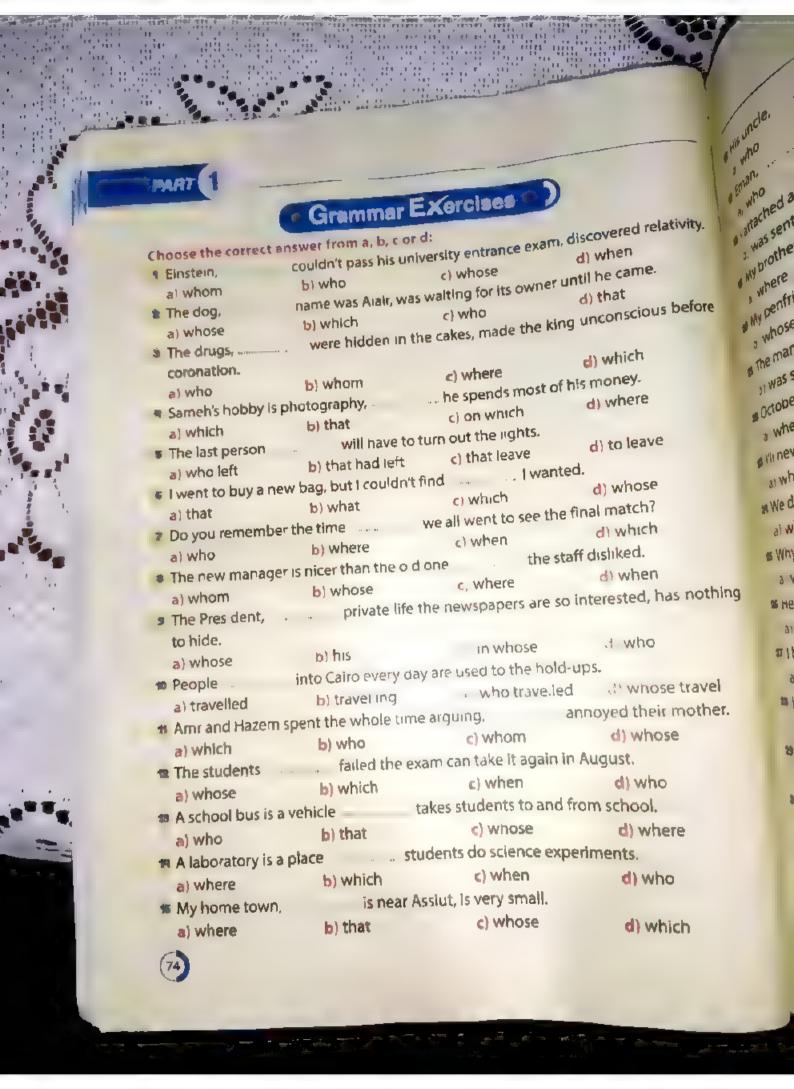
Stop talking

۽ لايد ان

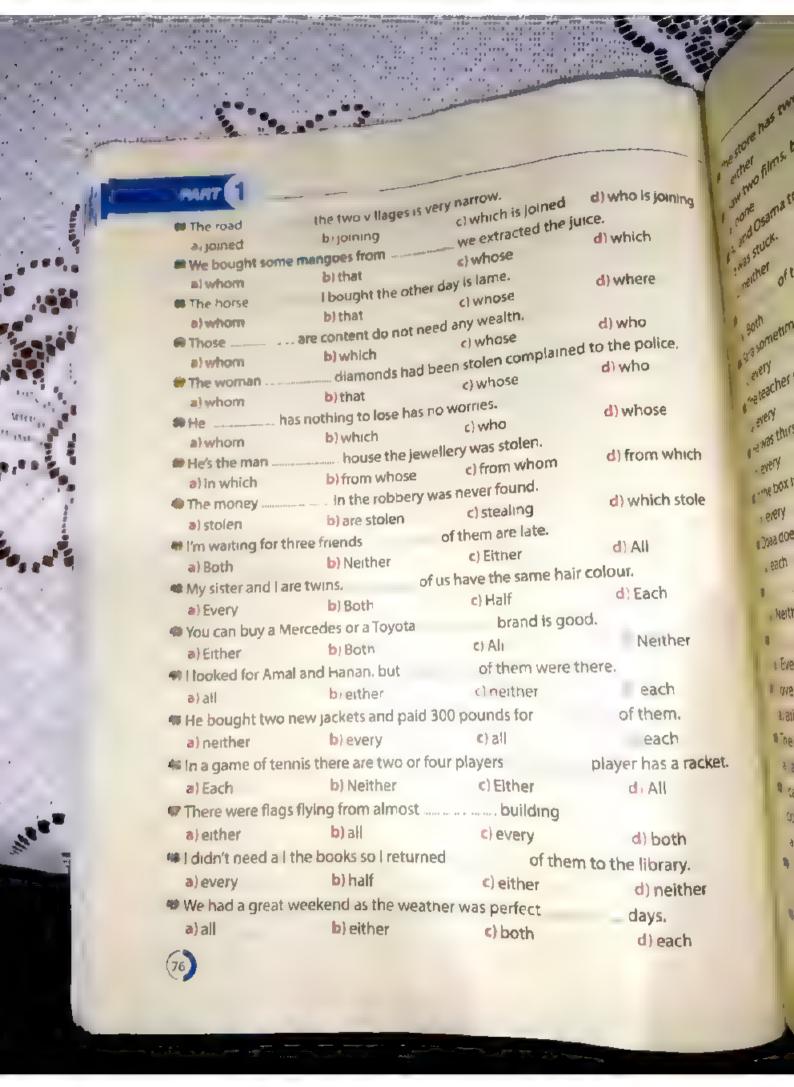
?

- He rarely visits you, does he?
 - . t يكون الضمير Everything Something Nothing يكون الضمير . t
- Nothing can live without energy, can it?
 - they يكون الضمير Everyone, body Someone, body No one, body يكون الضمير و
- Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

73



Units (384) Is a millionaire, owns a villa in Cairo. His uncle c) where b) which a who relativith # Eman, sister is an actress, is going on holiday to Paris c) which d) whose b) that al who to my friend Thomas. a Lattached a photo of my family to the email d) which sent b) sending c) sent a) was sent My brother lives in a small town there is only one library. s before c) whose b) whom a) where lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university. My penfriend, d) which b) who c) that a) whose a The mannext to me had a brown jacket. d) sitting a) was sitting b) he was sitting c) sat our great army restored our dignity. ex October, 1973, was the month d) where c) who a) when b) which # I'll never forget the food in Port Said. d) I had it a) where I had b) which I had it c) I had 29 We didn't believe all the servant had said about the robbery last week. d) where c) which a) what b) that Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong? c) who d) what b) that a) which othina # He made a shameful mistake he apologised d) for which c) in which b) to which a) at which g I had an uncle in Germany, _____ I inherited a bit of money. b) whom c) who d) which a) from whom 28 I didn't understand the teacher had explained. d) what w that b) when a) which we went to last night. 29 I really love the new Chinese restaurant, d whose c) when b) where al which The reason _____ I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish d) whose c) why b) which a) where She has a lot of money, most of was inner ted from her aunt. d) when a) where b) which c) that This is the man ... dream of meeting the President has come true. b) whom c) that d) whose a) who



o is joining € Unita (384) The store has two lifts, and are out of order d) both b) all a) either a) saw two films, but I didn't like of them, d) every c) petther b) either A) and Osama tried to open the cupboard, but of them could do it because it was stuck. di every c) a.l. b) either a) neither of these people has some useful talent or experience d) Every c) Each b) All a) Both minute of the day. Sara sometimes feels as If she was working d) both c) neither b) either of the students in his class were absent. The teacher was sad as d) neither c) half b) each which a) every He was thirsty, so he drank the Juice. d) all c) whole b) neither a) every hands. or If the box is heavy, you can hold it with d) all c) each b) both a) every sa Doaa doesn't like action films. Yara doesn't like action films, d) either c) neither b) both a, each 59 _____of these two candidates has a degree in English. d) Both b) All a) Neither member of the team is given a part cular job to do d) Both c) All b) Each a) Every or Hove this author. I've got book she's ever written d) neither c) every b) both a) all The teacher asked the students to find the mistake in sentence. a) neither b) both a I can't decide whether to go to Italy France or Cermany They're beautiful countries. d) every c) each b) all a) both of the dentists is available. Which one do you want to see? d) Either c) Every b) Both of them seems interested in the offer d) Either c) Ali b) Both a) Neither 77

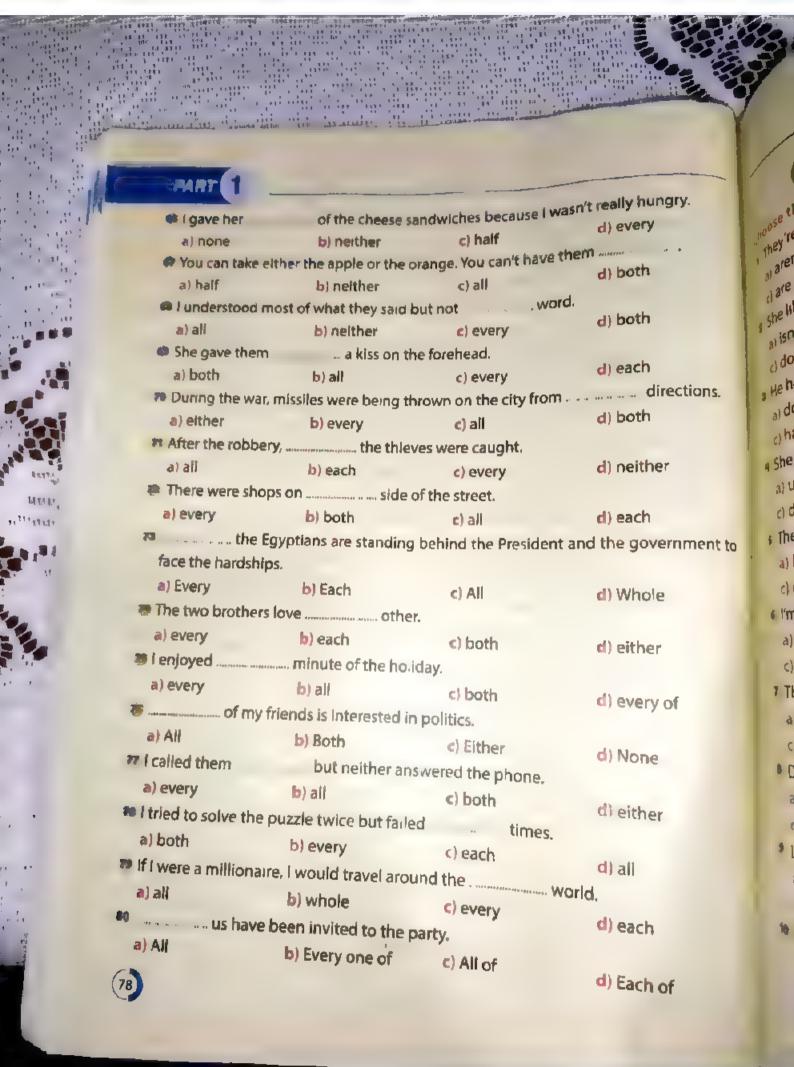
ich

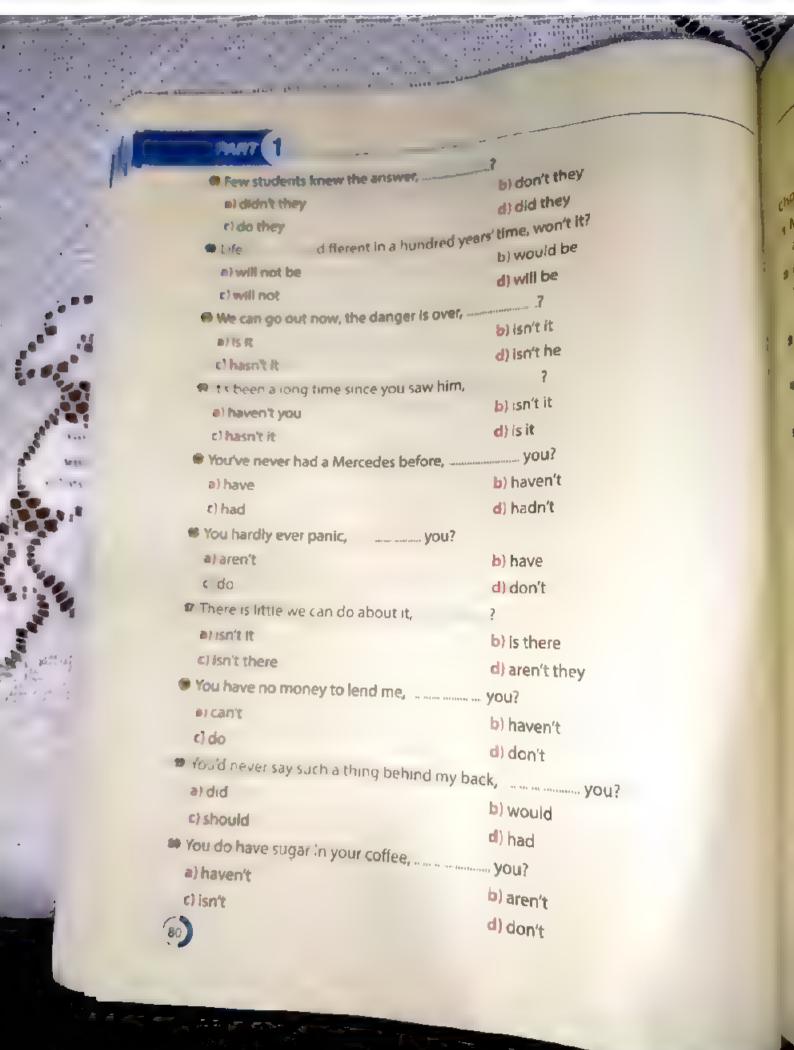
919

olice.

olota r

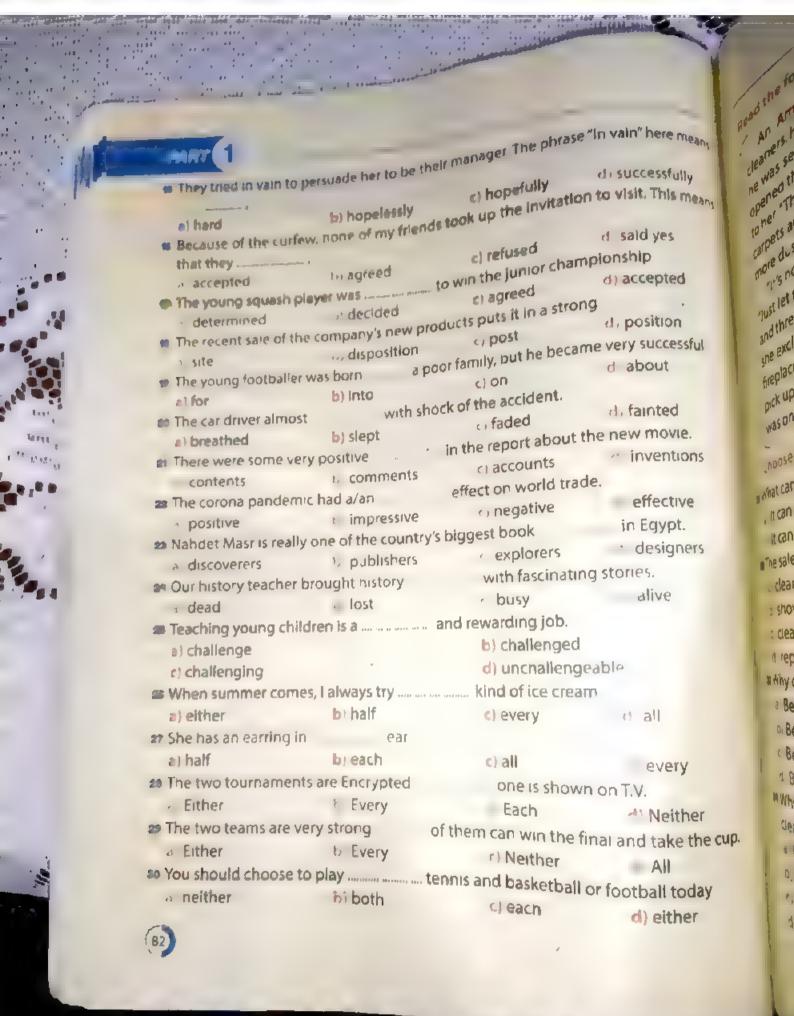
cket.





Open Book General Exercises on Units 3 & 4)

	Choose the correct ansv	ver from a, b, c or d:		
	Mr Emad,	ias a strong personality.		
	a) who	b) whom	c) whose	
	# A police officer	car was parked at	the next corner s	topped and arrested
	the thieves.			to Ly.A.
	a) who	b) whose	c) when	d) which
-	My brother went to Ale	exandria Un versity,	he studied	architecture.
	a) when	b) that	c) where	a) Which
4	The job she		ak en anda tada	all favoulerels
	a) at which	b) to which	c) in writer	arks the beginning of
	Sham El-Nessim,	is celebrated by	most ramilles, ma	arks the beginning of
	spring		al college	d) which
		b) when	c) whose	(i) Wittelt
6	you are req		A Park and	alt All
		b) All of	c) Either	
7	I couldn't choose betw	een Toyota or Mercede	es. 1) ked them	all additions
	a) all	b) neither	c) both	aj eimer
ď	I tried to phone her two	o or three times, but	time th	ere was no reply.
	a) each		c) both	
9	My uncle is always busy	y. He spends	of his time trav	velling
	a) each	b) every	c) neither	d) half
è	Sameh didn't pass the t	test, and Shady didn't		
	a) either	b) too	c) neither	d) both
	Scientists can play a	in improving	energy efficienc	y in their laboratories.
	a) rank	b) goal	c) rule	d) role
	His talents are not fully	in that co	mpany, so he is le	ooking for another one
	a) appreciated	hitacted	c) calculated	d) spread
è	a) appreciated found university work	of tosted	friends were alw	avs verv
1	found university work	very airricult, but my	al courses	d) discouraging
ě	a) encouraging	b) encouraged	c) courage	win of the World War
1	The movie which won th	e prize told the	story of a Vi	Clim of the world wal.
2	a) moving	b) preasant	c) ridiculous	d) useless



Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

An American salesman used to go from house to house selling vacuum cleaners. He always took one with him to show the housewives what the machines he was selling can do. One day he went to a house in a farm. The farmer's wife opened the door, and the salesman went in at once to den o istrate his machine to her. "This powerful vacuum cleaner will remove all the dust and dirt from your carpets and rugs," he said. "No more old-fashioned beating with a stick, making more dust than you get out of the carpet"

"I's no use to me," the woman said "you're wasting your time here young man"
"Just let me show you!" the salesman said. Then he opened a bag he was carrying
and threw a great pile of dirt over the carpet "Good Heavens! What are you doing?"
she exclaimed. "Don't worry madam!" he answered, adding some ashes from the
fireplace to the pile of dirt. "I'll eat every bit of dirt that my vacuum cleaner doesn't
pick up" "Well, in that case I'll get you a spoon at once," the woman answered. "I
was only trying to tell you that we don't have electricity on this farm"

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- a What can a vacuum cleaner do?
 - a) It can remove dirt from floors.
- b) It can clean/make the air fresh.

c) It can eat rubbish.

- d) It can preserve foods in vacuum bags.
- 32 The salesman took a vacuum cleaner with him to
 - a) clean houses
 - b) show it to customers
 - c) clean dust and ashes from streets
 - d) repair it

sfully

lis m

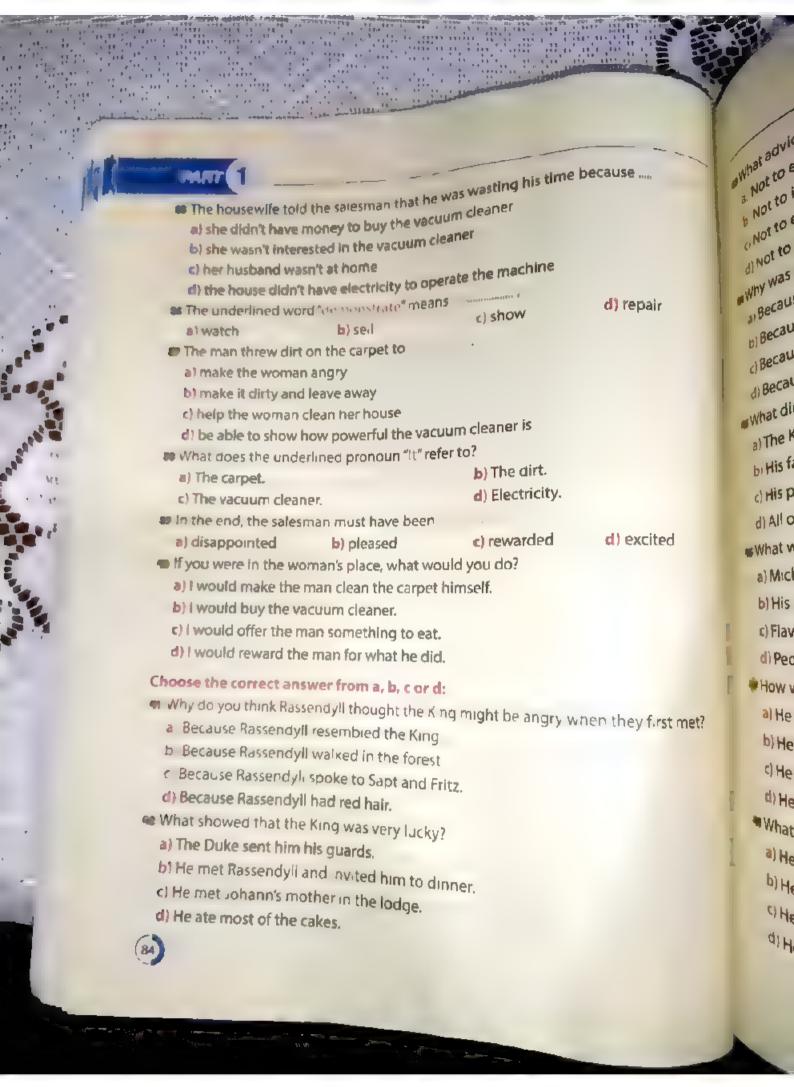
þŝ

SSFUL

hs

up.

- Why did the housewife seem surprised at the salesman's behaviour?
 - a) Because the man was very clever
 - b) Because the man talked quickly.
 - c) Because the man threw dirt and ashes on the ground.
 - d) Because the vacuum cleaner was effective.
- Why did the salesman say that he would eat every bit of dirt that the vacuum cleaner didn't eat?
 - a) He was confident that the cleaner will work well.
 - b) He was hungry.
 - c) He wanted the housewife to bring him a spoon.
 - d) He was at a farm.



- What advice do Fritz and Sapt give the King?
 - a) Not to eat much and sleep early,
 - b) Not to invite Rassendyll.
 - a) Not to eat the cakes.
 - d) Not to trust Josef

air

net?

- why was Mr Rassendyll angry when Colonel Sapt awakened him?
 - a) Because he didn't sleep well.
 - b) Because Sapt had thrown water over him.
 - c) Because it was early in the morning.
 - d) Because Sapt kicked him with his leg.
- What did Mr Rassendyll notice on the King in the morning?
 - a) The King was lying on the floor
 - b) His face was red and he was breathing heavily.
 - c) His pulse was very weak and slow.
 - d) All of the above
- What would happen if the King wasn't crowned on the appointed day?
 - a) Michael would be sad.
 - b) His half-prother would take the throne.
 - c) Flavia would kill herself.
 - d) People would wait for him the next day.
- # How was Michael wicked?
 - a) He poisoned his half-brother to be King.
 - b) He persuaded Rassendyll to be King.
 - c) He imprisoned Sapt and Fritz.
 - d) He made Fritz kill the King.
- 48 What idea came to Colonel Sapt to fulfil the coronation?
 - a) He persuaded Rassendyll to replace the King
 - b) He caught Michael and imprisoned him
 - c) He sent Fritz to tell the people the truth
 - d) He brought a doctor to help the King.

85



Who was overhearing Sapt's first plan?

Jasel

Why did the poor people in the capital want Duke Michael to become King?

They wanted things to change

They thought he was a lazy man

h Johann's mother.

+ Johann

They wanted things to stay the same

They wanted a war with the King

Kioun

MINE

adiano

ment

dead

dista

freel

qian

grat

hor

ho

lac

la

or Not only a tourism threatened by terrorism but also by the lack of awareness of

population and the wrong policies

لا بتأثر الساحة فقط بالسائحين ولكن أيصا بزيادة التلوث وعدم معاشة البولس للمحطلين لا يُتَكُّرُ السِياحة مقط بالإزهاب مل أيضا ينقص الوعي وزيادة التلوث والشرطة المحطلة

ير. لا تظّر السواعة مقط بالإرهاب بل أيضا بنقص الوعى لدى السكان والسياسات الداهلة

وتتأثر السياحة مقط بالإرهاب بل أيضا بزيادة التلوث السيقيات الذابلاة

Choose the correct English translation:

ق قرر والدى أن يحجز تذكرتين قطار إلى أسوان وياخذ أخى السفير معه.

My father decided to book two train tickets and take my younger brother with him My father decided to book two tickets train and take my younger brother with him

My father has decided to book two train tickets and taken my younger brother with

the families has decided to book two train tickets and take my volunger brother with him.

Choose the correct a

so After the sentence "A'r pollution is one of the major problems these days." Which one could be a supporting set tence?

Air pullation appears in the environment due to bad air quality.

A most all countries become the victim of this environment pollution.

Air pollution is not a favorable condition for any living-being.

d. There are harmful elements that are produced during the emission of gases.



Units 5&6



Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

account (n)	حساب
anniversary (n)	ذكرى سنوية <i>ا</i> يوبيل
balance (n) (v) (d)	توازن/يوازن بين
client in	عميل
deadline (n)	الموعد النَّهَائي (المحدد)
distance (n)	مساغة
freelance (adj)	حر/مستقل
giant radj	عملاق
gravity (n)	جانبية/خطورة
hopeful (adj)	مشجع اميشر
horrible (adj)	فظيع
lack(n)(v)(ed)	ثقص/ينقصه
launch (v) (ed) (n)	يطلق/إطلاق
leak (n) (v) (ed)	ئسرىب/يتسرب
limit (v) (ed) (n)	يحفداحد
mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة

organisation (n)	منظمة
regular (adj)	منتظم
representative (n)	مندوب/ممثل
separate (v) (d) (adj)	يقصل امتقصل
side effects (n)	أثار جانبية
sociable (adj)	اجتماعي
spin (v)	يدور حول محوره
stress (n)	<i>صغطا</i> توتر
stressful (adj)	مجهد
suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
take off (v)	يتفيب عن العمل
take on (v)	
task (n)	anan
tourism (n)	السياحة
tabálaca (a.d.)	
weightless (adj)	عديم الوزن



Helpful Vocabulary

accountant (n)	هداسب
activity (n)	نشاط
air conditioning	تكييف الهواء
allow (v) (ed)	يسمح
almost (adv)	تقريبا
area (n)	منطقة
astronaut (n)	واثد فضاء
athlete (n)	رياضي
attach (v) (ed)	يريط/يضم
attached (adj)	متصل
available (adj)	متوفر
battery (n)	يطارنة
briefly (adv)	باختصار
carry on (v) (y ied)	پستمر فی
comfortably (adv)	4 4
contact (v) (ed) (n)	براحة .
decision (n)	يتصل/اتصال
depend on (v) (ed)	قرار
designer (n)	ربلد عمتمي
directions (n)	para .
equipment (n)	التجامات
examine (v) (d)	معدات/تجهيزات
exhausted (adj)	يقدمن
	مرشق

expect (v) (ed)	<u> </u>
experts (n)	4.
exploration (n)	42
fear (n) (v) (ed)	ويشفيا
flexible (adj)	
focus (v) (ed) (n)	ڔۣؿۯػڽۯ
force (n) (v) (d)	أينظ
global warming (n)	يتيلس الحراري
graduate (n)	ь
independently (adv)	يظلال
instant (adj)	ون/عاجل
Interrupt (v) (ed)	نط <i>ا</i> یعترض
mainly (adv)	Ľ.h
manage (v) (d)	ميز
management (n)	ij
minus (prep)	<i>طبا</i> ناقص
occupation (n)	ظيفة
orbit (v) (ed) (n)	بنار فی مدار/مدار
particular (adj)	طص/محدد
perform (v) (ed)	^{لِر} ن/يفعل
period (n)	ā) ³
pessimistic (adj)	انشائع
physical exercise (n)	فضلام بلضة بصنية

planet (n)	كوكب	spectator (r _{ij}	1,000
predict (v) (ed)	، يتنبا	studio (ti)	3
provide (n) (d)	يزود/يوغر	system (n)	fi des
purpose (n)	غرض	tank (n)	I pel pelyo
quality time (n)	ومَّت الجودة (تمضيه مع العائلة)	tips (n)	فتعبدات امصالع
recipe (n)	وصفة(طعام)	training (n)	نبرب
record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل	transport (n)	السقل
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى ايستريح	treatment (n)	علاج/سواء
repair (v) (ed) (n)	يصلح/إملاح	unexpected (adj)	غير عتوقع
repeated (adj)	مكزر	United Nations (n)	الأمم المتشاة
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
rocket (n)	صاروخ	waste (n)	تبنير الضاعة
satellite (n)	قمر صناعي	weightlifting (n)	رفع الاثقال
Saturn (n)	کوکب ژحل	well-known (adj)	معروف امشعور
space station (n)	محطة فضاء	wheel (n)	عجلة
spacewalk (n)	السير في الفضاء	working hour (n)	ساعة عمل

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقًا لـ	book a holiday	جز إجازة
all over the world	مَى كل أنحاء العالم	do (make) repairs	بمايقوم بإصلادات
ask for advice	يطلب النميحة من	do space walks	وم بالسير في الفضاء
at a height of	على ارتفاع	do weightless sports	ارس رياضة انعدام الوزن
at all times	في جميع الأوقات	feel calm	بعر بالهدوء
at the end	قى النهاية	for sure	تاكيد

go for a walk	يقوم بالتمشية
go on a mission	ينمب في منهمة
go running	يمارس الجرى
go shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
have an illness	یعانی من مرضا
have plans	لنيه خطط
make a difficult decision	يتخذ قرازا صعبنا

meet the deadlines	ينى المواعيد النطائية
on your own	كالأوال
over the years	يلي مر السئين
reach for the stars	ينتبق هنف صعب
sat-nav system	غلم الملاحة بالأقمار الصناعية
stand still	يقف بالا حراك
take breaks	بلخذ فتراث راحة

Prepositions

attached to	مرتبط ب	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
available for	متوافر اـ	remind of	پنکرپ
benefit from	يستنيد من	responsible for	مسئول عن
break down	يتعطل	separate from	يفصل عن
compare to	يقارن بــ	spend on	ينفق على
depend on	يعتمد على	suffer from	بعلني من
dislike about	يكره عن	thank for	بشكرعلى
expert in (on/at)	خبیر فی	train for	بندرب من أجل
focus on	يركز على	treatment for	علاج لـ
look down on	ينظر إلى أسفل	waste of	نسياع/إحداد لـ

Derivatives

Ver	b	Noun			
	يضيف	addition		Adjecti	ve
350		addition	إضافة	additional	إضافي
Miguce	يوازن بين	balance	توازن		بــــــى متوازن
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصأل	communicative	تواصلی
tecide	يقرز	decision	غرار	decisive	حاسم
depend	يعتمد على	dependence	اعتماد/اتكال	dependent	معتمد
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	ومىقى
ahaust	يرهق	exhaustion	إرهاق	exhausted	مرمق
explore	<u>نستکشف</u>	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافي
'ak	يتسرب	leak	تسريب	leaky	مسزب
Emit	، ، ، ، ،	limit		limited .	محدود
manage	يدير	management	إدارة	managerial	إدارى
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	مثظم
Predict	ليئتي	prediction	تنبؤ	predictive	تنبلی
felax	يسترخى/يستريح	relaxation	راحة/استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مريح مسترخ
9762	يوفر/يحمى/ينقذ	saving (n)	توفير/اسخار		- to 100 a A
Weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty weightless	دو شأن/هام عديم الوزن



Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antony	المضاد ٢٦٦
activity	Plan		idleness	يل/عدم حركة
balance	توازن		imbalance	ہم توازن
freelance	حر/مستقل		employed	بظفه
giant	عملاق	titan	tiny	غير
gravity	الجانبية	heaviness	weightlessness	عدام الوزن
hopeful	مشجع/مبشر	confident	hopeless	الس
horrible	فظيع	awful	attractive	بناب
lack	نتمن	absence	abundance	غزارة
launch	يطلق	fire	stop	بوقف
limit	يجنف	restrict	extend	<u> </u>
manage	ينير	run	mismanage	
mission	مهمة	task	recreation	يسيء الإدارة
provide	پزود/يونر	supply	deprive	ترفيه
regular		constant	irregular	يحرم
repair	وكلمإ/كلمي	mend		غير منتظم
separate	إيقصل	detach	damage	يتلف
sociable	اجتماعی	outgoing	attach	يمل
Spin spin	م يدور/يلف حول ثا	evolve	unsociable	غير اجتماعي
stressful suffer	t acer	roublesome	steady	بئبت
c b	21.	gonise	easy	مستويع
92		The second de special and the second second	resist	بغاوم

Important Language Notes

Words with related meanings

- كثير من الكلمات والتعبيرات في اللغة الإنجليزية تستخدم بمعانٍ متقاربة مع فارق بسيط في المعنى مثل:

feel training available for remind	work assent a correct	201161	ثمرين (روتينى للحفاظ على الصحة والليامة: قائم بالعمل/في فترة العمل
	tal	ke off	پخبر

iliang my boss and arranged to take some time off.

ild better take my shoes off.

The plane should take off on time.

Her business has really taken off.

- يستخدم (take off) بمعان مختلفة مثل:

يتغيب عن العمل

يخلع (ملابسه/حذائه إلخ)

تقلع (طائرة)

ينجح - لاحظ، أيضنًا المعانى التالية مع الفعل (take):

take apart take ... back يفصل يُرجِع/يذكر بالماضي take down take in يدون يستضيف ايفهم ايخدع take out take over يخرج/يصظحب للخارج/يدمر يتولى عمل/يسيطر على take through يشرح/يفسر take to يعتاد على/ينجذب إلى

reach

- مستخدم الفعل (reach) بمعان مختلفة في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

Reach The plane reached Cairo Airport at 8 o'clock. يصل إلى مكان reach ▶ She fell while reaching down a vase from the top shelf. The girl's hair reaches down to her waist. يصل طولة/ارتفاعة إلى

Temperatures are expected to reach 40 degrees this تصل برجة الحرارة إلى summer.

The Egyptian Football team could reach the final of يصل إلى/يحرز (تقدم) the last African Cup.

It isn't easy to reach your ambition. يصل إلى/يحقق (شيء معنوي)

I couldn't reach my boss on the phone, so I sent him يستطيع التحدث إلى an email.

31

reach

reach

reach

reach

reach

Suffix اللاحقة

مفاطع تضاف أخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو نوع الخلمة منعا

	(379 w	With Car A			
Suffix	Meaning		Exar	nples	
	تعطی معنی (ملی، ب) او (په)	hopeful	مبشر	painful	P.
تعطی معنی (ملی، ب) او (به)		مخيف بائس	helpful homeless	عداسما _{ني} دمام ۱۰ د .	
less	تعطی معنی (بلا) او (بدون)	hopeless painless	بانس غیر مؤلم	powerless	_{ينز} رابلا مأوى ينزلبلا قوة

Additional Languages (n.

	-	The state of the same of the state of the st
include لة في القوائم)	تضمن/يشمل/يضم (خاص	▶ The price of the trip includes transport.
contain	حتوی علی (داخل شیء)	The new gallery contains many original paintle
consist (of	بتكون من (My new apartment consisted of three rooms
	۱- يرفق (بدلخل خطاب/طرد ه ۲- يحيط بسور	► I enclosed a photo in my letter to my cousin. The swimming pool was enclosed by a high feature.
allow + obj	. ۱ وی ۴ ۱۱۱۱. پسمخ/یدع	television at weekends
101 + ODJ. + IN	ربعمع/يدع (بعدها المصدر)	I stepped back and let the old man pass.
antiff (يحدد/يقصر أيضع حدًّا ال	The government made a law to limit imports of foreign cars.
mark (بنتن sociable	۱ - یحمد (علی خریطة/۲ ۲ - یحمد/یمیز	I've marked the pages you need to look at. A party was held to mark the occasion.
	الجتماعي (شخص يتعامل	My friend is very sociable. He enjoys parties and
social (pa	اجتماعي (خلص بالعجة	Violence has become a social problem in Egypt

			omes (sup)
5	freelance	حر/مستقل	Working as a freelance photographer, my friend earns good money.
	free	۱-در (غیر مقید) ۲-مجانی	I can go with you to the cinema. I'm free today. Some restaurants offer free meals for poor people.
6	launch فضائية/قعر صناعي سواق أو خدمة للجمهور	۱ - يطلق قذيمُة/مركبة ۲- طرح منتج معين في الأد	A test satellite was launched from the base. The company hopes to launch the new medicine by next October.
,		١ - يطلق سراح شخص أ ٣- يتوقف عن الإمساك بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	The man was released from prison yesterday. The children released some balloons to celebrate the arrival of guests.
7	explore	يستكشف مكان	Paris is a wonderful city to explore.
	discover	<u> ئىشتى</u>	The Curies are best known for discovering radium.
	invent	يخترع	Graham Bell Invented the telephone in 1876.
,	find out	يكتشف حقيقة	▶ He asked me to find out what your plans are after you leave.
*	reach (جر	يصل إلى (بدون حروف	▶ We reached the Cairo Tower at 9 o'clock.
_	معنى إلي) arrive	يصل (يتبعما in–at	▶ The children arrived at school five minutes late.
3	anniversary	نکری سئوی ة	My parents celebrated their twentieth wedding anniversary in January.
	memory	ذاكرة/ذكري	▶ He has lots of happy memories of his stay in London.
10	affect (v)	يۇثر على	Smoking affected my uncle's health badly.
	effect (n)	تأثير	Smoking had a bad effect on my uncle's health.



لسم مقرد + ۱۳۵۲ آستان & لسم جامع ت ۱۳۳۲ آستان &

صفة مقارنة + The كلما كلما كلما كلما كلما كلما قيامة ساعتين بالسيارة ومظ أن two-hour طفة لما يعدما وأن hour نأتى مفرد وأنا أرسا الجمع نجمع ما يعدما من أسماء ونحذف a

a two-way road

two-way roads

طرق کل منحا نو اتجاهین

طريق ئو اتجامين

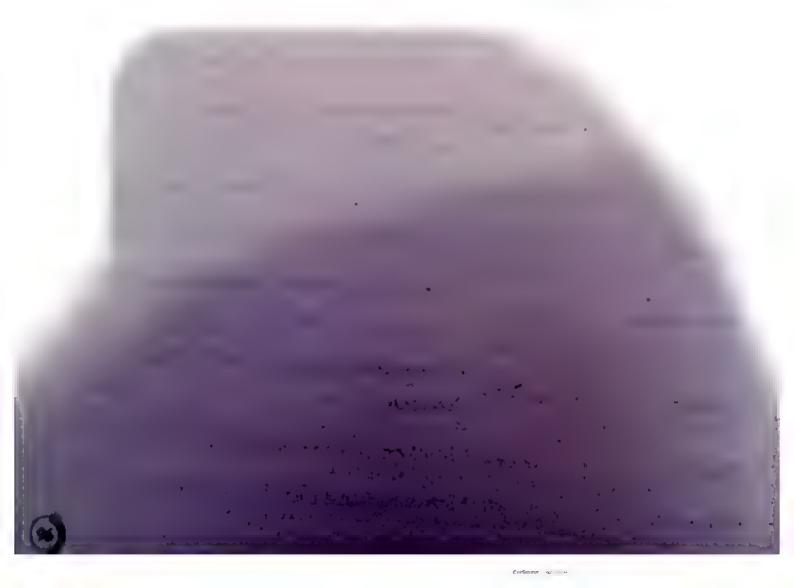
استرامات کل استرامة منما عشر مقائق ten-minute breaks استرامات

سُنْدُم هَذَه الصِيغَة للتَّعيير عن العقارنة بين موقفين (زبادة أو نقصات) أو (تغيرًا طرديًّا أو عكسيًّا)

> The harder you work, the more successful you will be, كلما اجتمعت أكثر، كلما لزييت تجلعًا.

The more people want to buy something, the cheaper it will become.

كلماً زاد عدد الناس النَّين يرغبون في شراء شيء ما ,كلما أصبح رخيصًا.



Vocabulary Exercises

1305e the correct	answer	from a	, b , (c or	d:	
-------------------	--------	--------	----------------	------	----	--

al painful	b) hopeful	c) lawfui	d) playful
1 Sperts dividys train	" at the natified 2006 "	· · · · · · · · · · · Of Using ch	mental and total and a
3) Stiecra	p) barbases	c) results	all manages a
(aners been under	raliot of sinc	e her mother's illne	ess. She has to do all the
mousework in additi	don to her academic s	tudies.	
almanagement	b) pleasure	c) treasure	d) stress
The indus	try was the most affect	ted economic secto	or due to the coronavirus.
Nost hotels and be	eaches were totally clos	sed.	
a agriculture	b) tourism	c) finance	d) sports
The manager asked	I the new clerk to finish	the company	before the weekend.
a) skills	b) achievements	c) accounts	d) loses
1 My cousin works a	sphotograp	her and travels to	many places looking for
good shots.			
a) freelance	b) free	c) busy	d) vacant
Doctors believe that	atexercise is	vital for your health	4
*/ gradual	le) require	e) dull	d) custom
"We can't meet the	e, our compai	ny will have great lo	oses.
VIII III DO	H A 1 11	-1 ctart HDQ	o i deadine
The lawyer application	b) speed line sed saying that he can	't any moi	re work at the moment.
take off	Sed Saying that he com	c) take in	d) take down
Customer San	b) take on	ining to help them	deal with difficult d) clients
a) officers	lerks receive special tra	c) sellers	d) clients
Nowadays	b) dealers rk is important to a co	en so it helps t	o be
Tays Teamwo	rk is important to a col	mpariy, 30 it iloses	IN!-I-I-
skilful reamwo	THE IS IT I DOT LETTE 4	c) ambitious	d) sociable

PART		ated by the World He	ealth
The report about th	e new disease was acce	epted by the World Ho c) Organisation	d) Section
a) Company	b) Department	c) Organisation there the	ney into
Oil and water don't	mix and even if you sha	ake them together, th	
layers.			d) share
al congrate	b) ignore	c) combine	u) state
≝ Exams are	so students feel under	pressure.	
a) stress	b) stressed	c) stressing	d) stressful
Most of us work har	d to work and	I family duties.	4
a) weigh	b) balance	c) measure	d) lighten
	w suffering from the st	ress of modern life	
a) feeling			d) astonishing
	nain is to impr	rove the economy.	
a) task	b) profession		d) work
¹⁹ One disadvantage o		he of safe p	
to play.	,		idees for the time
a) leak	b) lack	c) lake	d) leaking
20 The residents' main o		he amount of heavy to	officering those
a) strip	b) limit	c) inhabit	
21 There was a big cond		of Egypt's victory	d) mark
a) anniversary			
_	of huving a now can be	c) memorial	d) failure
Office.	a new car be	ecause he drives a long	gto hisr
a) gap	b) space		
23 It's hoped that Egyp	t will	c) distance	d) age
a) launch	b) rise	er satellite in the near	future,
The company discov	/ered that all	c) do from the pipeline	d) release
a) locking	b) lacking	from the pipeline	<u>.</u>
Helping poor and di	isabled people is a nob b) benefit	c) leaking	d) blocking
a) career	b) benefit	lein life.	
# He is the O	f the foreign	c) work	d) mission
a) operator	b) actor	c) work in Egypt. He works as	its agent
98)	, weld	c) representative	d) performer

to know that millions of trees are cut down every year. Units (586) b) pleasant c) delightful Astronauts are trained in some exercises to adapt to life in space. two d) natural c) weightless d) weighty a) twisting b) orbiting c) turning d) spinning (Helpful Vocabulary & Language Notes When you areand expect the worst, your attitude is often negative and b) pessimistic al optimistic c) hopeful # The young footballer hurt his arm in a/an session last Friday. d) harmful al lecture b) exercise c) training always need some notes to me what to say. d) scene ren a) tell b) remember c) remind d) forget #I'm lucky because my job hashours, and I can come and go as much as I want. b) tough c) strict d) flexible et. ■The ______ of the research is to find out about the causes of the disease. a) consequence b) result c) cause d) purpose *The waiter told me that the bill of the restaurant taxes. a) consists b) encloses c) includes d) contains Mr. Hany alwayshis children watch cartoons on Saturdays. W a) licenses b) permits c) allows d) lets Young people need help with choosing a suitable a) nursery b) salary c) occupation My sister was punished because she rudely father's speech. a) admitted c) obeyed b) interrupted d) corrupted a) receipt c) recipe d) formula My uncle is keen on spending enough time with his children every day. b) form a) quality c) quantity d) busy b) press about the best places to visit in Cairo. c) tops b) tapes

and the same of th			
one of the spoke	s on my bikeb) horn	Washed	Units (5&6)
a) pedal	b) horn	o when I	nit a stone.
Although it's dan	gerous, the astronaut	c) circle	d) wheel
on the space stati	ion,	s decided to go on a	d) wheel to repair a leak
a) spacewalk	b) spaceshin		
My friend had eld	b) spaceship erly parents who coul	c) spaceman	d) spaceport
them.	IDOS OILM COLORES	a no longer live	d) spaceport
al dependently	b) nearefully		
Most young peop	ole stay in	c) probably	d) independently
a) compact		errian or via social ma	edia these days.
•	-,	c) attract	d) connect
Expressions, Idion	ns, Prepositions, Deriv	ativos C.	
The word "revolve	"is similar in	alives, synonyms & A	intonyms
a) spin	"is similar in meaning	to the word	24 T
•	b) land	c) float	d) dive
a) around	spending money li	ke that, you'll end up	in debt.
a) diodilo	D) ON	c) out	all con-
a) Desforce	nic torepair	s to the brakes of my	car.
of heriotti	b) get	e) do	all lamon
a) in	er is considered an exp	ertfamily c	ases.
-) 1(1	b) with	c) by	all age
a) done - 1	l warming, we should	reduce ouron	oil as a source of energy.
- Aprild	oj dependent	c) depended	و ما ما الما الما الما الما الما الما ال
al romail to	active" can be the opp	osite of the adjective	2
- Aldey Innie.	b) convincing	c) excited	and the first and the first of
a) for	hat we need to focus	finishing the	project.
	la li im	al on	ALC:
	of water in the corner	where water was di	ripping from a
a) leak	b) leaky	c) lacking	d) lacked
cveryone in the of project.	ffice is working extrem	nely hard to	d) lacked the deadline of the big
a) meet	b) miss	c) have	d) face

The verb "restrict" is	s a synonym to the ve	erb	
a) expand	b) increase	c) limit	d) develop
71 I'm taking Monday	to go visit n	ny friend in hospital	•
a) in	b) off	c) at	d) on
72 Father asked us to	still while he	took us a photo.	
a) remove	b) move	c) stand	d) train
79 The word "attach" is	an antonym to the v	vord	
a) join	b) separate	c) attack	d) prevent
A child shouldn't be	out his ow	n at a late time at ni	
a) on	b) at	c) in	d) for
35 I think that the weat	ther is good enough	to for a wa	ılk.
a) travel	, b) go	c) move	d) ctou
if you're worried abo	out using this medici	ne, you can	Vous doctor for a
-, , , , , ,	D) give	citaka	.03
Our small garden is:	separatedt	he factory by a tall f	GDCO
-, -,	מונס	-1-4	
⁷⁰ A new systema) manage	em might be the soli	ution for the compa	d) from
a) manage	b) management	c) manager	ny's problems.
it's advisable to do s	omething	hefore gains a se	d) managed
it's advisable to do s or taking a hot bath.	- The state of the	belove going to bed	such as reading a
a) relax	b) relaxation	a) volum	
Weather satellites or a) weight	bit the earth at a	c) relaxing	d) relaxed
a) weight	b) height	от 2000 kilom	etres.
	3,14	c) length	d) width

d) width

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d;

The young woman's singing c	areer took after her TV appearance.
alat	b) off
c) on	el) 6
The new owner plans to make	changes to the company's
a) foundation	b) organisation
c) association	(i) plantation
I had to see a new doctor beca	ause mydoctor was on vacation.
a) regular	b) gradual
c) average	d) package
in the experiments, the childre	en learnt that the magnet out scrap iron from
other things.	out scrap fron from
a) divides	b) shares
c) builds	d) separates
The car driver was too shocke	ed to give a/an of what had happened at the
accident.	tile
a) offence	b) decision
c) account	d) result
On the company has	had a successful year because of the profits they made.
a) balance	b) account
c) ordinary	d) common
Some people believe that livin	g every day to the full is a for happiness.
•) list	b) recall
t) recipe	d) remark
The tobacco companies have	been taken to for exposing their clgarette
urands to kids.	
a) duty	b) task
c) job	d) punish
The manager prefers to keep e	mployees at a
a) 2bace	b) range
c) rate	d) distance

10 Criminai law does not treat t	raffic crimes with the they deserve,
a) portion	b) gravity
c) purpose	d) rule
17 Thousands of young	were tested for the role of the hero at the new movie
a) directors	b) applicants
c) hopefuls	d) services
12 Experts advise us not to	into exercise without warming up first.
a) launch	b) start
c) land	d) fly
13 The famous footballer always	s makes sure that his private life is off to the pres
a) borders	b) results
c) limits	d) result
Many people were saved and	hosted in a Church in African wars,
a) task	b) test
c) job	d) mission
15 Palestine is nearly the only ar	ea which is still under in the whole world.
and a second	b) profession
c) organisation	ell traints -
16 The museum exhibits include	a widelycollection of Greek vases.
a) alike	b) correspondent
c) representative	all a s
17 The sudden fall on the stock r	market due to the coronavirus crisis sent brokers into
a/an	to the coronavirus crisis sent brokers into
a) spin	let out to
c) astonishment	b) orbit
Our office is taking	d) loss
a) at	
c) on	b) off
The world's soft drinks market	t is dominated by the US
a) giants	is dominated by the USPensi and Coca Co
c) statues	- real hotales
20 The young scientist deviced	new product for the of industrial waste.
a) healing	new product for the of industrial
c) health	- Scharloup
104)	d) treatment



Grammar Revision)



so/such that; enough/too to

90+adjective/adverb + that + sentence

جدًالدرجة أن

- تستخدم 50 قبل الصفة بدون اسم وقبل الحال أيضًا.

- The film was so interesting that I watched it twice.
- The team played so badly that they couldn't score any goals,
- I was so busy doing my homework all night that I forgot to have my dinner.

such + adjective + noun + that + sentence

جدًّالدرجة أن

اسم مفرد یعد + صفة + a/an

اسم مفرد لا يعد + صفة + م

اسم جمع + صفة +

- It's such a nice shirt that I've decided to buy it.
- It's such nice weather that we'll go out soon.
- They are such nice shirts that I want to buy them.

adjective/adverb + enough to + inf.

بدرجة كافية

– نستخدم قبل enough صفة أو حال بمعنى إيجابي، أي بدرجة كافية لتموقف الذي فيه.

- The boy was clever enough to answer the question.
- The question was easy enough to answer.
- Aliran quickly enough to catch the train.
- The suit wasn't cheap enough for me to buy.

enough + noun

Idon't have enough sugar to make two cups of tea.

loo + adjective/adverb + to + inf.

جدًّالدرجة الا

- تعملي too معنى الزيادة على الحد الضروري أو المطلوب

- The tea is too hot to drink.
- The suit was too expensive to buy.

- تستخيم too في نماية الجملة المثبتة بمعنى أبطئل

My brother speaks English well and I do, too.

so much/little		I have so little money that I can't buy the co
30 mach/little		▶ There were so few chairs that we stood all
so many/few	+ plural noun	the time.
such a lot of	+ plural/uncountable	I have such a lot of books that I spend all the time reading.

ملخص لما سبق

so	+ adjective + adverb + many/few + plural noun + much/little + uncountable noun + a/an + adj, + اسم مفرد لا يعد + adj, + اسم مفرد لا يعد + adj, + عام بعم + adj. + adj. + عام بعم + adj. + adj. + عام بعم + adj. + adj. + adj. + adj. + adjective + adverb + adverb + many/much + noun		that	
such				
too			+ to + inf. + For someone to do somethin	
(not)	+ adjective + adverb	enough	+ to + inf. •	
enough/ + noun (not) enough			+ For someone to do something + to + inf. + For someone to do something	

Unit (6)

المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول Active & Passive voice

Active المهندي للمعلوم

- نستخدم المبني للمعلوم عندما يكون الفاعل (سواء عاقل او غير عاقل) أكثر أهمية من المفعول. st week.

The car hit the boy last week.

وتتكون الجملة في الميني للمعلوم من:

subject (S)	+ Voch : : : : : : :	وتتكون الجملة في الفيدي للمعلوم س
A.W	(V) الزمن verb +	+ object (O)
The car	hit	
		The boy.

Passive المبني للمجهول

- نستخدم المبنى للعجمول عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل:

The food is cooked well in this restaurant. (It is not important who did it.) المبنى للمجهول: هو الجملة التي نبداً فيها بالمفعول فريما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جدًا وتتكون الجلة بن

011		
Object	+ verb to be	+ P.P.
المفعول يصبح على	am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على شكل الفعل في المبثي للمعلوم	التصريف الثالث
The car	is being	repaired

Present simple/present continuous/future simple/passive infinitive

Present simple

المضارع البسيط

المبنى للمعلوم Active

He/She/It + V.s/es/ies

i/They/We/You + inf.

People like peace all over the world.

النفى Passive Negative

Obj + am/is/are + not + P.P.
War isn't liked all over the world.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj. + am/is/are + P.P

Peace is liked all over the world.

الاستفهام: Passive Interrogative

Is/Are + obj. + P.P.?

Wh-word + is/are + obj. + P.P.?

Is peace liked all over the world?

Why is peace liked all over the world?



Present continuous

المبتى للمعلوم Active

Subj. + am/is/are + v.ing

Look! they are building a stage in the square.

النفى Passive Negative

Obj. + am/is/are + not + being + P.P.

A stage isn't being built in the square.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P.

Look! A stage is being built in the square.

الاستفهام Passive Interrogative

Is/Are + obj. + being + P.P.?

Wh-word + is/are + obj. + being + P.P.?

Is a stage being built in the square?

Why is a stage being built in the square?

Future simple

المستقبل البسيط

المبنى للمعلوم Active

Subj. + will + inf.

 We expect that our teacher will explain the lesson again.

النقى Passive Negative

Obj. + will not + be +P.P.

The lesson won't be explained again.

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj. + will + be + P.P.

We expect that the lesson will be explained again.

الاستفهام Passive Interrogative

Will + obj. + be + P.P.?

Wh-word + will + obj. + be. + P.P.?

▶ Will the lesson be explained again?

▶ When will the lesson be explained again?

Passive infinitive

المبنى للمجهول مع الأفعال التي تأخذ المصدر

المبنى للمعلوم Active

+ to + inf. الفعل الذي يتبعه المصدر

▶ We need to build many hotels.

التفي Passive Negative

don't/doesn't + الفعل الذي يتبعه المصدر + to + be + P.P.

Many hotels don't need to be built.

الميثى للمجهول Passive

+ to be + P.P. الفعل الذي يتبعه المصدر

Many hotels need to be built.

Passive Interrogative الاستفهاد

!to be + inf + الفعل الذي يتبعه المصدر + to be + inf لائعل الذي يتبعه المصدر + Wh-word + do/does

+ to be + inf.?

Do many hotels need to be built?

▶ When do many hotels need to be build

Units (5&6)

الا معتمل (Lo be + P.P) في الميثي للمجمول:	C Units (586)
لوم يأتي بعدها (lo be + P.P.) في المبني للمجمول،	- الافعال التي يتبعها ,to + inf في المبنى للمه

ought to	يجب ان	to في المبنى للمعلوم يأتى بعدها (. need to	غمال التي يتبعها ,١١١أ
have to		seem to	حتاح
has to		appear to	9-1-
had to		(be) going to	وعبي
will have to		(be) about to	سوف
am to		(be) supposed to	على وشك
is to		needn't	مفروض لست في حاجة
are to	ا يجب ان	want to	ســــــ ـــ ــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
was to/were to	وجب أن	expect to	يتوقع
used to	ا عتاد أن	hope to	ر با يأمل

القواعد التي لم تدرس هذا العاه



Participle clauses

مبارات اسمر القاعل

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clause can come before or after the main part of a sentence.

ين اسم الفاعل هي مجموعة من الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ ing. هذه العبارات تأتي قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.

- 1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with as or when
 - . يُستُخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل **لاستبدال الجمل التي يما** When/As/While/After وي<mark>عدهم فاعل وفعل.</mark>
 - As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends
 - ▶ Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
 - ▶ When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
 - Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.
- 2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with and - تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من الجمل التي تبدأ بـ and -
 - The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
 - The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.
- 3. The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:

- فاعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.

- I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
- Hearing the phone ring, i picked it up.
- ▶ The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
- The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.
- 4. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).
 - · تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من جمل السببية (because, as, since). Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
- ▶ Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree. 5. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.
 - ▶ The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother. ' لاستبدال عبارة موصولة في المبنى للمعلوم.
 - The boy talking to Jim Is my brother.

Usage الاستخدام 6. To form the negative of participles, we add not before the

- لصياغة النفى من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نصيف not -• Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.
- 7. After the verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch

بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث

- ▶ I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning. كاملا نستخدم المصدر،
- 8. After: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste time and be
 - He was busy painting the room.
 - They wasted the time playing cards.
 - I left my children doing their homework.



Past participle clauses

عبارات اسم، المقعول

الفعل في التصريف الثالث يدعى past participle ويمكن استخدامه في الآتي:

🕦 يمكن أن يكون صفه تسبق الاسم في أي مكان في الجملة.

Surarmed forces are making good efforts to keep us safe.

ismarket sells only canned food.

🕡 بدل ضمائر الوصل Who/which والجملة المبنية للمجهول بعدهما.

remeat eaten yesterday was delicious.

he boy punished last week had made serious mistakes.

*the boy who was punished

😭 يستخدم التصريف الثالث أول الكلام ويكون له معنى المبنى للمجمول في الأحوال الآتية: ١ - يستخدم ينفس معنى أأ الشرطية.

three times a day, this medicine will have a good effect.

this medicine is taken three times).

٧- يستخدم لإعطاء الأسباب مثل because.

Show by a scorpion, she was carried to hospital at once.

Because she was bitten

alone at home, Sara felt unhappy.

Because Sara was left alone by the wind, Ahmed fell to his knees = Because Ahmed was blown, PART 1

Grammar Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c of d: 1 It was delicious cheese that all of it was eaten and nothing was left. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 My father looks young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. 2 I he was wearing that the boss rewarded them all. 3 I hardly to all his neighbours that he studies day and night. 4 She is to turn off all the taps before leaving. 3 I hoo b) such a c) such d) such and such all sudents were keen to attend it. 4 She is to go out to buy food for himself. 5 She was wearing the patients were keen to attend it. 5 She was wearing the patients were keen to attend it. 6 She was wearing the patients were keen to attend it. 6 I was once to run a very long way. 6 I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 7 I he bus is tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. 8 I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 9 I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 9 I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 9 I he is to go out to buy food for himself. 9 I he speaks important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 9 I he is to go out to buy food for himself. 9 I he speaks important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 9 I he is to go out to buy food for himself. 9 I he is to go out to buy food for himself. 9 I he is to go out to buy food for himself. 9 I he is the food of the people there. 9 I he is the food of the people there. 9 I he is t	Chaose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c o	rd:	hing was left
a) such a b) so young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. young that everyone thinks that he is my brother. a) such b) so c) too d) such a a) such a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard She is to turn off all the taps before leaving. a) too careful b) careful enough c) enough careful d) such careful she was wearing elegant clothes that all people admired her. a) such a b) such c) such d) so He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too e lwas once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit a) too b) such c) enough d) so a) such a b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such a c) enough d) so a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so a) too tired b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) so d) such b) enough c) so d) such c) so d) such c) so d) such c) too lucky a) too lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky	1 It was	delicious cheese that all	Ol If Man care	d) enough
a) such b) so that the boss rewarded them all. a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard She is to turn off all the taps before leaving. a) too careful b) careful enough c) enough careful d) such careful She was wearing elegant clothes that all people admired her. a) such an b) such a c) such d) so He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit b) such a c) enough d) so a) too tired b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) too d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) tired enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) such d) so tired d) such d) so tired d) too b) enough c) so d) such d) such d) such d) such d) so tired d) such	a) such a	b) so	c) such	my brother
a) such b) so that the boss rewarded them all. a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard She is to turn off all the taps before leaving. a) too careful b) careful enough c) enough careful d) such careful She was wearing elegant clothes that all people admired her. a) such an b) such a c) such d) so He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit b) such a c) enough d) so a) too tired b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) too d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) tired enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) such d) so tired d) such d) so tired d) too b) enough c) so d) such d) such d) such d) such d) so tired d) such	2 My father looks	young that eve	ryone thinks that he is	my brother.
a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard She is	a) such	b) 50	E) 100	d) such a
a) hardly b) hardness c) hardy d) hard She is	They worked so	that the boss re	ewarded them all.	
a) too careful b) careful enough c) enough careful d) such careful 5 She was wearing elegant clothes that all people admired her. a) such an b) such a c) such d) so 6 He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such 7 The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too 8 I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit a) too b) such a c) enough d) so 9 I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. a) such a b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) so d) such b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) so lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky d) so lucky		b) hardness	c) hardy	d) hard
s She was wearing elegant clothes that all people admired her. a) such an b) such a c) such d) so 6 He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such 7 The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too 8 I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit 9 I was tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. a) too b) such a c) enough d) so 10 It was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. 3 He is to go out to buy food for himself. b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too 10 The king was to meet Mr Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation. b) lucky enough c) too lucky d) so lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky	4 She is t	o turn off all the taps be	fore leaving.	
a) such an b) such a c) such d) so He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit I was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such a c) enough d) too a) too b) such a c) enough d) too b) tired enough c) so d) too b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such loo b) enough c) so d) such loo b) enough c) so d) such loo loo loo loo loo loo loo loo loo lo	a) too careful	b) careful enough	c) enough careful	d) such careful
He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too li was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit such a fit such a c) enough d) so b) such a c) enough d) so a) too b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so a) too tired b) tired enough c) so d) too d) too so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) such c) so d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) such c) so d) such d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky	She was wearing	Jelegant clothe	es that all people admir	red her.
He is keen to get a medical profession that he studies day and night. a) so b) too c) enough d) such The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too i was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit y l was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such a c) enough d) so a) too tired b) tired enough c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such d) so tired c) so d) such d) so tired c) enough tired d) so tired c) enough tired d) so tired d) so tired c) so d) such d) such d) such d) such d) so tired d) such d) He's got little patience with children the local state of the coronation. d) so lucky d) so lucky	a) such an	b) such a	c) such	d) so
a) so b) too c) enough d) such 7 The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so b) such c) enough d) too 6 I was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit 9 I was fired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. a) too b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) such a) too b) enough c) so d) such b) enough c) so d) such a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) so lucky	6 He iske	en to get a medical prof	ession that he studies	day and night.
The bus is old to go further than 80 k/h. a) so	a) so	b) too	c) enough	_
b) such c) enough d) too l was once to run a very long way. a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit l was tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. b) such a c) enough d) so lt was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) such b) enough c) so d) such a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky	7 The bus is	old to go further thar	n 80 k/h.	-, 5001
a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit 9 I was tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. a) too b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) such an a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too	a) so	b) such	c) anough	d) too
a) too fit b) fit enough c) so fit d) such a fit 9 I was tired that I couldn't keep my eyes open. a) too b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) such b) enough c) so d) such a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky b) such d) so lucky a) too lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky b) such d) so lucky a) too	was once	to run a very long wa	ay.	u) (00
a) too b) such a c) enough d) so so It was important lecture that all students were keen to attend it. the is to go out to buy food for himself. b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) too b) enough c) so d) such a fit b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired b) enough c) so d) such b) enough c) so d) such little patience with children that all students were keen to attend it. d) too d) too	a) too tit	b) fit enough		م بيلالم
b) such a c) enough d) so a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) too to go out to buy food for himself. b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough c) so d) such d) such b) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too little patience with children that all students were keen to attend it. d) so d) too d) so tired d) so tired c) so d) such b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too	I Was tir	ed that I couldn't keep n	Ny eves open	a) such a fit
a) such a b) such an c) so d) too a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough foo b) enough c) so d) too d) so tired d) so tired d) so tired d) too		DI CUCE o		4.
a) too tired b) tired enough c) enough tired d) so tired a) too b) enough b) enough c) so d) too d) too d) too d) so tired d) so tired d) so tired d) so tired d) too d) too enough tired d) so tired d) so tired d) too enough tired d) so tired d) too enough tired d) so tired d) too d) too lucky d) too lucky a) too	II Wasin	aportant lecture that all	Students wore 1	d) so
the speaks rudely to all his neighbours that they avoid him and his family. 1) The king was to meet Mr Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation. 2) He's got little patience with children that they avoid him and his family. 3) too lucky 4) so lucky 4) so lucky 4) so lucky	# Ho is	b) such an	c) so	
the speaks rudely to all his neighbours that they avoid him and his family. 1) The king was to meet Mr Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation. 2) He's got little patience with children that they avoid him and his family. 3) too lucky 4) so lucky 4) so lucky 4) so lucky	a) too tin-	go out to buy food for h	imself	d) too
a) too b) enough c) so a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too b) lucky enough c) too lucky d) so tired d) so lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky	ta He speake	b) tired enough	f) one well was	
a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too d) such c) too lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky	a) too	rudely to all his neigh	bours that the	d) so tired
a) enough lucky b) lucky enough c) too lucky a) too d) such c) too lucky d) so lucky d) so lucky	19 The king was	b) enough	sheet they avoid I	him and his family
a) too Padelice with children that a go so lucky	a) enough had	to meet Mr Rassen	dull is at	d) such
a) too Padelice with children that a go so lucky	He's got	b) lucky enough	share forest before	e the coronation.
b) such c) enough a) such disparty that I couldn't specific that he can't be a teacher.	a) too	little patience with chile	trop the color	d) so lucky
a) such big party that I couldn't specific	■ It was	b) such	ren that he can't be a t	teacher
	a) such) party that I couldn't se	enough	d) so
b) so	(12)	b) so	s such alf of the peop	ole there
c) such a d) too			e) such a	d) too

the bank was	crowded to find a b) so	Seat for	Units (5&6)
a) too	b) so	s grandfat	her.
wie rucksack isn't	to get evenue	יוֹבערַא	d) enough
a) too big	b) big enough long walk to school ev b) too tired	c) enough big	d) so big
a) tired enough	b) too tired	y ady tridt I Wish I d	ould have a car.
che speaks	good English that wo	c) so tired	d) such a tired
a) so	good English that yo	na think it was her n	ative language.
4 3v	-	C Operation	
p All Statiles are also	ays that he isb) too	young to understand	politics.
a) so		c) such	d) enough
Mille Annough	eakfor every	one to hear clearly.	
a) loud enough	b) so loudly	c) too loudly	d) loudly enough
Ine music was	loud that you cou	uld hear it from miles	away.
•	b) so	c) too	d) enough
p)hadbig b	oreakfast that I didn't e	eat anything else for t	he rest of the day.
a) such a	b) too	c) enough	d) so
n winter it's	cold to stay outdoo	rs especially at night.	
a) so	b) enough	c) such	d) too
Fortunately, the tab	ole wasfor all	of us to sit round.	
	b) so big		d) such big
	many things to do tha		
a) such	b) enough	c) such a	d) so
We hada (good time on holiday	that we didn't want to	o come home.
a) so	b) too	c) such	d) enough
a Will the stadium he	to have 100,	000 spectators?	
a) large enough	b) too large	c) so large	d) enough large
a It was hor	rible weather that we	spent the whole day i	ndoors.
4) 50	61 to 0	c) such	d) such an
^{to} 5he was	b) too b listen to anyone spea	king around her.	
"I LOO ADOD	L) enough	c) so anyry	d) such angry
The light war "	ningfor anyo	ne to notice it.	
a) enough bright		c) bright enough	d) brightly enough
oright	b) too bright		Gi:

32 The question was difficult for the students that set for the exam to answer c) enough b) such 33 It isuseful book that you can gain a lot of information by reading it. c) such a d) too b) so a) such an It wasamazing performance that everyone left the theatre happily. d) enough c) so b) such a) such an 35 The earthquake was that the entire town was destroyed. b) too powerful a) powerful enough c) such powerful d) so powerful 36 Which of the following sentences has a negative meaning? a) This room is too big. b) This room is big enough. c) This room is so big. d) It's such a big room. 37 If you drink, you won't get good sleep. a) too much coffee b) so many coffee c) enough coffee d) such coffee enough . 38 There were so many footballs that I didn't know which one to choose. Which expression substitutes "so many" in the previous sentence? a) many enough b) such many c) so much "It wasn't warm enough for me to go swimming means the same as d) such a lot of a) It was too cold for me to swim b) It was enough warm for me to swim c) It was so hot for me to swim d) It was too warm for me to swim Which one of the following isn't true? a) It was so hot that I feel like having an ice-cream. b) It was such a hot day that I feel like having an ice-cream. c) It was too hot that I feel like having an ice-cream. d) It was so hot a day that I feel like having an ice-cream. 41 Do you know what languagein New Zealand? b) will be spoken This book mustto the library by the date above. d) is speaking b) return Large numbers of peopleon the roads because of accidents. d) to be returned c) have killed

	A 11 - small
The drugs found by the police.	Units (5&6)
a) was destroyed	
a had been destroyed	b) will be destroyed
stamps at any post of	d) will destroy
a) must to be bought	h) wore by
c) can be bought	b) were bought d) will buy
Animals should really	in their natural habitat
a) see b) have so	een alba
Mealsevery day. They	should be healthy
a) prepare	b) have prepared
d) have to be prepared	d) has prepared
Drivers are advisedan	alternative route in case of emergency.
a) to use b) to be u	150.0
The milk is brought to my flat b	out lettersin the entrance of the house.
a) have left b) are left	t c) are being left d) are leaving
Normally this streete	very day, but it wasn't swept last week.
a) has been swept b) was sy	vept c) is swept d) is being swept
11 This dress can't be washed, it m	rust
a) dry cleaned	b) be dried-clean
c) be dry-cleaned	d) to dry-cleaned
Fruit very early otherv	wise it can't be got to the market.
a) have been picked	b) has to be picked
c) has to pick	d) have to be picked
My house by the came	eras that have been recently installed.
a) is watching	b) had been watched
c) was watching	d) is being watched
The professor by a nu	mber of reporters.
a) should meet b) will me	eet c) will be met d) met
New measures against crime	by the government.
a) will be introduced	b) will introduce
c) is introduced	d) are introducing
My uncle's house by a	famous designer.
^{9) IS} decorating	b) should decorate d) is going to be redecorated
c) will decorate	d) is going to be redecorated

t this restaurant and coffee and sandwiches

57 Hot meals are se	erved till 10.00 at this res	(65.0	
up to 11.00.	tdored	c) are ordering	d) were ordered
a) may order	b) can be ordered in the gardens not v	with their owners in fla	ats.
	in the gardens not t	c) to leave	d) leaving
a) be left	b) leave	6, 02 1	_
	ages in 2100?	c) will be spoken	d) are spoken
a) will speak	b) were spokenset? It has been broken		
	set ? It has been bloken	b) is being repaire	-
a) was repaired			u
c) had been repai		d) is repaired	
	f flatsas it is ve		
a) are demolishing		b) are being demo	lished
c) is being demolis		` d) is demolishing	
a) were done	used toby me		e by a computer.
a) were done		c) doing	d) be done
a) have been total	when you shou	ld go in to see the do	ctor.
4 A rare Picasso ani-	b) will be told	c) are telling	d) can tell
a) can exhibit	ingat the Nat	tional Gallery next Mo	onday.
- diding	UI Will be exhibited	and the state of	d) was exhibited
a) is cutting	and I think it	will block the street	47 Has exhibited
	DI WILL CLIE		all to to a .
a) written	invented everything h	ad by band	d) is being cut
67 Please ton	b) to be written	c) been writing	
a) holy:-	with those two h	leavy hags I spark	d) be written
This spaint	b) help	c) be helped	
a) was et-1	don't think it	. ac usibed	d) be helping
a) will en-	llegally dump rubbish i	c) won't be stolen	d) isn't stolen
The name of	b) must to fined	the street.	
The new office build a) are employed	ing is huge. Over 500 m	of may be fined	d) have fined
-, are employed	b) are employing	chee there	
(116)	THE TENER OF THE PARTY OF THE P	c) employ	-als 2

n The mail b	ov Fridav.	(Units (5&6)
The man	,,	t.s.	
a) is arrived c) will be arrived		b) will have been arrived	
	to be good for	d) will have arrive	d
	to be good for y b) is believed		
a) believes		c) is believing	d) has believed
	how to use the new		
a) to learn	b) to be learned	c) to be learning	d) being learned
What time			
	e going to be brought		
	e going to be brought		
	going to be brought		
d) is their luggage	going to bring		
75 His excellent behav	iour many pe	ople.	
a) fascinates		b) is fascinated	
c) is fascinated by		d) is being fascinated	
76 It that too	little moneyk	by the government o	on roads.
a) is said/spends		b) is being said/is being spent	
c) has said/is spent		d) has been said/i	s spending
77 The office carpet is	so dirty. It needs	phubres V	
a) cleaning	b) to be cleaned	c) to clean	d) both (a) and (b)
78 Do not beat the do	g. Let the dog	•	
a) isn't beaten		b) not to be beate	en
c) not be beaten		d) isn't being beat	
75 Changing the sente	ence "I want someone to	o love me." Into pass	ive will be
a) someone is wan			
b) I want to be love			
c) someone is love			
d) someone wants			
	ollowing is not true?		
a) People claim the	temple is the oldest in	the world.	
b) The tomple is also	imed to be the oldest i	n the world.	
C) It's election of all the	at a sample is the oldesi	III the more	
d) live also	the temple to be the ol	dest in the world	
" it's claimed that	the temple to be the o		

Advanced & Open General Exercises

the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Choose the contest to r	ny father.
1 We broke the computer to r	b) belongs
a) belonged	d) belonging
c) which belonging	
2 to meet his friend, the boy o	b) Not wanting
a) Wanting	d) To want
c) Wanted	
for her gloves, she dug throu	
a) Search	b) Searched
c) Searching	d) Being searched
. In the street, he was accused	d of helping the thieves to enter the shop.
a) Whistling	b) Whistle
c) to whistle	d) Whistled
5 People late will not be allow	ed to enter.
a) arrived	b) arrive
c) to arrive	d) arriving
to the bus stop, she lost her	shoe.
c) Running	b) To run
	d) Ran
on their beds, the children co	ouldn't do their homework
c) Sit	b) Sat
* The man	
The mana blue Jumper is in	the garden.
c) to wear	b) wearing
a) Had had c) Having	d) wear
a) Had had	n't walk during the pight
INIT	
my brother in trouble Left	d) Not having
a) To find c) Finding	ed to help him solve his proble
- inluing	
(118)	d) Find

(Units (5&6) by the sun, the driver didn't see the stop sign. a) Blind b) Blinding d To blind d) Blinded The television twenty years ago was stolen. a) buying b) bought c) buy d) was bought by the chef himself, the dinner will be a real treat. a) Preparing b) Prepare c) Prepared d) To prepare g Loften buy cheese from Paris and Russia. a) imported b) import c) importing d) imports Though in England, she spent most of her childhood in the United States. a) bear b) was born c) bearing d) born sidon't know much about the gamesby children nowadays. al playing b) played c) play d) were played by a sudden storm, they had to seek shelter under a tree. a) Surprised b) Surprise c) Surprising d) To surprise 1 I really loved the flowersin London. a) grow b) growing c) grown d) were grown The moneyin the street has been given to charity. a) find b) finding d) found c) was found We all praised the cake by my mother. a) bake b) baked d) was baked c) baking

Open Book General Exercises on Units 5 & 6)

Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d	l:	
The mobile phone wa	sn't for me t	c) too cheap	d) cheap enough
a) enough cheap 2 They hadteri a) so 3 He drovecare	bi enough	C) Selection	d) too
a) such	b) so	c) too	d) enough
The house is	for her to live in along		
a) so big	b) such big		d) big enough
She has prett	y dresses that everyo	ne admires them.	
a) such	b) so	c) such a	d) enough
At the beginning of th			
a) placing	b) place	c) are placing	d) are placed
If there is an emergenous	y, a whistle		·
a) will be blown	b) was blown	c) blowing	d) blew
6 Electricity for	all kinds of purposes.		
a) uses	b) is used	e) is using	d) use
.9 This lesson wit	thout attending the c	class.	47 036
ar can understand		b) understands	
c) can be understood		At a second	
Our houseso \ a) decorates	we are staying with fr	iends at the main	ng .
a) decorates	b) was decorated	c) is describe	nt.
Some research has shown	Wn that people with	e) is decorating	nt. d) is being decorate
Some research has show	Paralle Willie	out protners and sis	iters tend to be less
"/ active	EA		
The	101 marked Formate	c) intelligent	d) wealthy
a) launch	b) start	entry in the field of	Space
People usually celebrate	the of the	c) set off	d) beginning
People usually celebrate a) anomalous The effect of the	b) anonymous	r important events.	- r beginning
or the effect of the medici	THE WAS SO STORY	c) anniversary	d) adulus
The effect of the medicinal orbits Many scientists think the	b) spin	t it made my head	d) advisory
the steer thank the	at sending -	c) move	******************************
al alest	spacesh	ip with humane to	u) track
Many scientists think the stars, a) aiming	b) getting	Winglis III (T is really
(120)	- acting	c) arriving	

			Units (5&6)
Sama was taking of	ff his shirt when the piece of clothing	hone rang That	dillis (500)
a) was removing a p	iece of clothing	ana. mat U	neans that he .
b) was rising into the	air from the ground		
c) was starting to be			
d) was having a holid	day from work		
Michael Phelps, the	American swimmer.		world records during his
career.	,	many (world records during his
a) broke	b) killed	e)	
Before the exam, a st	tudent should do mor	c) won	d) hit
a) examination	b) revision		
	is Financial Man	c) reform	d) mark
a) address	1. 1. a.ta.)		
	D) title	c) grade	d) rank
a) close	p meat from	other food in the	fridge.
•	b) united	c) separate	d) except
a) tough	allyand can	•	
_	b) flexible	c) strict	d) rough
a ne singer is regarde	d as a/an of t	he youth of her g	eneration.
a) operator	b) actor	c) representativ	ve d) performer
a you should	all the goods you buy	online for damag	e on arrival.
a) carve	b) purchase		d) examine
Astronauts have prob	iems moving around ir	n the spacecraft be	cause they are
	b) weight	-	d) weighty
The secretary	a file with pictures o	f the company's p	roducts to the e-mail she
sent the client.			
a) attracted	b) tied	c) Joined	d) attached
" Diseases spread	much faster in wi		
a) so	b) too	c) a lot	d) such
COVID19 is still	a mystery that the	re is no cure for it	yet.
a) so	b) such	c) too	d) enough
The traffic isn't movir	ng to reach o	ur destination on	time.
a) enough quickly	_	b) quicker enou	Jgh .
c) quickly enough		d) quick	
it's to swim	here because of shark	S.	
" 50 dangerous		D) dangerous e	
VISUCIT dangerous		d) too dangero	us
out of new building	sin our area	nowadays.	
a) are building	b) are being built	c) build	d) built

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people think of the Egyptians when the origin of paper is mentioned. A plant called papyrus grew in the marshes along the Nile River. The Egyptians cut thin strips of the plant, softened them in the water and left them to dry. Then they pounded them flat and laid the pieces at right angles to each other to form a mat. These sheets worked well for writing for the Egyptians, Greeks and Romans, The word paper comes from this word papyrus. Several other surfaces for writing were created by the Mayans and people in the Pacific Islands.

China was the source of what we call paper. Silk cloth with text written on them was found in the tombs. The art of paper making spread into Vietnam and Tibet about 250 A.D, then to Korea in the 300's and Japan in the 500's A.D. Papermaking continues to be a fine art in Japan. The craft went west in the 1100's by the Moors in North Africa. Europeans preferred to use parchment made from animal skin. Early European paper was made from rags, old cotton and linen until realising that wood was the correct product.

In the west, the art of making paper by hand has disappeared. In Thailand however, this art continues. The traditional paper is not really made from rice although it is called 'rice paper.' It is made from the mulberry tree. The industry creates paper for newspapers, magazines, books, paper bags, toilet paper, money and many other purposes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 31 From which of the following did paper as we know it come?
 - a) Egypt.
- b) Africa,
- c) England.

- 32 Which of the following surfaces were the Europeans using for writing before the introduction of paper?
 - a) Papyrus.
- b) Parchment.
- c) Snakeskin.

- ss in which of the following countries does the tradition of making paper by hand
 - a) Egypt.

- b) Thailand.
- c) India.

d) Greece.

- Which of the following statements is true?
 - a) Rice paper is made from rice plants.
 - b) Paper in Thailand was made from mulberry tree.
 - c) No one in the world makes paper by hand.
 - d) The word paper comes from the word parchment.

The underlined pronoun "It" refers to Units (5&6) alpaper d Thailand d) linen The underlined verb "pounded" in the first paragraph is similar in meaning to the verb almade b) planted d polished d) hit What is the difference between ancient Egyptian paper and other ways of making paper? a) The ancient Egyptian used papyrus while others used cotton or wood. biThe ancient Egyptian paper last longer than the others. c) Paper made by ancient Egyptian is worse than the others. d) Ancient Egyptians made paper from animal skin. # A suitable title for the passage is ".....". a) Ancient Egyptian paper b) The history of paper making d) Making paper in modern times d) Using parchments for writing One of the following isn't a purpose for using paper. a) Printing newspapers. b) Printing money. d) Making e-books. c) Making shopping bags. hittook nearlyfor paper making to spread in Europe from China. b) a century and a half al half a century d) a millennium and a half d ten decades Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Why was it dangerous for Mr Rassendyll to go into the poor area? a) Because Michael would be hidden there. b) Because there were no guards with him. () Because people there had known he wasn't the real King. d) Because people there were loyal to Duke Michael. Why did Mr Rassendyll insist on walking through the poor area alone? a) Because he wanted the people to see that their King trusted them. Because he wanted all people to like him. title wanted to show all of them that the new King is courageous.

d All of these.

PART

- What showed you that the poor loved the Duke a lot?
 - a) They cheered saying "long live Michael".
 - b) They threw stones at Rassendyll.
 - c) They had the Duke's picture hung in their windows.
 - d) They stopped the coronation.
- When did Rassendyll realise that the poor began to love him?
 - a) When he heard them cheering.
 - b) When they insuited Michael.
 - c) When they tried to take photos with him.
 - d) When they said "long live the King."
- 45 Who was Flavia?
 - a) She was Duke Michael's cousin.
- b) She was The Duke's future wife.
- c) She was the Queen of Ruritania.
- d) She was Rassendyll's wife.
- 46 Who was the only one that realised that the man crowned wasn't the real King?
 - a) Lord Topham.

b) Princess Flavia.

c) Duke Michael.

- d) The Marshal.
- 47 Which one wasn't true about Lord Topham?
 - a) He was from England.
 - b) He met Rassendyll after the coronation.
 - c) He had poor eyesight.
 - d) He met and greeted Rassendyll as an English man.
- What had the Princess heard about Rassendyll that made her surprised?
 - a) That he became thinner than before.
 - b) That he looked more tired and serious.
 - c) That he rode through the old town alone.
 - d) That he had changed and looked different.
- What did Fritz blame Rassendyll for?
 - a) Pretending that he was the real King.
 - b) Riding alone through the old town.
 - c) Going in a coach around the streets with the Princess.
- d) Sitting next to Duke Michael in the palace. Who did Sapt suspect must have told the Duke about what had happened in the lodge

- b) Max's mother.
- d) Johann

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- gt If you have the right to do what you like, don't be negative towards others. You ought to respect the person you are dealing with. Let everyone express their opinions freely. (أ) إذا كان لعيــك الحــق فــي أن تفعل ما تريد، فلا تكن سلبيـُـا تجاه الأخرين. يجب أن تحترم الشــخص الذي تتعامل معه. رع
 - الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.
 - (ب) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تنفي وتعارض ما يفعله الأخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذي تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن أرائهم بحرية،
 - (جـ) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تعارض ما يفعله الآخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشــخص الذي تتواصل معه. دع كل شــخص يعبر
 - { د) إذا كان لديك الحق في أن تفعل ما تريد فلا تنفي وتعارض ما يفعله الأخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشــخص الذي تتعامل معم دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.

Choose the correct English translation:

- 52 لقد ساهمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جعل العالم قرية كونية صغيرة ومكنت جميع الدول من تبادل المنتجات الزراعية والصناعية بسهولة ويسر
- a) Modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.
- b) The modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.
- c) The modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and has enabled all countries to exchange the industrial and agricultural products easily.
- d) Modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange agricultural and industrial products easily.

Choose the correct answer:

- 13 Which of the following sentences could be a concluding sentence in an essay about "school"?
 - a) It is said that schools shape us to become more responsible adults.
 - b) School is the place where we learn to read and write.
 - c) School life is the period that makes up most of your childhood memories.
 - d) We must remember that some of our happiest times have been spent in school.

Units 7&8



Key Vocabulary

سرطان

مستشار

طوارئ

مرض

يوشك أن (be) about to cancer (n) سبب ایسیب cause (n) (v) (d) consultant (n) أحمزة تشغيل و تحكم controls (n) director (n) مبير/مخرج emergency (n) foundation (n) أساس/مؤسسة gain (v) (ed) بكثسب horrlfied (adj) متعور امرعوب Illness (n) install (v) (ed) برکب (جمار) interrupt (v) (ed) يقاطع/يعترض

invisible (adj) link (n) (v) (ed) mast (n) physics (n pressure in process (n 🦤 radar m release : 1 an remove (* - d) signal n . htt technician (n threaten 🗤 🙃 🗀 zero-gravity (n)

پر مرثی *لخف*ی إبطاعلة ايربط أيصل يباي اعمود (محمول/إذاعة) ويبزياه المغط يملية/يجرى عملية/يعالج عفاز واداو يَطَلَقُ (في الهواء)/إطلاق بزيل لثارة/برسل إشارة س (شخص) تسام الجاذبية device diabeti

disapp

disease downs

dry (v' editor

electri

electr

energ

exist

extra

fictio

float

form

form

frequ

goo

gov.

grad

infe

limi

me

me

nai

nei

OC

Oc

Po

Po

P

P

D

يطور

Helpful Vocabulary

accurate (adj) يقيق add (v) (ed) يضيف ambulance (n) عربة إسعاف amount (n) كمية لمتدار archaeology (n) علم الأثار artificial intelligence (n) وزول المناس awake (adj) مستبقاله benefit (v) (ed) يملتثيد breathe (v) (d) يتناس

capture (v) (d) cell (n) chemical (n) (adj) complain (v) (ed) confident (adj) connection (n) cons (n) damage (v) (d) develop (v) (ed)

Confederate our un

بعسك ليأسر ايحتل خلبة فادة كيميائية/كيميائي يشكو واثق لتصال/ويط غيوب يتلفاليهنى

126

(Units (788)

device (n)	جعاز
diabetes (n)	مرض السكار
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى
disease (n)	مرض
downside (n)	بيو
dry (v) (yried)	غفي
editor (n)	محرر صحفى/رئيس تحريز
electrical (adj)	كغربى
electrician (n)	فئي كعرباء
energy (n)	150-
exist (v) (ed)	يهجد
extra (adj)	إضافي/زائد
fiction (n)	خيال/قصص خيالي
float (v) (ed)	يطفو
form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل- نوع/يشكل- يكون
formal (adj)	ريسمى
frequently (adv)	أ بشكل متكرر
goods (n)	بضائع
government (n)	حكومة
graduate (v) (d)	يتذرج
infected (adj)	مريض/مصاب يعدوي
limit (v) (ed)	يصدايقصر
measure (v) (d)	يئيس
message (n)	ربالة
name (v) (d)	
negative (adj)	ملین
occur (v) (ed)	پسد
Odyssey (n)	- Loals
poisonous (adj)	
Pole (n)	
Polite (adj)	
Politician (n)	ريال سياسة
position (n)) Allerings

•	
Pot (n)	إناء
powerful (adj)	<u>توي</u>
Practical (adj)	معلى
promote (v) (d)	يوق <i>ى ل</i> يطور
Proof (n)	إثبا <i>ت ا</i> مليل
pros (n)	مميزات
prove (v) (d)	يثبت
radio (n)	لا سلكى
realise (v) (d)	يعرك
recharge (v) (d)	يعيد شدن
regularly (adv)	إيانتظام
remote adji	بعید/ناهِ
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
research (v) (ed) (n)	يجري بحثًا/بحث
result (n)	نتيجة
science fiction (n)	خيال علمى
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل
soil (n)	ترية
space shuttle (n)	مكوك فضاء
spaceship (n)	سنينة فضاء
storm (n)	عاصفة
survive (v) (d)	ينحو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
teenage (adj)	في مرحلة المراهقة
test (v) (ed)	يختبر
theory (n)	نظرية
tolerant (adj)	متسامع
tour guide (n)	ء مرشد سیاحی
visible (adj)	مرثی
wave (n)	موبة
weight (n)	cite
wheelchair (n)	ورن کرسی متحرك
***************************************	عرسی میمرب
wire (n)	سلك
- 2	

Phrases, Expressions & Jaioms

at the end of	في نماية
(be) remembered as	یتم تذکرہ ک
(be) named after	يتسمى باسم
come true	يتحمق/يصبح حقيقة
damage our health	يؤذى صحتنا
do(carry out) an exper	iment on
mm: As de As Value 193 q	يجرى تجربة على
fall off his bike	يسقط من على الدراجة
for the first time	لأول مرة

gain weight	پزداد فی الوزن
give advice	يعطى التصيحة
go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل
in particular	ہشکل خاص
lose contact	يفقد الاتصال
prove a theory	يرهن على صحة نظرية
send into space	يرسل إلى الفضاء
test a theory with	بنتبر نظرية بـ

Prepositions

arrive in/at	يصل إلى	look after	یعتنی پ
benefit from	يستفيد من	move into	ينتقل إلى
cause of	سبب ك	release into	يطلق مَى
complain about	يشكو من	remove from	يزيل من
famous for	مشمور پ	send to	يرسل إلى
graduate in	يتذرج في (التخصص/السنة)	similar to	مشابه ا
help with	مساعدة بخصوص	travel to	يسلغر إلى
important for	هائع لب	worry about	يقلق عن

Derivatives

	Verb					
			Noun		Adjective	
		archaeology archaeologist	علم الأثار عالم آثار			
consult	يستشير	cancer consultant	سرطان مستشار		سرطائي	
		diabetes	مرض السكري		استشاري	
		fiction		fictional (adj)	مصاب بالسكر	
found	يؤسس	foundation	اساس/مؤسسة		خیالی	
graduate	يتذرج	graduation graduate	التذرج			
horrify	پر <i>عباي</i> ڈيف		خریج فزع/رعب	horrified		
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوی		مذعور/مرعوب مریض/مصاب بعدوی	
install	يركب (جهاز)	installation	تركيب (جماز)	installed	معدی مثبت	
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	مقاطع	
		invisibility	خفاء	invisible	غير مرئى/خفى	
press	يضغط	pressure	الضغط	pressurised	مضغوط	
process	يجري عملية/يعالج	process	عملية	processed عية	معالج/مجري عليه عمل	
promote	یرقی/یطور	promotion	ترقية/تطور	promotional	تطوری/ترویجی	
prove	يثبت	proof	إثبات/دليل	proven	مثبث	
remove	يزيل	removal	بزالة	removable	قابل للإزالة	
summarise		summary	ملخص	numb ribilitation +		
Survive Just	ینجو/یبقی علی تید ا	survival	النجاة/البقاء حيا	surviving	ناجي	
theorise		theory	نظرية	theoretical	نظری/غیر عملی	
threaten		threat	تفديد	threatened threatening	مهند مهبد	
tolerate	ا يتسامح	tolerance	التسامح	tolerant	متسامح	
Weigh		weight	وزن	overwe ight	نو وزن زائد	

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym		
cause			المضاد Antonym	
complain	-Atas	explanation	result	نتيد
	يشكو	protest	approve	Zeel.
develop	يطور	evolve	decline	سند
emergency	طوارئ	necessity	calmness	-1
extra	إضافي/زائد	additional	main	910
fiction	خيال	imagination	بي	اسانه
frequently	بشكل متكرر			واقع
		regularly	rarely	ئادرًا
gain	بستح	acquire	رايفقد lose	يخس
horrified	منعور/مرعوب	frightened	calm	هادئ
install	يركب	place	remove	يزيل
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	disturb	assist	يساء
invisible	غير مرثي/خفي	unseen	visible	مرئی
link	رابط/صلة	connection	separation ്വ	اتقم
pressure	الضغط	stress	ease	زلدة
process	عملية	action	inactivity نشاط	عدم
proof	اثبات/دلیل	evidence	hypothesis vi	لفتوله
release	يتطليق	drop .	hold	يعنيك
replace	يستبدل	change	keep -	ينفظ
threaten	يفند	endanger	provide a	يتمى
tolerant	ر م <u>اسامح</u>	forgiving	intolerant تسامح	غيزما

Important Language Notes



Suffixes for Jobs بالوظائف Suffixes for Jobs



- كثير من الكلمات المعبرة عن الوطائف تتكون من اسم أو فعل باستخدام بعض اللواحق منما:

				0 0,-	العينزه عل برفضت	- كبير من الخلمات
Suffix		Examples				
ian	technician	مُني	politician	رجل سياسة	historian	مؤرخ
ist	scientist	عالم	archaeologis			<i>صیدا</i> لی
er	baker	خباز	farmer	فلاح	gardener	بستانی/جنایئی
or	actor	ممثل	conductor	كمساري	sailor	بحار
ant	accountant	محاسب	assistant	بائع/مساعد	consultant	مستشار
		(البادئة Prefix	5		





- البادئة هي جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا. هناك أكثر من بادئة تعطى العكس ومنها (in – im – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالي:

Suffix	Examples					
in	invisible	غیر مرئی	intolerant	غير متسامح	informal	غير رسمي
im	impolite	غير مؤدب	impatient	غير صبور	دم مع الكلمات	لاحظ أنها غالبنا تستذ
1111	impossible	غير ممكن	impassive	غيرسلبي		التی تبدا بـ (m-p)
	unintelligent	غیر نکی	uninjured	غير مصاب	دم مع الك لمات	لاحظ أنما غالبنا تستذ
un	unimproved	غير محسن	uninformed	غير مبلغ		التي تبِّداً بـ (in)
	THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN					

- يستخدم الظرف (about) بمعاني مختلفة في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

about	على التقريب They left school at about 1.30.
about	Samy was about to turn on the TV when his father arrived.
about	Mona was about ready to start cooking.
about	The manager asked if the new clerk was about.
al-	The students were rushing about when they saw the
about	عمد مساهر معالم عمد المعامل الم

headmaster.

حول/في اتجاهات مختلفة



mast & & pole & tower & stick

ر. ماری (سفینة/قارب) , عمود/برج (محمول/إذاعة)

mast

- Every sailing ship has a mast just around the middle.
- ▶ Many tall buildings are used for building mobile phone masts. ر. يمود (معدن أو خشب لتدعيم شيء) ر. عمود/صاری (علم) pole
- ▶ The pole of the tent must be strong to hold it carefully.
- ▶The national stadium has a lot of flag poles for different countries celebrating the

Olympics.

ملحوظة يمكن استخدام (mast) أيضنًا مَي المعنى الأخير.

tower

ور (راخل قلعة أو قصر أو معدني لرؤية أفضل لمنظر جميل)

Every old castle had many towers which were used for guarding it.

stick

يما أو مضرب (هوكي)

> We bought a new stick for our grandfather for his birthday.

Additional Language Notes

position

١- موضع (مثل الومّوف أو الجلوس مثلًا)

٢- مكانة/وظيفة

- The couple lay in a comfortable position.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position

موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا) location

▶ Most of the movié was shot on location in Africa.

develop

بتطور/ينمو

Scientists are developing new drugs to treat arthritis.

ئام (في مراحل التطور) developing

Most of the Middle East countries are developing ones

developed

متطور بالقعل/متقدم

Developed countries are doing efforts to help poor ones.

breathe

وتنفسره

The room filled with smoke, and it was becoming difficult to breathe.

breath

۲asser took a deep breath, then jumped into the pool نفس/تناس

breeze

النسيم > It was a beautiful day with a blue sky and a gentle bree النسيم



treat

بعالج شخصنا

It was difficult to treat patients because of a shortage of medicine.

cure

١ ـ يشفي/يعالج من عرض

Many types of cancer can now be cured.

heal

و الإصابات)

lt took three months for my arm to heal properly. ▶ It took three months for my arm to heal properly.

signal

١- إشارة (تليفون - إذاعة - تليفزيون)

٣- إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء

This new TV channel sends signals via satellite to cable companies.

> The soldiers were waiting for the signal to start firing.

sign

١- لافتــة (ورقيــة - معدنيــة) لمعلومــة -

تحضر – تعلیمات،

٢- أشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة).

There was a big sign above the entrance of the shopping centre.

There are now signs of an improvement in the economy.

١- يركب جمازًا ويعده للتشغيل. [Instail]

٣- پثبت برنامجا في جماز كمبيوتر،

Security cameras have been installed in the city centre.

> You have to install a program to start taking pictures with your camera.

fix

- يثبت شيئًا في شيء آخر ليبقي مدة طويلة.

۲- يملح.

▶ The shelves should be fixed to the wall with screws.

I was able to fix the bicycle myself.

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو سناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شره،

٢- عمليـــة إجرائية (سلســـلة مـــن الخطوات لإتمام شريهل

▶ Repetition can help the learning process in primary schools.

Coal forms by a slow process of chemical change.

Operation ١- عملية جراجية.

۳- فعليــــه إنهـــاز (عمل/نثـــنط) لشــركه أو

> She's going to need an operation on her leg.

The company has a new operation in Luxor.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(Key Vocabulary		fion an	Had threesis Dark
1 Stephen Spielber	rg is the of the	series or movies ca	ilen aniassic Latk.
a) soller	b) critic	c) director	a, castornel
2 A Is an e	expert or a professional	person whose job i	is to give help and advice
on a particular su	bject.		
a) consultant	b) painter	c) spectator	d) provider
Traffic police use a	a kind of to dis	cover drivers who	exceed the speed limits
a) laser		c) radio	
4 I complained to th	e gas company because	the they:	sent wasn't very efficient
a) Illustrator		c) technician	
5 To me,is	a fascinating subject. I	like to learn the na	tural forces such as light
and heat.			
a) history	b) geography	c) maths	d) physics
🖊 couldn't continue	the game with my frie	nd as the	didn't work well
a) sockets	b) controls	c) wires	d) machines
waraa tried to expla	ain why she came late,	but the teacher	her apprily
a) bigised	D) Involved	c) included	all to a control of
My parents	to punish me severely	if I got had marks !	m = a a d a d
	n) quyised	c) discussed	
- Call (57 92)	or neip if there is a/an		d) replied
a) combetition	b) emergency	a)	
The British Heart	Oives all holo	c) race	d) incident
country.	Sites all field	and support for he	d) incident eat patients all over the
a) Company	b) Party		
We don't know what	the machine	c) Corporation	d) Foundation
a) resulted	p) caread machine	e to fail.	
	b) caused	c) occurred	d) knocked
ot normal.	misease in Mulcu celli	s in someone's boo	d) knocked ly grow in a way that is
) Fever			- Directing that the
	b) Paralysis	c) Flu	d) Cancer
			WILL MITCOR

elalogists will raise th	a voune ha	(Units (788)
Biologists will raise that a realise	b) recognize	AV co-	em in the wild.
a) realise	b) recognise	c) release	d) specialise
M March	iderstand the	of photosynthes	sis, how a plant makes
10-	h) release		
a) process	b) release	c) achievement	d) operation
The Ivial 15 c	a ramous novel and file	n about a man wh	d) operation to could not be seen by
allyone			
	b) Diabetic	c) Invisible	d) Invincible
The area has now bee	en from the li	st of dangerous de	estinations.
a) removed	b) disapproved	c) bought	d) built
They are using a very			o the astronauts.
a) actions	b) rays	c) signs	d) signals
The centre provides h			DESTABLACCIDADO \$
a) progress	b) illness	•	d) ability
My brother hopes to			
a) earn	b) win	c) gain	
Modern ships had no	o sails or; yet	t they moved at g	reat speed through the
water.			в.
a) poles	b) sticks	c) towers	d) masts
The police have foun	d no evidence of a ter		h the murder.
a) tie	b) clash	c) hint	d) link
My father suffers from	n high blood	and that's why he	e is taking medicine.
a) pressure	b) power	c) press 👟	d) pipe
All the people were	by what had I	happened after th	e pomp explosion.
a) horrified	b) pleased	c) fantastic	d) relaxed
Security cameras sho	ould bein loc	al places.	all aloutement
	أممال منا	C) Diokeii	d) designed
It is believed that III	ving and working in	zero Ni	as some side effects for
astronauts.			
	b) gravity	c) heat	d) weather
a) temperature We were just	to leave for the part	y when my cousin	arrived at our nouse.
a) for	b) with	c) inside	a) about
a) lor	D) With		(135)

(Helpful Vocabi	plary & Language Hotel	bard	
The athlete ha	d been running and he	was	طا ۵
	PIDIPALING	•	d) flashing
The shin sank	because of the	the storm caused.	
at thunder	b) wages	C) WHITES	d) wolves
29 Our neighbour	, Mr. Samir, is the	of a famous news	paper in Cairo.
a) musician	b) editor	c) seller	d) artist
30 The developme	ent ofintellige	nce will be a quality	of this century.
a) normal	b) artificial	c) natural	d) industrial
31 Companies are	making use of social	in order to ad	vertise their goods
		c) media	d) videos
Astronauts are t	rained to get used to	in space.	
	b) swimming	-	d) waiting
	ver be by com		om.
a) replaced			
Accidents	more frequently wh	en the roads are bus	d) attended
a) take part	b) come in	c) cause	AL .
35 In class, I usually	get myself into a comfo	rtable +	d) occur
a) sight	b) base	onu or to und	
36 Plants change the	sun's energy into	c) location	d) position
a) chemical	b) chemist	energy,	
37 You have to consider	der all the	c) chemistry	d) solar
a) pools	der all theand co	ons of the matter before	ore you make a decig
33 It is a shame that a	Overty still	c) pros	d) peers
a) disappears	Doverty stillir	some countries in A	frica.
Sabry spent the law	of ten voors of the beauty	c) includes	d) involves
a) station	st ten years of his life in b) wheel box	after a te	errible accident
The aircraft was gro	Muleel DOX	c) vehicle	d) wheelchair
a) storm	and aginaged by a di	eat sandin	the desert area.
My father save than	b) dune	c) bar	d) beach
a) results	I won't go anywhere u b) resolution	intil I get the exam	G) Deach
	b) resolution	c) solution	
36			d) conclusion

The polic	e suspected that the wife have	d Late	(Units (7&8)
actually	e suspected that the wife had that it was her.	s killed her husban	d, but they could never
a) impro		C) provide	
cancer.		or drillings (6	develop a new drug for
	ng out b) making	c) breaking	d) taking
One day,	scientists will find a fo	or all serious illnesse	s.
a) heal	b) care	c) cure	d) deal
nowaday	is one of the most dangerous o	diseases from which	many people suffer
a) Debat	tes b) Databases	c) Diabetes	d) Debits
🧌 A/An 👝	is an explanation for so	mething that has n	ot yet been proved to be
true.			
a) theor	y b) practice	c) experience	d) experiment
The com	pany had to . the new	washing machine	well before putting it into
market.			
a) destr	b) test	c) examine	d) weigh
The fact	ory was closed because of the	of damage	it had done to the area.
a) accou	int b) calculation	c) quality	d) amount
The Wor	ld Health Organisation spends	a lot of money to	new treatments for
disease:	S		
a) exam	•	c) search	d) look
* The doc	tor the visitors to the	patients with heart	transplant.
a) strips	b) inhabits	c) limits	d) bangs
It Some p	eople have more from	modern technolog	y than others.
a) won	b) used	c) wasted	a) benefited
She had	never imagined being able to	visit such	countries.
a) near	lu poarby	c) remote	a) fiear
When r	ny brother travelled abroad, I	""" HOW ISTUCIO	like him.
a) infor	med b) educated	c) recognised	4
			137

PART	Lin for	planting palm trees.	dv i
# The dry rocky	is suitable for	planting palm trees. c) floor	d) sand
a) roof	b) soil	in 1945.	
55 The United Nat	b) son ions was originally b) destroyed	c) formed	d) built
a) demolished	b) destroyed	r has time to herself.	
56 Mother always .	b) continues	r has time to herself.	d) tells
a) complains	b) continues	illed or in the	fight.
	iers had been either k	c) died	d) hijacked
a) murdered	b) captured	description of he	er attacker.
		c) illegal	d) accurate
a) ugly	b) empty		
_	irse will provide you	with the necessary	tor the Job of
secretary.			41. 4.0
a) skills	b) skulls	c) factors	d) skins
	my mobile battery as	it takes much time to	*****************
a) install	b) repair	c) recharge	d) rehang
(Expressions, Idion	ns, Prepositions, Deriv	atives, Synonyms & A	1tonyms
		the noun	,
a) fiction	b) literature		
	D) interature	c) fact	d) reality
a) for	send a satellite	space. It is a difficu	ilt process.
4/101	b) into	c) at	45 1 .
alana mat	mpany which specia	lises in thea	nd maintenance of
			The state of the s
a) install	b) installed	c) installation	all to all a second
Something	wrong with my car	Vesterday	d) insistence
-,	b) came		
The street where we	live isafter	r the famous Indian le	d) went
a) called	b) built	the ramous Indian le	ader, Nehro.
The adverb "rarely" Is a) gradually	S an antonym as at	c) named	d) demolished
a) gradually	b) occosts "	adverb	
	b) occasionally	c) terribly	d) frequently
(138)			-/ riequeintly
		CurEconur -52	

Car prices	particular have fallen	in recent	Units (7&8)
a) on	5 / 01	C) at	
A balanced diet h	h) promotion	ealth and normal days	d) in
a) blamore	Hollottord	c) Dromoted	
My friend's ideas	about jobs are quite sim	ilar mine	d) promotional
a) for	b) at	c) to	d) in
The word "separa	tion" can be the opposit	e of the word	
a) link	b) division	c) acceptance	d) dimension
My cousin has	weight since he g		
a) got	b) won	c) gained	d) fixed
n Only ten student	s graduatedCh	ninese studies last year	
a) in	b) from	c) at	d) about
n The verb "disturb	" is similar in meaning to	the verb	
a) promote	b) interrupt	c) develop	d) establish
₦ After 21 years of	marriage, our dream of	owning a home	true.
a) went	b) came	c) got	d) fell
# Customers alway	s complainthe	price increases.	
a) for	b) about	c) with	d) at
* The patient's onl	y chance ofwa	s a heart transplant.	
a) surviva	b) survives	c) survived	d) survival
71 think in the old	days people were more	towards eac	h other.
mla t	1-3 4-lorance	c) tolerant	a) tolerates
7 A new	site which include a grea	at tomb has been disc	overed in Luxor lately.
21	ta - mehapologist	C) alchaeoing.	•
h The Prisoner of Z	enda is set in a	country called halls	d) fictionally
to The University Is	b) fictional doing a promising stud	y for a new drug lot	d) diabetic
a) diabetes	b) debates	c) dermatitis	
ancrez			62

of a

Advanced & Open General Exercises

from a. b. c of	d:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or The lawyer is delaying the trial to	time to prepare his defence.
The lawyer is delaying the trial to	b) lose
a) win	d) save
c) gain	d gone completely off thedue to
the coronavirus crisis.	b) software
a) radar	d) article
c) application live never done any cooking and I'm not	to start in the near future.
	b) about
a) among	d) for
c) between	
_	of Heart Surgery in a famous hospital
in Cairo.	LA . I . C
a) minister	b) advisor
c) collector	d) consultant
	in many societies all over the world
a) inference	b) diabetes
c) cancer	d) invention
Nelson Mandela gave his life in the o	f his country's freedom and independence
a) cause	b) reason
c) consequence	d) respect
Tests on healthy people may will the	for a vaccine to prevent coronavirus
a) asset	b) foundation
c) source	d) resource
The famous doctor was recently	a) tesonice
Association.	is president of the National Medical
a) fixed	
c) updated	b) fitted
	d) installed
The passengers went through passporta) control	into the departure lounge.
c) management	b) office
- The second sec	d) focus ?
140	

There were no other buildings to	the view of Units (788)
a) compel	the view of the valley and its scenery. b) admit
c) interrupt	d) associate
The X-ray operator must work at a safe	
a) palace	in a separate room. b) device
c) apparatus	d) remove
a ai can gain much ibaa	
artistry.	exports such as tourism, technical skill and
a) visible	b) invisible
c) visual	d) virtual
We left the park when we saw the dark clo	ouds as they rain.
a) attacked	b) resulted
c) threatened	d) attracted
India has enormous wealth at one	
a) mast	b) tower
c) stick	d) pole
You should allow two weeks for your visa	
a) launched	b) processed
c) written	d) printed
The band hopes to their new all	oum by next summer.
a) capture	b) fire
c) release	d) hold
The election results in any country can	the start of a new era.
a) signal	b) sign
clanniv	d) reply
Tesia is one of the first manufacturers	to produce a car powered by electric fuel
a) calls	b) cells
c) cables	d) spares
In more competition means lov	ver prices for consumers.
	b) research
a) average	d) experiment
theory The chain which father bought me was to	oo long so I removed a few of the
the chain which father bought the was t	b) connections
a) ties	d) links
c) contacts	
	141)



Unit (7)

Passive forms: Past Tenses
Past simple/ Present perfect / Past continuous/ Past perfect

Past simple passive

المبنى للمعلوم Active

التصريف الثاني للفعل +.Subj

▶ All invited me to his wedding party.

Passive interrogative الاستفهام

Was/Were + obj.+ P.P.?

Wh-word+ was/were + obj. + P.P.7

- ▶ Were you invited to All's wedding party?
- By whom were you invited to Ali's wedding party?

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj. +was/ were + P.P.

I was invited to Ali's wedding party.

النفى Passive Negative

Obj. +was/ were+ not + P.P.

I wasn't invited to Ali's wedding party,

Present perfect passive

المبنى للمعلوم Active

Subj.+ have/has +P.P.

Ali has invited me to his wedding party.

Passive Interrogative الاستفهام

Have/Has+ obj.+ been + P.P.?

Wh-word +have/has+ obj.+ been + P.P.?

- ▶ Have you been invited to All's wedding party?
- By whom have you been invited to Ali's wedding party?

المبئى للمجهول Passive

Obj. +have/has+ been + P.P.

▶ I have been invited to Ali's wedding party

النفى Passive Negative

Obj. +have/has+ not +been + P.P.

►I haven't been invited to Ali's wedding party

Past continuous passive

المبنى للمعلوم Active

Subj.+ was/were +v-ing

We were watching the match at 7 pm yesterday.

Passive Interrogative الاستفهام

Was/Were+ obj. + being+ P.P.? Wh-word +was/were+ obj. + being+ P.P.?

- Was the match being watched at 7 pm yesterday?
- When was the match being watched?

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj.+ was/were +being + P.P.

▶ The match was being watched at 7 pm yesterday.

النفى Passive Negative

obj.+was/were+ not being+ P.P.

The match wasn't being watched at 7 pm yesterday.

Past perfect passive

المبنى للمعلوم Active

Subj. + had + P.P.

I had finished the homework by 7 pm yesterday.

Passive Interrogative الاستفهام

Had + obj. + been + P.P.?

Wh-word + had + obj. + been + P.P.?

▶ Had the homework been finished by

7 pm yesterday?

When had the homework been finished yesterday?

المبنى للمجهول Passive

Obj.+ had been + P.P.

The homework had been finished by 7 pm yesterday.

Passive Negative النفى

Obj. + hadn't been + P.P.

The homework hadn't been finished by 7 pm yesterday.

للحظات



- 🕥 الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا يتبعما مفعول) لا تحول إلى العبني للمجمول:
- A team of explorers disappeared in the jungle last week. ه بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمجمول وهي: have, fit , suit etc
- have a shower every morning. (Not: A shower is had by me.)

و في عالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (٧٠+ ing) نستخيم (being + P.P.)

- I hate people telling me lies.
- I hate being told lies.

إِذَا كَانَ الفَاعَلُ وَالْمُفْعُولُ وَاحْدًا مَعَ الفَعَلُ (let) نُسْتَخْدَمَ صَمَيْرًا مَنْعُكُسُنّا ثم (be) ثم (P.P.)

- ▶ He doesn't let others deceive him.
- He doesn't let himself be deceived.

و نستخدم With ثم العادة العصنوع منما الشيء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو العقابين

1

A)

»T

B)

▶The kite will be made by Omar. It will be made with paper, paint and string.
عند استخدام الأسللة في المبنى للمجمول نستخدم by مع who, whom, which, what في لخر السؤال.

▶Who takes your children to school? (Active)

▶Who are your children taken to school by? (passive)

و إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول وبها ضعائر الوصل who/which + v. to be وترك التصريف الثالث فقط_

- ▶The meat which was eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The meat which was eaten yesterday was delicious.
- ▶The boy who was punished yesterday was mistaken.
- ▶The boy who was punished yesterday was mistaken. من المبنى للمعلوم (hear, help, see and make) ويسبق المصدر في المبنى للمعلوم (bear, help, see and make)
- They saw him leave the building.
- ▶ He was seen to leave the building.

ولكن إذا جا، بعد hear, see, watch الفعل به ing غان الفعل يظل كما هو به ing.

- ▶They saw him running down the stairs.
- He was seen running down the stairs.

ي بعكن أن نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) عند التحويل إلى العبني للمجمول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأنعال الأتية: (catch / arrest / damage / destroy / kili / marry / burn / beat)

- The police caught/arrested the bank robbers.
- The bank robbers got caught/arrested.

Causative (Active and passive)



السببية

The active causative (have and get)

Have + object عاقل + infinitive / Get + object عاقل + to + infinitive

The teacher had us do some extra work today.

Please get Yasser to help you.

A) Have + object (عاقل) + infinitive

The boss had the secretary type the letter.

تُستخدم للتعبير أن شخص يجعل أو يتسبب أو يطلب من شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئًا.

B) Get + object (عاقل) + to + infinitive

▶ (He asked her to type the letter)

تُستخدم للتعبير أن شخص يقنع شخصًا آخر أن يفعل شيء. He got his mother to buy him a chocolate. (He persuaded her to buy him a chocolate.)



The passive causative (have and get)

Have / get + object (غير عاقل)+ P.P.

Ildon't cut my hair. I have my hair cut.

Do you usually get your room cleaned?

No, I clean it myself.

نستخدم هذا الشكل لنقول إننا رتبنا لشخص أن يفعل شيئًا لنًا. (He didn't do it himself - the builder did it.)

Osama had a house built.

ليدأ في المعلوم بالقاعل

	Active	Tense
he mechanic	repairs repaired is repairing was repairing has repaired had repaired will repair can repair	مضارع بسيط ماض بسيط مضارع مستعر ماض مستعر ماض تام ملض تام مستقبل العصدر

	0-1	المعمماليار	لمبنى للمجهوا
	Passive		7
	is repaired	(by the mechanic)	Tense
My car	was repaired		مصيب فالتم
	is being repaired		المن بسيط
	was being repaired		ضارع مستمر
	has been repaired		ماض مستمر
	had been repaired		بمنارع تلم
	will be repaired		ملض تام
	can be repaired		مستقبل
	must be repaired		المصدر
			المصدر

ندافى السببية بالشخص صاحب الشىء

P.P. الشيء (المفعول) + v.to have + الشخص صلحب الشيء

	+ الشخص صاحب الشيء Causative			
	have	1	4 179	Tense
	had am having was having	- Indiana in the second in the		مضارع بسيط
		‡		ماض ٍ بسيط،
			÷	مضارع مستمر
1	have had	my car repa	Formal - I	ماض مستمر
	had had		repaired	مضارع تام
. ,	will have		e er l. eee e l. e	ماض تام
	can have			مستقبل
	must have		-	المصدر
				المصدر





- السببية في السؤال (نستخدم do/ does) المضارع البسيط و did للماضي البسيط).
- ⊕ السببية في النفي (نستخدم don't /doesn't للمضارع البسيط و didn't للماضي البسيط).
- Did you have your meal prepared?
- , No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.
 - 😝 وفي الأزمنة الأخرى نستخدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الموجود في أول السؤال.
- Are you going to have your tooth pulled out by the dentist?
- Have you had your car checked at the garage?
- Will you have your house painted?
 - 🗨 يمكن استخدام الفعل make بدلًا من have في المعلوم بمعنى الإصرار وليس الطلب؟
- The teacher made us write the homework twice. (He insisted that we should.....)
 - ئا. من pet لينيد الصعوبة أحيانًا.

- He finally got the seats booked.
 - ⊙ يمكن القول أن have تأتى على شكل الفعل الذي يكون في المعلوم قلو كان الفعل به ing فإننا نستخدم having وإن كان الفعل مصدرًا نستخدم have وإن كان الفعل to have وإن كان الفعل to have مثل:
- > She likes cleaning her house.
- She likes having her house cleaned.
- She'd like (likes) to clean her house.
- > She'd like (likes) to have her house cleaned.



رن النكرة هي الأداة التي تستخدم قبل:

٣- المقرد الذي يعد أو اسم لا يعد ويعامل كمفرد

 النكرة (أي ليس به أل التعريف). المسابعة على الأداة التي تستخدم قبل الاسم لتجعله معرفًا لـ ألـ . (ليس شرطًا أن بكون الاسم بعد أو لا بعد أو ممردًا او حمعنا ، الاست. و الله الله الله الله الإنجليزية فلا يستطيع شخص أن يتحدث أو يكتب جملة صحيحة الا اذا أتقن معم أدوات النكرة والمعرفة.

The Indefinite articles "A / An"

أدوات النكرة

(b /d/ f/ p/ m/, etc.) صوت ساکن ÷ a (a / e/ i/ o/ u) صوت متحرك + an

1. He is a tall boy. It's an egg.

She goes shopping twice a month.

3. He has bought a mobile phone.

4. I'm looking for a flat. I want a big one.

5. He paid a/one hundred pounds for the camera.

We need a /one kilo of tomatoes.

A bird can work in a team.

7. She is a civil engineer.

يل الإسم النكرة المفرد المبدوء بصوت ساكن. يَلِ الاسم النكرة المفرد المبدوء بصوت متحرك.

ردمع الأسماء المعدودة بعد v-to be

ه مع تعبيرات مثل: a week/a month/a year ۲- بمعنی One لشیء غیر محند،

£- مع One التي قبلها صفة.

ه- مع التعبيرات الدالة على الوقت والمسافة والوژن ویمکن استخدام one محلها.

٦- عند ټکر شيء لأول مرة.

٧- للإشارة إلى وظيفة شخص،

 استخدم a مع الكلمات التي لما صوت ساكن ولو كان الشكل يبدأ بمتحرك مثل: a uniform/a unit/a union انحكه /a university/a European country/a useful book.

ولو تأملت كل الكلمات التي بعد 🗗 وتبدأ بحرف U تجد أن هناك اختلافًا بينما وبين المتعرك umbrella مثلًا. وتأمل المثال الأتي: a usual day / an unusual day فمل يُنْطَق حرف لا في الأولى مثل الثانية؟

0 نستخيم an مع الكلمات التي لها صوت متحرك ولو كان الشكل يبدأ يساكن مثل: شخص موقر an honourable person رجل مظلمن an hour / an honest man شخص موقر

@ تغتص a/an بالأسماء ولكن إذا وجيئا صفة للاسم تصعُمما قبل الصفة مثل: She offered me a nice present on my birthday. It's an easy lesson.



The definite article "The"

أداه التعريف

أداة التعريف هي إضافة (الـ) للكلمة وتأثي مع الأسماء المعدودة وعبر المعدودة.

, the woman, the trees, the music, the water, etc.

من المتعارف عليه أنه إذا وجدنا (الـ) تستخدم أأه مثل: الولد بنظر إلى النافذة.

The boy is looking at the window.

ولكن هناك كلمات مما (الـ) ولا تأحد the وهذا هو اهتمامنا الآن لأن هذا هو الشاذ الذي يجب حفظه:

لا تستخيم مع الأتي The" is not used"

🚯 مع الأسماء الجمع والمعرد الدي لا يعد عندما تشير إلى شيء عام (غير مخصص).

تعطينا الأشجار الظل (الأشجار كلمة عامة والظل أيضًا غير مخصص).

الماء ضروري للحياة (الماء اسم مقرد لا يعد عامنًا والحياة كذلكأ،

هنا خصصنا الماء بماء النيل (ليس الماء العام)،

The water of the Nile is polluted.

- 🚱 مع الأسماء المعنوية العامة (الاسم المعنوى لا يحس ولا يمس ولا يرى).
- Freedom is all peoples' hope,

Firees give us shade.

Water is necessary for life.

- A lot of money is spent on education and health.
 - 🕜 مع أسماء القارات و البلاد والعدن والشوارع والحدائق والجبال المفردة والجزر المفردة والبحيرات المفردة والمحطات والكباري:
- Africa , Algeria , الجزائر, Cairo, Abassia street, Mount Everest, lake Victoria, Maadi station, Tower bridge ... etc.
 - 🚯 مع أسماء الشخصيات وما يتعلق بها من ألقاب.
- Tarek is my friend. Dr. / professor / Mr. / Lord / president Tarek.
- 🗗 مع كلمات school, bed, hospital, university, court, prison, home, sea, college إذا كانت للغرض الرئيسي الذي بنيت من أجله أما إذا كانت للزيارة مثارً داخد the.
- John was in prison. (a prisoner).
- His mother went to the prison to see him.(a visitor)

الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والأيام والشعور والاحتفالات والألوان والمشروبات واللغات إذا لم تتبع بكلمة language.

- I speak English.
- The English Language Is spoken all over the world.
- I'm meeting him on Monday.
- Football is my favourite sport.
- prefer green to yellow.
- usually have tea in the morning.

. by (plane/car/train/bus) مع وسائل المواصلات 🛇



- Lunch is my main meal.
- Don't call them now; they will be having dinner.

aving uniner. همع المواد الدراسية وكلمة WOrk والمواد الخام وقصول السنة (اختياري).

- We always go to Alex. In (the) summer.
- Chemistry is easier than Biology.
- Gold is more expensive than Silver.
- I go to work at 8 am.

ربط: ای اسم یخنصص یاخذ the سواء معموم او غیر معموم.

"The" is used تستخدم مع الأتي

هلاسم المفرد الذي يشير إلى فصيلة أو شيء عام.

- The giraffe lives in Africa.
- فَهَنَا نَقَصِد فَصِيلَةَ الرَّرَافُ وليستُ واحدة بعينما.
- ▶ The lion is a wild animal. (We mean all lions) = Lions are wild animals.

ويند ذكر الاسم للمرة الثانية.

▶ I bought a shirt and a pair of shoes but the shirt is expensive.

the sun / the moon / the earth عبع الأشياء الغريدة

- 🗛 مع أسماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحاري وسلاسل الجبال والجزر الجمع والبحيرات الجمع.
- ▶ the Nile/ the Red Sea / the Pacific Ocean / the Alps/ the Sahara/ the Great Lakes.
 - ومع البلاد المركبة (التي بها كلمات مملكة، ولاية، إمارة أو جمهورية).
- ▶ the U.S.A / the A.R.E / the K.S.A / the U.K
 - الله the piano / the violin / the lute عبر الأدوات الموسيقية
 - 🐧 مع أسماء الفنادق والمسارح والسينمات والسفن والمنظمات والجرائد والمتاحف
- ▶ the Sheraton Hotel / the UN / the Times/ the Louvre
 - ﴾ أسماء الجنسيات وأسماء العائلات The Egyptians / The Johnsons.
 - 🎗 مع الألقاب التي لم يذكر الاسم معها.

- the queen / the president / the professor
 - morning / afternoon / evening / shop / library / city / cinema / station ع كلمات الع صفات التفضيل the healthiest / the best / the longest / the most / the shortest
 - 🎙 مع الصفات يدون اسم فتحولها إلى جمع.
- الموتى the dead / المرضى the sick / الشباب the young /الأغنياء the poor /الغثراء the computer/ the internet / the radio / the television الاختراعات
 - ومع التركيبة الآتية مع صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما كلما)
- The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.
- which / who/ that ...etc. الأسماء الموصولة عالبا بالأسماء الموصولة _ متى الحياة The thief who stole the money was sent to prison for life متى الحياة
 - الله فنك بلاد شاذة تلخذ the مثل : the Netherlands

Grammar Exercises)

POOSE THE COLLEC	ranswer from a, b, cor	d:	
The man	at the scene of the rob	bery husse	
4116 35 511	TANGET SEED	c) will be seen	spected nim.
Has my parcel	by anyone?	DE 266U	d) doesn't see
a) posted	b) post	c) been posted	d) been posting
They didn't leave	e the restaurant until the	bill	
a) had been pai	d b) has been paid	c) will pay	d) is paid
When the thier	broke into the store, we	by the assistar	nt.
a) are being ser	viced	b) were being serv	
c) were servicin		d) have been servi	ced
After the accide	ent, the sick man	to hospital by an amb	oulance.
a) is taken	b) was taken	c) had been taken	d) will take
A large amount	of valuable jewellery	from a nearby sl	nop recently.
	b) has been stolen		
7 We couldn't tak	e the car: it by t	he mechanic at the ga	rage.
a) was repaired		b) repaired	
c) was being re	paired	d) is repaired	
I didn't read the	e newspaper, it	by the time I left for scl	hool.
a) hadn't been	delivered	b) won't be delive	red
c) was delivere		d) delivered	
My bag was lef	t in the classroom yester	day and it by	the cleaner.
a) will be found	d b) was found	c) had been found	d d) is found
MAll the copies of	of the hookand	some more have been	ordered.
a) have sold	b) are selling	c) have been sold	d) are being sold
"I didn't go to h	or party because	invited.	
Should be a	follower's	cj nagnit been	d) was
All the sandwi	ches were eaten and all	the coffee was drunk	by the guests. Nothing
The state of the s			
a) have been 1	eft b) was left	c) is leaving	d) have left
The windows	are really dirty: they ——	for weeks.	losped
Won't be cle	eaned		
C) haven't close		d) weren't cleane	ru .

PART When we arrived home, we found out that one of our windows b) had been broken c) has been broken d) were broken When I was a kid, I to stay up until 11 pm on Friday nights. d) was allowing c) am allowing b) was allowed a) am allowed She by a bus while walking across the street. c) has been hit d) was hit b) hit a) was hitting 77 After the will, there were angry exclamations. b) had read a) had been read d) had been reading c) had read We couldn't play as the tennis court by two other teams. d) was being used c) had used b) has been used a) is being used by a fierce dog. The thief who tried to get in the house was seen and d) be chased c) was chasing b) chased a) chasing 20 My keys were returned to me; they up in the street. b) had been picked a) were being picked d) are picked c) have been picked 21 Look! We are being followed by a man ... a big hat. d) to be wearing a) wears b) being worn c) wearing 22 Articlesduring the sale cannot be exchanged. a) bought b) which have bought c) were bought d) have bought 🥸 I don't like by other people. a) deceiving b) being deceived c) to deceive d) to deceiving 24 I'd likeat the airport as I'll arrive late at night and I have much luggage. a) to meet b) being met c) to be met d) meeting Most people object tolike animals. a) treating b) treat c) be treated i'm looking forward to for the college football team. d) being treated a) being chosen b) be chosen c) choosing The children are excited about to the zoo. d) choose a) be taken b) been taken c) being taken d) taking a) was arrived

i remember my father me to the funfair. a) being taken

b) take

b) had arrived

c) taking

d) to take

c) had been arrived d) has arrived

hate working.	(Units (788)
a) photographed	La	
c) being photographed	b) was photograph	ned
Has the invitation by them?	d) be photographe	ed
a) been accepted b) accepted		
1 have known her for a long time Sho	c) been accepting	d) be accepted
	to me for a long	time.
the main suspect the country	c) has known	d) is known
a) was believed to leave the country	b) was holiound to	harried first
c) believed to have left the country	d) is believed that	have left the country
The film on TV last week fascinat	od all asks.	rie leit
a) which showed	c) charries	d) shown
When the teacher asked me a difficult qu	estion, I	4,310111
a) got confused b) confused	c) had confused	d) were confused
by his excellent marks, he wante	ed to join the Faculty o	of Medicine.
a) Encouraging c) Encouraged	b) Was encouraged	d
2	d) Were encourage	ed
My bike which was brought bac a) was stolen / was offered	k only when a 20-pou	ınd-reward
c) was stolen / has offered		/ has been offered
* It that the victim with	a) was being stole	n / was being offered
a) was thought / must have killed		الدخالة ما
c) was thought / had been killed	b) is thought / hasd) thought / had b	
Which one of the following is not true?	d/ thought / had b	seen killed
a) It is believed that money brings happing	ness.	
b) people believe that money to bring ha		
c) Happiness is believed to be brought w		
d) Money is believed to bring happiness.		
hanging the sentence "We avoided peo	ple seeing us." into pa	ssive will be
a) we avoided to be seen	b) people were av	oided seeing us
c) people avoided seeing us	d) we avoided bei	-
My mom always has me my roo	m on Saturday morni	ngs.
a) cleaning up b) cleaned up	c) to clean up	a) clean up
Your car is making a lot of noise. You shou	c) to service	d) being serviced
a) service b) serviced	C) to service	w) being serviced
		153

CorSo

-52° - 601

We've got to get ou	ır neighbours	having loud parties e	Units (788)	11
a) stop	b) stopping	naving loud parties e	Very weekend	
we had the wardrol	be by a carn	c) to stop enter and he said it	d) stopped	
pounds.) = 4d1p	c) to stop enter and he said it was v	Vorth over 3 thou	icand
"I to Aging	U) VAIIIA			
My parents had me	Enalish for	c) been valued	d) valued	
student.	-1.51151161	c) been valued two hours every day an	d now I'm an exc	ellent
a) to study	b) study			Cilcita
of you can't see pro	perly, you should have	c) studying ve your eyes	d) studied	
a) test	b) been tested	ve your eyes		
	b) been tested	c) tested	d) to test	
a) to let	h) let	ernight at her friend's p	lace.	
		c) lets	d) letting	
a) to clean	e poor Deto	re the summer begins.	t's looking dirty.	
B) to cicari	of clearing	f) cleaned	d) clean	
Mave your menu	me if he has	any other questions,		
a) to call	b) call	c) calling	d) called	
	into a new fla			
a) to move	b) move	c) moved	d) moving	
After the car accid	ent, the driver had to	o have his nose	and looked as	he did
before.	•			
a) reshape	b) reshaped	c) to reshape	d) reshaping	
Instead of buying	a new car, why don't	you have your old one	?	
a) fix *	b) fixing	c) to fix	d) fixed	
think you should	have your doctor	at that cut on yo	ur arm. It looks s	erious,
a) looks	b) look	c) to look	d) looked	
	her own wedding o	dress, she's having it	by a desi	gner in
a) made	b) to make	c) makes	d) had made	2
	seen Mona? She	Magazine (secondos &		
a) has got her leg				
b) has got someon	ne to break her leg			
c) has had someon				
d) has had her leg	broken			
				(155)

got the stude	nts to stop sleeping in cla	ss. This means I	them.
a) torced	b) persuaded	c) punished	d) blamed
My mom had t	he curtains changed. This	means that	
ar sile changed	I them herself		
b) someone pe	rsuaded her to change th	nem	
of someone cha	inged them for her		
d) she changed	them for someone		
My sister got the	e dresses delivered to the	e customers. This mean	15
and darked (116	customers to take the d	resses	and and and and a second of
o) someone del	ivered them		
c) the customers	s got the dresses themse	lves	
a) sue delivered	them herself		*
78 Mr. Osama made	his students th	a homowood tudaa	
- to witte	b) Writing	mlma.	
76 The poor harvest	caused prices	c) wrote	d) write
a) to rise	b) rise		
77 Look at Hadir's fa	ir hair. She has had it	c) rising	d) risen
a) dye	b) to dye		
	the mask :	c) to be dyed	d) dyed
a) had / to repair	the mechanic	his car yesterday.	
c) got / repair		b) got / to repair	
		d) had / repairing	
Do you know Wh	ere I can?"	, and g	
a) clean a suit		b) get a suit cleane	_
c) have a suit clear		d) have cleaned a s	a
Which one of the f	following is not true?	- Have cleaned a s	uit
Anmed got his of	car repaired.		
b) Ahmed had his	Cat repaired		
c) Ahmed had a me	echanic to repair his car		
d) Ahmed got a me	schanic to rebail Uis Cal		
Joe a mile	echanic to repair his car		

Advanced & Open General Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

It is custom to give prese	Onto and a
a) a	
c) the	b) an
pon't go out in rain with	d) no article
a) a	
c) the	b) an
Would you like glass of r	d) no article
a) a	
c) some	b) an
They saw a white lion and	d) no article
a) a	elephant in the safari park.
c) the	b) an
· Darle stancia di con con	d) no article
a) a	peds are very uncomfortable.
c) the	b) an
	d) no article
a) a	information about applying to universities.
	b) an
c) any	d) no article
You know, there's excelle	b) an
a) a	d) no article
c) the	
We've got a house near	b) an
a) one	d) no article
c) the	
children have gone to the	b) An
a) A	d) No article
c) The	
6 Latin language is hardly	b) An
a) A	d) No article
c) The	

PART 1	Laur III
11 I want to buy piano, but I	tan't play II. b) an
a) a	d) no article
c) the	crime and unemployment
Two of the biggest problems facing o	our society are crime and unemployment
a) a	d) no article
c) the	4
the Tower of London is po	pular tourist attraction
a) a	D) all
c) the	d) no article
Burj AlArab Airport is in	western Egypt.
a) —/—	b) The/—
c)/the	d) The/the
# He was only person to disa	igree.
a) a	b) an
c) the	d) no article
46 Anna was born in Italy but	she lives in ARE now.
a) —/—	b) ——/the
c) the/	d) the/the
77 Are you interested in art or	architecture?
a) a	b) an
c) the	d) no article
18 The other day the fire brigade had to	go to prison to put out the fire.
a) a	b) an
c) the	
Which of the following sentence is in	d) no article
a) The sky is blue.	
	b) The earth is round.
c) The moon shines by night.	d) A sky is blue.
20 The article "the" is used	
a) to make something specific	b) to make things general
c) has no use or meaning	d) to make a thing real
158	and ical

che

Open Book General Exercises on Units 7 & 8)

the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	when I was young, my pa	arents always made -		
	where late.	wade M	eto sche	ool as the bus was
	alk	D) Walking		
1	Jido't take part in the	conference because b	c) to walk	d) walked
		b) hadn't been	informed	d.
,	where did you get your ca	b) hadn't been "? We're lookin	C) ISN't	d) won't be
	alto repair	b) repair	s for a good mecha	nic to fix our car.
1	The new contract .	signed yet.	c) repaired	d) repairing
	a)hasn't been	b) was	c) will be	
J	The students got the tea	their test	c) will be	
	a) will postpone	b) postponed	C) Dostnone) week.
1	All the students .	about the next trip to	the museum recer	a) to postpone
	a) have told	b) have been told	c) are told	d) were told
1	Alineeds to have his cor	nputerout for	r viruses.	Trefe told
		b) check		d) checked
1	<mark>I O</mark> sama had to have his n	nobile phone	after he dropped i	t in the water.
	a) to fix	b) fix	c) fixed	d) fixing
1	While the room	, Hala found her gold i	ring.	
		b) was being cleaned		
1	As she finishes her work			
	a) look	b) to look	c) looking	d) looked
1	The fire station staff are	trained to be always re	eady when there is	a/an
	a) event	b) emergency	c) competition	d) incident
1	Mary the teach	er to ask about the da	te of the monthly (exam.
	a) ignored	b) appoved	c) interpreted	a) interrupted
1	is a disease in v	which the body cannot	control the level of	or sugar in the bibbb.
	i) Cappen	e a minimutas	C) Webarins	a, beimadid
1	Agood teacher is the on	e who actively involves	his students in the c) consolidation	d) operation
	a) process	b) destination	c) consolidation	a) operation

PART One of the following isn't a meaning of the word "invisible". d) unseen c) obvious b) hidden a) disquised I thought I had finally cured him of this annoying habit. "Cured" here means a) stopped him from behaving badly b) treating him from an illness. c) moved him from one place to another. d) made him feel happy 77 My little sister Naglaa was named our grandmother. b) after c) at a) at d) for My friend's father works as an economic for an important company. b) partner a) consultant c) professor d) customer a) gravity b) waiting c) spin d) air 29 The scientists are trying to find a for Alzheimer's Disease. a) treat b) care c) cure d) pain ar Samia's parents have meetings with the teachers at her school. a) totally b) gradually c) slowly d) regularly Terrorist actions aim at giving out the wrong to investors, a) note b) ray c) sign d) signal Every school playground has a tallon which the Egyptian flag is hung. a) sword b) stick c) tower d) mast Reforming education is one of the most important issues on the Egyptian government's a) laser b) radar c) beam We had an opportunity to meet some actors and film when we visited the file d) device studios in 6th October City. a) audience b) critics c) directors d) workers a) is repaired b) was repaired c) had been repaired d) was being repaired Don't worry, the kids and they are satisfied now. a) were feeding b) had already fed c) have already been fed d) have already fed

My brother was happy as his wallet · C Units (788) a) has been found c) was finding b) had been found When you saw me yesterday, I was having my car d) wasn't found a) repair b) was repaired c) to repair The teacher had the students d) repaired the homework twice as a kind of punishment. a) do b) to do c) doing gead the following passage, then answer the questions: d) done

Many great inventions are initially greeted with ridicule and disbelief. The invention of the airplane was no exception. Although many people who heard about the first flight on December 17, 1903 were excited and impressed, others reacted with a lot of laughter. Some people called Wilbur and Orville Wright, the inventors of the first flying machine, fools. Negative reactions, however, did not stop the Wrights. Driven by their desire to succeed, they continued their experiments.

Or ville and Wilbur Wright had always had a great interest in flying and mechanics. As young boys, they earned money by making and selling kites and mechanical toys. Later, they designed a newspaper-folding machine, built a printing press, and operated a bicycle-repair shop. In 1900 and 1901, the Wrights tested various gliders. In 1903 the Wrights built their first airplane, which cost less than 1,000 dollars. They even designed and made a lightweight petrol engine to power the plane. When they started the engine on December 17, the airplane shook wildly before taking off. The plane managed to fly for 12 seconds, and it flew 120 feet.

By 1905, the Wrights had perfected the first airplane that could turn, circle, and remain in flight for half an hour at a time. Others had flown in balloons and gliders, but the Wright brothers were the first to build a full-size machine that could fly under its own power. As the contributors of one of the most outstanding engineering achievements in history, the Wright brothers are accurately called the fathers of aviation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The idea of flying an aircraft was to some people.
 - a) boring
- b) distasteful
- c) exciting
- d) needless
- The first flying machine the Wright Brothers made flew for
 - a) half an hour.
- b) 12 seconds
- c) 120 seconds
- d) 1000 seconds

Some people thought that the Wright brothers had when they made the b) been negatively influenced first machine. d) been mistaken a) acted without thinking Mhat did the Wright brothers design in addition to the first aircraft? b) A newspaper-folding machine. a) A printing press. d) A rocket. 35 Why did the Wrights designed a petrol engine? c) A bike. a) To sell it to factories. b) To use it in their airplane. c) To power their bikes. d) To make kites. b) change a) run d) design c) modify 37 What was the problem of their first flying machine? b) It burnt. a) It didn't start. d) It shook wildly. c) It couldn't leave the ground. What is the suitable title for the passage? b) The first plane. a) The fathers of aviation. d) How to invent things. c) How to learn flying. What do you think made the Wright Brothers successful in life? a) Their low skills. b) Their family's help. c) Money. d) Their persistence and hard work. What does the underlined pronoun 'its' refer to? a) The petrol engine. b) The flying machine. c) The printing press. d) The glider. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Why did Colonel Sapt suggest that Rassendyll return to the capital? a) To meet the real King. b) To kill Michael. c) To continue pretending to be the King. d) To save Fritz from Michael.

b) Flavia would be a queen.

b) To bury Josef's body.

d) Rassendyll would stay king forever.

d) To fight Rassendyll and his men.

Which one of the following wasn't right about Michael and his men? They couldn't declare that Rassendyll wasn't the real King. C Units (78.8)

b) They wanted to kill Rassendyll and bring the King to his place. () They couldn't kill the King as long as Rassendyli was still in Strelsau.

d) They wanted to get rid of both the King and Rassendyli.

What would happen if the real King was killed?

a) Michael would be king.

d Michael would tell people the truth.

Why were Michael's men carrying spades?

a) To cover the blood on the floor.

a To destroy the hunting lodge.

Why was Rasssendyll injured in his finger?

a) He caught his finger in a door.

ы One of Michael's men shot him.

t) One of Michael's men cut it with a sword,

d) It was twisted while fighting.

Where did Sapt and Rassendyli stop on their way back to the capital?

al At a farm.

b) At the gate.

d At the Inn.

d) At the castle.

What did they ask the former for?

a) Money.

b) Food.

c) Protection.

d) Medicine.

Who came to see the King after his injury in the castle?

a) Flavia's servant.

b) Flavia.

c) Michael.

d) Sapt's servant.

Who was the servant Rassendyll used replacing?

a) Johann.

b) Freyler.

c) Josef.

d) Fritz.

What do you know about Michael's six men?

a) They were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house.

b) They were completely loyal to Michael. c) Three were from Ruritania and three were foreigners.

d) All of these.

PART

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- St The smart car sounds like a great invention in our modern age. It can tell the moton The smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sounds like a great invention of the smart car sound like a great invention of the smart car sound like a great like smart car so that shall be a great like a great like smart car so that shall be a great like a الله عند السيارة الذكية اختراعــُـا رائعــُـا في عصرنا الحديث فعى تســـتطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التي يجب أن يســلكها معلاوة على ذلك فهي تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.
 - رب . () بُهدو السيارة الذكية اختراعنا رائعنا في عصرنا الحديث فهي تستطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التي يجب أن يسلكما/تسلكما ومع ذلك فهي تحدد العشكلة وتعطى الحل.
 - ي تُبِدُو السيارة الذَّكية اختراعنا رائعنا في عصرنا الحديث فهي تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التي يجب أن يسلكما/تسلكما وعلاوة على ذلك فهي تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.
- رر) تبدو السيارة الجميلة اختراعنا رائعنا في عصرنا الحديث فعي تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التي يجب أن يسلكما/تسلكما وعلاوة على ذلك فهي تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

Choose the correct English translation:

وُ إِنْ وَأَكْرِكَ السياحة في كل أنحاء العالم تأثرا بالغا بالأعمال الإرهابية الجبانة والأمراش الفتاكة مثل فيروس كورونا المستجد وتحاول كل بلد جاهدة أن تجد حلولا لهذه العقبات.

- a) Tourism everywhere has been affected great effect by cowardly terrorism and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.
- b) Tourism in all parts of the world has been severely affected by cowardly terroris acts and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every countryis trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.
- c) Tourism in all parts of the world has affected severely by cowardly terrorism actions and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.
- d) Tourism everywhere has been affected severe effects by cowardly terrorist actions and deadly diseases such as the emerging corona virus, and every country is trying hard to find solutions to these obstacles.

Choose the correct answer:

- After the sentence "Global warming is the increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere." Which one could be a supporting sentence?
 - a) Plants use carbon dloxide to prepare their food and release oxygen.
 - b) Global warming can have disastrous effects on Earth.
 - c) Global warming is caused by the rise in carbon dioxide levels in the atmosphere, which leads to an increase in temperature.
 - d) Planting trees can reduce the carbon dioxide levels in the atmosphere.



units 9&10





torist

ıď

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

1	
ambassador (n)	يفير
nolicant (n)	متقدم للوظيفة
_{20pointment} (n)	موعد
andidate (n)	مرشح
doir (n)	الكورال (مجموعة مغنيين)
conscientious (adj)	دُو ضمیر حی/ م ^ب جد
(V(Curriculum Vitae)	السيرة الذاتية
daycare centre (n)	مرکز رعایة نهاری
stablished (adj)	ثابت/ دُو مكانة
llow (n)	رجل/ رفيق
ent (adj)	طليق/ فصيح
ede (n)	درجة/ تقدير

grain (n)	Long Color March
Mandarin (n)	قمح/ ذرة رمل
	اللغة الصيئية
neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/ الحي
pharmacy (n)	صيدلية
president (n)	رئيس العولة
product (n)	منتج
reputation (n)	سمعة/ شعرة
sales (n)	مبيعات
sociable (adj)	اجتماعي (شخص)
throughout (prep)	عبر/ خلال
toiler (n)	كادح/ سائر بصعوبة
will (n) (v)	وصية/ يوصى ب

Helpful Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار .
academic (adj)	أكانيمي
accept (v) (ed)	Section a seaso of the manual transmission of the season o
achievement (n)	إثجاز
activities (n)	v 26.50
aged (adj)	في عمر
gent (n)	وكيل/ موظف
mbition (n)	طُموح

ambitious (a <mark>dj)</mark>	طموح
area (n)	منطقة/ مساحة
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/ وسام/ يمنح
biology (n)	غلم الأحياء
blow (v)	بهب
care (v) (d)	يهتم



PART

chemistry (n)	كيمياء
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل بــ/ اتصال
continent (n)	قارة
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ ينتج/يبدع
crop (n)	محصول
customer service (n)	خدمة العملاء
degree (n)	ىرجة جامعية
details (n)	تغاصيل
diplomat (n)	دبلوماسي
disabled (adj)	معاق
document (n)	وثيقة
experience (n)	خبرة
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن
feelings (n)	مشاعر
fresh water (n)	مياه عذبة
frozen (n)	مثجعد
get on (v)	بنسحور
hostel (n)	تزل/ بیت شباپ
information technology (n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
inquire (v) (d)	The state of the s
interview (n) (v) (ed)	M. Alexander and June 1911
intonation (n)	مقابلة/ يجري مقابلة
ob title	منوة صوت
andform (n)	مسعى وظيفي
eader (n)	شكل الأرض/ تضاريس
cence (n)	تائد
neaning (n)	رخصة
nldnight (n)	مائی
nissing (adj)	متتصف الليل
	مقتود/ منتقد

object (n)	Elgen
offer (v) (ed)	بفرض
official (adj) (n)	رسمی/ موظف رسمی بعید صیاغة
paraphrase (v) (d)	غذليت عيب
particular (adj)	udi
personification (n)	بمنغث
personnel (n)	فيلة العاملين
physical (adj)	UL
population (n)	وسكان
profession (n)	žia,
qualifications (n)	مؤملات
qualities (n)	مِنْكُ/ خَصَالُص
remain (v) (ed)	بيقى
representative (n)	مندوب
result (n)	شبة
sales assistant	بالغ
share (v) (d)	بني شارك
shocked (adj)	00100
skill (n)	معارة
specialise (v) (d)	
surprising (adj)	Ana
task (n)	7.00
teenager (n)	
verse (n)	مراهق
voluntary (adj)	بیت شعری
volunteering (n)	تطوعى
well-organised (adj)	
wheat (n)	فنظم جيدا
And Address of the court of the State of the	أغرد

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

at the present time	ني الوقت الحالي
become friends	يتصادق
do a course in	يدرس مقرر ًا في
do the accounts	يقوم (يتولى) الحسابات
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة
have a degree in	لديه شعادة في
have a driving licence	يجمل رخصة قنادة e

have in common	لنيهم أشياء مشتركة
in vain	یلا جدوی
make a note	يدون ملاحظات
make an appointment	پرتب موعدًا
on time	في الوقت المحدد
the same activity as	نتس النشاط ک
turn red	يتحول للون الأحمر

Prepositions

ambassador to	سفير اـ
apply for	يتقدم بطلب ك
award for	جائزة على
candidate for	مرشح ⊥
care about/for	يعتم ب
effective at	مؤثر/ خطل في
fluent in	طليق في

focus on	يركز على
graduate from	يتخرج من
result of	المُحِودُ الـ
talk about	يتحدث عن
translate into	يترجم إلى
use of	استخدام اـ
work as	يعمل ک

Derivatives

V	erb		loun	Adje	ctive
achieve	نجز/ يتم	achievemen	نجاز t	achievable	حقيضتاناته
affect	يؤثر على	effect		effective	والفذائ
		conscience	ضمير	conscientious	ونميز هي/ عُجِد،
explain	يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	×
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive)și
freeze	يجمد/يتجمد	freezing	10 to No 40 on 10 10 10 1	frozen	40
- w		fluency	طلاقة/ فصاحة	fluent	لبق ا فصيح
<u> </u>		neighbourho neighbour	الجيرة/ الحى od جار	neighbourly	ـــن لبوا <i>را</i> ودی
personify	يشخص	personificatio	n تشخیص	***	- 10 11
persuade		persuasion	اقناع	persuasive	
elax 	ا پسترخی	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	سترخ امریح اوج
	S	kIII	ممارة	skilled/skillful	لغا ملمو
pecialise		pecialisation pecialist	اختصاص/ تخصص اخصائی	specialised	تنسمي
عوية ااد	ا تعدم تسادنه	oiler	کادح/ سائر بصعوبة	PP No. 100 (Mg) No. 100 (Mg)	

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

	412		Tittonyms	
Word	Meaning	Synonym	Antonym at	in a ft
_{academic}	أكاديمي	scholastic	ignorant	
ambitious	طموح	enthusiastic		جاهل
choir	الكورال	chorus	Content	راضٍ/قنوع
_{conscie} ntious		L	soloist	مۇدى منفرد
	شو ضمیر حی/ <i>مث</i>	honest	dishonest	غير مجتمد
create	ينتج	construct	demolish	A18.
expert	خبير	professional	amateur	يهدم
explain	يفسر	illustrate	conceal	ھاو
fluent	طليق/ فصيح	eloquent	hesitant	يخفى
		cioquent	influent	مترند غیر فصیح
grade	ىرجة/ تقىير	standard	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم
member	عضو/ فرد	representative	opponent	خصم
persuade	يقنع	convince	discourage	يثبط العزيمة
reputation	سمعة/ شعرة	fame	unimportance	عدم اهمية
shape	شکل	form	difference	اختلاف
skill	ممارة	proficiency	inability	
^{soci} able	 لجتماعی (شخص)	neighbourly	unfriendly	عدم قدرة
^{state} ment		and the second	question	غير لطيف
toij	بيان	announcement		استجواب
^{unfortunatel}	يكدح	sweat	relax	يسترخى
ila(6)	لسوء الحظ ٧	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ



Important Language Notes

Word family

يومي الكلمات تشتق من كلمات أخرى باستخدام اللاحقة (suffix) التي تحول الفعل إلى اسم أو ممة

	لي اسم او صفة مثل التالي.			Adje	ctive
	Verb	Nou		1	
account	يفسر أيقدم بيانات	account	حساب محاسب	accountable	هباسه زيي
account		accountant applicant	متقدم لوظيفة		•
apply	يتقدم بطلب	application	طلب وظيفة		
consult	يستشير	consultant	مستشار	consultative	الثالث
assist	-	assistant	مساعق		4 Tab
		reputation	i.e.m	reputable	ينثرم لعمله الجيد
_		profession	ممنة ،	professional	_{معني} / لحترافى
appoint	يحدم وقت	appointment	موعد		
		conscience	منمير	conscientious	نوضمير هي
qualify	يؤهل	qualification	مؤمرل	qualified	- مراهل
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	طنم
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	يية possessive	تىلكى/ خاص بالملة
achieve	يحقق/ ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	بعكن إنجازه
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن/ تصريح	permitted	نسدوح

(Abbreviations)



25	ها في عللم الوظائف والأعمال مثل: معددات علام الوظائف والأعمال مثل:	• نثك بعض الاختصارات المتفق على
B.Sc. BA	bachelor of science bachelor of arts	بكلوريوس في العلوم
cv	curriculum vitae	بكلوريوس (درجة جامعية)
DOB	date of birth	لسيزة المذاتية
F/T	full time	ناريخ الميلاد
GSEC	General Secondary Education Certificate	كامل الوقت
IT	Information technology	ثعلنة الثانوية العامة
M.Sc.	Master of science	تخولوجيا المعلومات
P/T	part time	^{ارجة} العلجستير في العلوم
PhD	doctor of philosophy	الوقت/ جزء من الوقت
9		البنكتوراه في الفلسفة

blow/fall/pour/rise/set

blow

Astrong wind was blowing across the area.

تعب (الرباح)

We were having a picnic when the rain started to fall,

بسقط (المطر)

fall

The thunder and lightning stopped, but it continued to pour.

يتممر/ يسقط بشدة(المطر)

As the sun rose in the sky the temperature climbed.

تشرق (الشمس)

We sat on the beach and watched the sun set.

تغرب (الشمس)



blizzard/ downpour/ gale

عاصفة ثلحية

blizzard

Roads were closed due to severe blizzards.

هطول أمطار (مطر غزير)

downpour

A sudden downpour made us run for shelter and the river was very high.

علصفة (هيوب شديد للرياح)

Severe gales disrupted road and railway travel throughout Britain.

Additional Language Notes



interview

▶ Yasser has an interview for a new job.

appointment

موعد/ متعاد

I called the secretary to have an appointment with the manager.

conference

مؤثمر

▶ The new invention will be shown in a big international conference.

meeting

> The factory staff has a meeting once a month.

applicant

متقدم (بطلب) للحصول على شيء

All applicants for the job must have experience.

candidate

After the interview, Ziad was chosen as one of the best candidates for the job.

مرشع لني الانتخابات/ لوظيفة)

My uncle has a degree in economics from Ca درجة اشعادة جامعية degree University. Students who complete the program receive certificate skills certificate. وثيقة/ شعادة (دراسية كالثانوية) My son got a grade A in maths and science. تقبير شمانة/ امتدان grade ▶ He joined the police in 1998, and quickly tose rank والتبنة (عسكونة/ احتماعية) the rank of inspector. ا بشارك/ يشترك (بدون تس share my room with my little brother, يشترك المون تس share ▶ The playground was divided into two sections divide يقسم/ يقصل more sports. sensible It would be sensible to consult your parents first متعقل/ حساس (يظهر الحكم السليم) sensitive

needs of people.

The government should be more sensitive to the



حساس (يفهم مشاعر الناس ومشاكلهم)

thoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(Key Vocabulary			
istor was a very	from the second		
1 My sister	b) wasteful	nd attended all her le	ectures
a) lazy	a small area of the	c) playful	d) conscientious
NAT extended to the same of th	a small area of town or b) neighbourhood	the people who live	there
Mariam Worked Hai	d and got goodb) awards	in her universit	V course
3 Clore-	a training		
Our family has a we	The second second business	T talme about 11	
1 COOKE 4	- COLUCIEU	C) rirasun	15 . 1 . 14 . 1
I It is important for t	rurses to get on with th	heir patients, so the	hospital is looking for
Julia young	people to train.	, , , , , ,	nespital is localing for
a) social	*	c) sociable	d) unfriendly
1 The job advertisem	ient said that all	should have a f	BSc in chemistry.
a) applicants	b) correspondents	c) craftsmen	d) cannibals
1 When they are app	lying for a job, some p	eople start their	with personal
details. Others put	their qualifications first	4	
a) BSc	b) AD	c) DVD	d) CV
Itwasn't until she h	ad arrived home that sh	ne remembered her .	with the doctor,
a) appointment	b) interview	c) conference	d) seminar
*Acentre i	s a place where people	who are old or ill can	be looked after during
the day.			
a) day	b) daily	c) daycare	d) daytime
	my flourish, all Egyptia	n :should	be of high quality.
	b) production		d) products
1 He works in the	department o	f the company.	
a) solar	h) solo	c) seller	d) sales
This factory has the	e of being	one of the best pro	ducers of plastic in the
country.	C zerojeskiharopaskihari(ita O)		
	La compatition	c) deputation	d) reputation
Wy Orange of	b) competition It me some money in hi		
a) paper		c) biography	d) will
habel	b) book		

a lot of useful experience working for an oil company. 2 b) earned c) won

you'll never get a good job if you don't have any

b) qualifications Units (9&10) a) qualifications
b) qualifications
c) quantities
d) equalifications
c) quantities
d) equalifications
c) quantities
d) equalifications
c) quantities
d) equalifications Ut d) gained c) quantities d) equalities a) gifts
c) skills
gifyou have a job, you should prepare yourself well. Jd. d) fitness a) contended to mind the relation of any scientist is to win the Nobel Prize. c) advertisement d) announcement untry The manager is checking Walid's qualifications for the new post. d) achievement c) personality d) personification My uncle has a travel company that in European tours. a) releases b) considers ht c) specialises everyone knows exactly what they have to do. a) disorganised b) organised c) social d) friendly *Most birds go back to their nests before the sunand it gets dark. al falls b) rises c) pours # The road near the coast was closed because the rain wasdown heavily. a) pouring b) rising c) starting d) raising Nearly 70 percent of the in Egypt still live in the countryside. d) raising a) pollution b) population c) workers d) areas * The language of poetry always represents the of many beautiful things in our life. a) shaping b) paraphrasing c) exploration d) personification The population increase will surely many economic problems. a) create b) consume c) apply d) solve 🔋 It was a hard to arrange for the new conference. d) expedition c) profession a) task b) work My family has lived in this of Cairo for years. c) parcel d) area a) period b) division My cousin _____ a flat with five other students who live away from home. d) hires c) shares a) divides b) expands Words can't how angry we felt after what my son did. c) object d) impress a) retire b) express

c) with

d) about

a) in

b) at

-			-	
	The word "hesitant" is	an antonym to the	-(Units (9&10)
	a) fluent	b) affluent	ord	
١	THE HEM CICIN 2 TOD IS:	10	*/ GDHDdaws	all amounts of
۱	a) do	b) make	ccounts at the supe	a) applied
١	Graduates who apply	b) make	c) devise	annarket.
	a) at	h) for	ust be fluent in E.	d) change
	The noun lattice is a c	MOORIEM L.	*/ GUOUIT	Et and the second of the secon
	a) avoidance	b) reputation	hishey dyssidyssydsistyras B	
	My brother is more so	b) reputation ciable than me. He ge	c) collection	d) doputu
	My brother is more so	b) away	ets with	everyone be made
	a There was a worried	b) away	c) to	d) on
	There was a worried	b) commother	's face when my littl	le brother was III
	"The yerh "demolish" -	b) expression an be the opposite of	c) expressive	d) everested
				a) expressed
				d) astonish
	to the reports or sould fi	cesred in	autumn.	-) 43(0)11311
	a) idil	D) light	al -t.	d) turn
	# He is very punctual. H	le always goes to wor	ktime.	-/ tull!
	B) 011	D) TOP	c) at	d) from
	The United Nations a	Ilways asserts the imp	ortance of	relations between
	countries,			
	a) neighbour	b) neighbourly	c) neighbouring	d) neighbourhood
	The adjective "hones	t" is similar in meaning	to the adjective	,
	a) evil	b) established	c) disloyal	d) conscientious
	Although they are br	others, the two boys o	on't have much in	1 married by the state of the s
	a) strange	b) common		d) private
	78 The evidence against	the accused man wa	s noter	
		b) persuading		
	76 A well known legal			
	a) specialised	b) specialise	c) specialisation	d) specialist
	Most of the players a	nneared	and confident before	re the match.
	a) relax	b) relaxation	c) relaxed	d) relaxing
	You have to	on appointment to		_
	on Have to """"		c) devise	d) revise
	a) make	b) do		
	My uncle works		c) as	d) with
	a) for	b) in		-
	Naguib Mahfouz's bo	ooks were translated.	c) for	d) into
	a) in	b) at	C) 101	-, 1110
				177

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b	o, c or d:
6 Name of Shahaan made a lot of go	ood films and he was a goodfor
a) politician	b) ambassador
s) diolomat	d) electrician
* We all congratulated our uncle on h	as chairman of his company,
a) committee	b) ceremony
cl appointment	d) session
3 Unfortunately, doctors say that my i	father Is an obvious for a heart atta
a) candidate	b) applicant
c) employer	d) player
We admired the competitors'	movement across the dance floor.
a) lazy	b) hasty
c) puzzled	d) fluent
The best students at the final exams	are
a) degreed	b) rewarded
c) graded	d) punished
lt really goes against the	to have to work on a national holiday.
a) wheat	b) grain
c) sand	d) plant
is a type of small orange	with loose skin that comes off easily.
-) moreoffil	b) Melon
c) Marlin	d\ Maine
The young singer's new album sold in a) neighbourly	n the
	b) poighbourk and topies.
c) neighbours	b) neighbourhood
The of the new bank said +	d) n eighbouring hat their objective is to have at least 50 branch
	hat their objective is to have at least 50 branch
a) advisor .	
c) president	b) diplomat
The teacher asked the children in p	d) ambassador
without using a calculator.	rimary 1 to find the of 21 and 1
a) product	
c) production	b) produce
	d) productive

The restaurant certainly lived up to its	(Units (9&10)		
a) repetition	the food was delicious		
Lintonation	ritention		
The government has a strong political	d) reputation		
a) document	to reform the economic system.		
c) certificate	-7 19[[[
The staff said that they're all ready to suppart all grade	d) form		
a) grade	port the new principal to some		
c) degree	w) Idnk		
-,	d) certificate		
The old man lives in afor the the earthquake.	homeless after his house was destroyed in		
a) hostel	b) house		
c) hotel	d) stadium		
# The politician had a difficult year, but his	Supporters remained loval		
a) outside	b) throughout		
c) through	d) along		
* Experts always warn ships that oil spillag			
a) governorates	b) districts		
c) peoples	d) populations		
7 The new store sells furniture	T - T		
a) quality	b) quantity		
c) qualified	d) equality		
The medicine is an effective	for the treatment of asthma.		
a) clerk	b) agent		
c) director	d) employee		
Grandma is very about the ki	ind of olive oil she uses.		
a) private •	b) violent		
c) particular	d) specialised		
The comic actor's speech was greeted w	th a of laughter.		
a) gale	b) downpour		
	d) wind		
c) plom			





Unit (9)

Reported Speech

انعلام المنقول (الفير مباشر)

Reported statements

الجمل الخبرية

هِ يكُونَ غَعَل القُولَ فَي الجِملة الخَبرية said او told ويأتى بعد told المفعول به سواء اسم أم ضمير مفعول مثل /me/ him/ .her/us/the

ولانجد علامات اقتباس في الجملة المحولة ونربط الجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن حنفما. و بعد that دائمًا جملة كاملة بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضعير) والضمائر تكون موافقة لسياق الجملة.

با كان فعل القول (said/ told) ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدهم إلا في الحالات الخاصة. و إذا كان فعل القول (said/ told) ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدهم إلا في الحالات الخاصة.

و نعود بالزمن درجة للأقدم كالآتى: و نعود بالزمن درجة

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
play / plays	played	will play	would play
played	had played	shall play	would play /should play
is / are playing	was/were playing	may play	might play
have / has played	had played	can play	could play
has / have been playing	had been playing	1	had to play / must play
was / were playing	had been playing		had to/ would have to
			play

تربذ الزمان والمكان وضعائر الإشارة تكون موافقة للكلام المنقول أيضًا وهي كالتالي؛

Direct	Indirect	Direct	بذ الزمان والمكان وصفائر البسد
now	Ithen		Indirect
this	that	tonight	that night
these	those	tomorrow	the next day
here	there	next week	the following week
(two days) ago	(two days)before / earlier	today	that day
last week	the week before	come here	go there
	the previous week	yesterday	the day before
	the next morning		the previous day
Dové Palata	the following Friday	this afternoon	that afternoon
		the day after	
80		tomorrow	in two days' time

Direct

The children are in the garden."

'My smart phone isn't working."

have a meeting at 4.00."

*Ola has passed her exam."

will probably be late."

"You can have three tickets."

The train leaves at 6.00."

We all speak English."

"forgot my keys."

Indirect

Omar said (that) the children were in the garden.

He said (that) his smart phone wasn't working.

She said (that) she had a meeting at 4.00.

Sally told me (that) Ola had passed her exam.

I thought(that) I would probably be late.

The man said (that) I could have three tickets.

The timetable said the train left at 6.00.

She said (that) they all spoke English.

He said (that) he had forgotten his keys.





لا يتغير الزمن في الجملة المحولة في الحالات الأتية: (facts) الحقائق (facts)

The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world.

(ب) إذا كان الكلام يُـقَالُ حالًا أي به كلمات مثل (just now/ a moment ago)

My father said just now that he is going to Alexandria tomorrow.

(جـ) إذا كان فعل القول في أحد أزمنة المضارع أو المستقبل.

Ahmad says / has said that he is ready for the exam.

(د) الماضي التام والماضي من had better /used to و modal verbs يبقى كما هو.

He said that they could see the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.

و يمكن أستخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said:

claimed / complained / mentioned / indicated / asserted / agreed / reported explained / shout

The man said," The woman was killed yesterday."

The man reported that the woman had been killed the day before.

و بعد الأفعال الأثية ويأتي بعدها v + ing؛

suggest admit / deny / apologize for/objected to/insisted on + (v-ing)

He said, "Let's look for another flat."

He suggested looking for another flat.

يمكن تحويل الجملة باستخدام that وبعدما جملة:

▶ He said, " I didn't steal the bag."

He denied stealing the bag.

▶ He denied that he had stolen the bag, (الفعل بعد deny مثبت)

ع بعكن استخدام الأفعال الأتية وياتي بعدها .to + inf:

promise/ offer /agree/threaten/refuse/remind/decide /warn / ask / advise / allow / + (to + inf.)

- ▶ He said, "I'll help you with your homework."
- ▶ He promised to help me with my homework.

﴾ الملضى المستمر يمكن أن يحول إلى ماضى تام مستمر أو يظل كما هو للحفاظ على وحدة الزمن.

- ▶ He said that he had been studying all day the day before.
- ▶ He said that he fell down while he was playing.

explained/ complained/ exclaim/ remark/ inform : عنك أفعال يجب استخدام that بعدها مثل

والأفعال الأثية في حالة عدم وجود to + inf أو v-ing

(agree/deny/ promise/claim /threaten/ remind/ boast /suggest / claim)

He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

) تدول الحالة الأولى من if إلى الحالة الثانية ولكن الملضى غير الحقيقى في الحالة الثانية والثالثة والتمنى لا يحول.

"If you ask Ali, he'll help you." Omar said. (1st conditional)

Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me.

If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me.

(2nd conditional)

Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate."

Unit (10)

Reported Questions

الجمل الاستفهامية فى الكلام غير المباشر

 يكون فعل القول في الجملة الاستفمامية asked وبعدها مفعول أو بدون مفعول. if/ whether أو (Wh) أو if/ whether.
 الا نجد علامات اقتباس في السؤال المحول ونربط السؤال بنفس كلمة الاستقصام

بعد الربط تكون الجملة خبرية بدايتما الفاعل (اسم أو ضعير) ثم الفعل ثم باقي السؤال.

تخنف علامة الاستفعام ونضع نقطة.

إذا كان فعل القول (asked) ماضي فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعدها إلا في الحالات الخاصة.

🕣 في تحويل الأسئلة نغير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما في النوع الخبري.

in//here will you go next week?"

. She asked him where he would go the following week.

r'Do you often write poems?"

lasked him if/ whether he often wrote poems.

"Where did you find your bag?"

She asked me where I had found my bag.

🔇 عندما تستخدم shall في طلب النصيحة والاقتراح والعروض تحول الى should ولكن في تحويل الجمل العادية والسؤالءن معلومات تحول إلى would ،

When shall we have our dinner?" Salah said.

(information)

Salah asked when they would have their dinner.

"How shall I install Windows 10?" Ali said.

(advice)

All asked how he should install Windows 10.

🐼 يمكن استخدام أفعال أخرى غير ask وهي أفعال لا يأتي بعدها مفعول مثل:

Wonder / inquire / want to know / don't know/ have no idea

🕒 لا يحول الزمن إلى الدرجة الأقل مثل الجعل الخبرية مع:

(جـ) القوانين. ﴿ د ﴾ خعل القول في المضارع. الحقائق. (ب) الكلام الذي بقال حالا.

😝 يمكن أن يبدأ السؤال بـ ?.....؟ Do you know/ Can (Could) you tell me. ومنا نضع علامة استفمام أخر السؤال لأنه يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو modal verb .

Do you know when Ahmed arrived at the station? what و Who يأتي الفاعل بعد كلمة الاستفهام إذا كانت تسأل عن الفاعل مثل who و what

The policeman said, "What caused the fire?"

The Policeman asked what had caused the fire.



القواعد التي لم تدرس هذا العام





Had better/ Would rather/ Prefer

Had better + Inf. = should / ought to

Had better not + inf.

. not + inf. بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها العصدر وفي التغي had better بنيم

▶ He'd better book his flight early.

▶ I'd better not take out a loan; I won't be able to pay it back.

Would rather = prefer +v-ing

نيثنام would rather بمعنى يجب أن وبعدها المصدر وفي النفي not + inf وهي تفيد تفضيل شيء على شيء لذلك يهكن استخدام than ثم المصدر معمة.

▶ I'd rather do my shopping tomorrow.

I'd rather not have gone to the dinner party last night.

I'd rather stay at home than go out.

'd rather + inf. than + inf.

بناجار اسم أو ضمير بعد rather نستخدم الماضي البسيط أو الماضي التام بنفس معنى Wish نستخدم العاضي للتعبير عن

لمضارع والعاضي التام للتعبير عن الملضي.

I'd rather you stayed with us tonight.

'd rather + subject. + past

I'd rather Ramy hadn't taken his father's car yesterday.

Prefer + ing form /noun + to + ing form / noun

I prefer playing tennis to playing football.

Prefer + to + inf./noun + rather than + inf. / noun

I prefer to eat fish rather than (eat) meat.

Would Prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf.

I'd prefer to walk home rather than take the bus.

(general preference)

prefer tennis to football.

(general preference)

(specific preference)

• يمكن استخدام العاضى البسيط للإشارة إلى الحاضر (الحاضر غير الواقعى) عندما نتحث عن مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو محتملة نتعارض مع الحقائق في الوقت الحاضر.

• يعكن استخدام الماضى التام للإشارة إلى مواقف وهمية أو غير واقعية أو غير محتملة تتعارض مع الحقائق في الماضي (الماض العاض أير الحقيقي).

Past Simple is used with:	Past Perfect is used with:
(onditionals Type 2 If I were you, I would pay. Wish (present) I wish he were here now. Suppose/Supposing Suppose you were asked to move out, what would you do? I'd rather+ sb (present)	Conditionals Type 3 If I had seen him, I would have told you. wish (past) I wish you had taken his advice when he gave it. Suppose/Supposing Suppose you had seen the crime being committed, what would you have done? I'd rather+ sb (past)

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 Hala the lesson had already started when he arrived. a) asked d) wanted to know c) said al will do b) was done c) has done d) had done Samy told his wife he a party on his 50th birthday. a) haven't wanted b) didn't want c) don't want d) won't want 4 Fahmy declared that hehis classmates the following month. a) is going to see b) will see c) was going to see d) may see * They that they had been waiting for hours. a) complained b) told c) asked Reda said if he late for work, his boss would be furious. d) wondered b) has been c) was 7 He said hea party with his friends the next weekend. d) had been b) was having c) had had He said water when it's heated. d) has had a) would boil b) boiled c) was boiling Sally assured me that if she the answer she would have told me. c) knows The surgeon said that he the operation that morning. d) would know b) had done ** She promised she me as soon as the plane landed. c) has done d) will do b) phoned The teacher told us that a lot of English words from other languages. She told me that her father Ill since June. c) had borrowed d) are borrowed b) was Ramy says that when he was young, he never attention to his parents a) paid b) is paying She complained that her son never got up early and he always late for school. c) would be

d) was

She promised her frie	nd that she	lose I	nits (9&10)
Woll t	b) wouldn't	ose her necklace.	
He sald that he	b) wouldn't the match when	o aldn't	d) couldn't
Duings Wattening	ni watched	Lile Doct	ith the hank report
		c) had watched or 7 hours.	d) could watch
a) has eaten	b) had eaten	or 7 hours,	A COULD MEICH
The teacher said the	Parth	c) wouldn't eat	d) hadn't eaten
a) has moved The weather forecast a) would	b) moves	nd the sun.	at upont catch
The weather forecast	Said that it	c) was moving	d) had moved
alwould	b) will	probably rain later t	hat day
apial told me that he	b) will	c) can	d) should
to do	able to se	e me that afternoon	because he had a lot
alwayidn't be	h) lamb		occurate the find a fot
all wouldn't be	b) isn't at he always	c) can't be	d) had to be
#He foin the bouce fu	at he always	. the doors and win	dows to avoid being
a) locks	b) lock	c) locked	d) was locking
to the first and a second of the	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	"Aft that day cioes he	had no money
a) Hash r done	DI UIGITTOO	Chunn't an	_H I I G
She tells her friends t	hat she of	ten late because she o	ioesn't wear a watch
a) is	b) was	c) has been	d) would be
Ramy says that wher	he was young, he nev	er attention	to his parents' advice.
a) is paying	b) paid	c) pays	d) pay
He said that	in the sea as there	e were dangerous fish	ì,
	b) hadn't bathed		
	n't live on his basic sala		
	b) would have to		
* They said they	for the school b	us and it was late.	•
a) are waiting	b) waited	c) were waiting	d) have waited
All said he was living	with his parents at the	e moment but he	to have a flat
Of his man			
a) hone d	b) hopes	c) is hoping	d) has hoped
Naccor sold hold took	bought a car but it wa	sn't insured yet so he	e take me
TOP is all a			
91 as 10	b) couldn't	c) mustn't	d) may
Observe	ed in a dead village as	all the young people	e away to
said that she liv	ed in a dead amage as		
the towns.		c) have drifted	d) had drifted
a) were drifted	b) are drifting		
			(187)

22 She said she a) wanted	to join one of t	the English Court	
•	b) wants	c) had wanted it back ir	d) has wanted two days' time.
a) Wariam said if I a) will bring	b) wants lent her the camera, she b) had brought usuallyhis	c) would bring children out for a wa	d) was bringing lk when he was free
Fridays.		c) has taken	d) taking
	b) took police that someone	to murder	
threatening e-ma a) is trying	alls. b) has tried	c) tries	d) was trying
	and help m	ne at twelve.	
a) would come	b) came	c) had come	d) was coming
	me what I had to do wa		
a) asked	b) said	c) told	d) warned
	until seven or ei		B 14
	· ·	c) has to work	d) was working
	5". I said	arte b	
	b) you like sweets	c) I liked sweets	d) I likes sweets
Which one of the f			
h) She complained	I that her son always ar	rived after midnight.	
c) She complained	that her son had alwa	ys arrived after midn	ight.
d) She complained	that her son was alway	ys arriving after midn	night.
th The tour guide ask	that her son would alv	ways arrive after mid	night.
a) want	ed the tourists if they	to see the	Sphinx.
	b) were wanting	c) wanted	d) have wanted
a) minds	rief if hew	orking on the night s	shifts.
-/ ITTEGES	nas minded	c) was minding	d) minded
a) give	who I the	money to.	
a) give	b) had given	at house a	d) will give
The tourist wanted to a) took	o know now long it	to get to A	Swan by coach
45 My brother asked ho	b) take W much I thought the	c) has taken	d) will take
	D) Hg2 CDSF		d) costs
The reporter asked that a were	re interviewer what he	had missed most wi	han ha
4) WEIS	b) had been	c) is	
188			d) has been

the mother asked her	daughter how she b) gets	()	Inits (9&10)
will get	b) gets ne	on with her	mother-in-law
thad got	b) can get	nouse when the do	or was locked.
TAMONUELEA II I	Dominit.	100 CP1	all make
alcan tell	b) could tell	na had left without to	elling anvone.
The detective wanted	to know how many	C) told	d) will tell
awill know	b) could tell to know how many p b) have known	eoplewl	nat was in the safe.
the asked who	using her comp	c) know	d) knew
H Jile as	b) has been	uter,	•
apis if the	b) has been ere were any letters for	c) had been	d) will be
MI Elle	The second secon	r han	
all didn't know how i	b) told	c) warned	d) complained
a have been	ong I learr	ning English.	
a) liave been	b) had been	c) was	d) can be
MI asked where they	for their sun	nmer holidays.	
a) nave gone	b) go	c) will be going	d) were going
M CILISO BOKE O THE ATTIO	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	th my old car.	
a) was going	b) am going	c) go	d) went
#They wanted to know	if they fo	r a walk if the weath	er was fine.
a) go	b) will go	c) would go	d) may go
	knowl h		
a) what	b) if	c) that	d) why
He asked me what	done if I had	I been a celebrity.	
a) would I have	b) I will have	c) I had	d) I would have
	why they hadn't been	allowed to park the	re the month
a) next	b) then	c) before	d) ago
	know if his soldiers	enough v	veapons.
a) had	b) do have	c) have	d) have been
fi They asked me if I	Tom at the ci	inema the night bef	ore.
al would con	b) had seen	c) saw	d) have seen
i James asleed is	use my phor	ne.	
a) confet asked the It """	b) he can	c) can he	d) he could
He selectione			
asked the student	ts to leave quietly whe	c) have finished	d) would finish
a) finish	b) had finished	the meeting the day	before.
Wanted to know	If Iabout	b) had been inform	med
a) was informed	4	d) would be inforr	ned
c) have been informe	ed		
			_

** Please tell me what you	for a wordding present.	
a) can like b) will lik	e c) are liking	d) would like
66 I would like to know why he	e C) are liking	day.
a) has left b) had lef	the short	d) leaves
67 She asked I had fini	ched with the computer	-1169462
a) if	c) what	d) word
The boy asked me if it was the p	c) what	before here
a) were visiting b) visited	a) have visited	d) bad
The teacher wanted to know w	the mass when	nad visited
a) had caused b) causes 70 The captain asked the avident	io (ne mess when	ne was out.
70 The captain asked the guide wh	c) nas caused	(a) is causing
a) get b) will get	en they to the coa	ast.
a) get b) will get 71 My mother asked Mona where	c) would get	d) had got
71 My mother asked Mona where s	ne the next week	
a) would travel b) will trav	(e) c) travelled	d) had travelled
PA PA	IIV The hight before	
a) I have left b) I had lef	c) did I leave	d) had Heft
73 She asked me how often I	to the cinema.	
a) have gone b) was goi	ng c) has gone	d) went
He asked me when the next example a) will	ntake place.	
T/ T/III	-1 4 1	d) can
asked fier friend what she	at han filter to the	
SHOULD V	vear characteristics	d) wore
all and the same of the same o	ruth. I can't stand lies.	W/ WOIE
a) say	el toll	d) wonder
77 He asked who the ticl	kets for me.	d) wonder
a) he booked b) had he b	coked at the transfer	.00.1
Could you tell me or r	of Ahmed will visit lands	d) had booked
D) Weather	31.7-	
Which one of the following Isn't to	c) if	'd) unless
a) My friend asked me what I had	MCI	
a) My friend asked me what I had b) My friend asked me what I was	wanted to drink after having	J lunch.
b) My friend asked me what I wan	ited to drink after having lun	ch.
c) My friend asked me what I wou	ld want to drink after having	lunch.
- , , mend asks the Must t mant	O drink after having the l	
and asked the when I had finished	my training course. The see	question is
The second secon	1 "\0/b a = -1; -1	finish your ?"
c) "When had you finished your	.7" d) "When were you	
~	-, men were you	a ministred Aonimies
(190)		

Control Exercises

(hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	Aercises
flwould prefer to eat in	
than go to a	estaurant.
a rather than	b) to
ad rather look for a new flat	d) instead of
I'd rather look for a new flatstay	y in this house any longer.
c) rather than	4) (0
prefer watching TV toout.	d) instead of
a) to go	
c) go	b) going
	d) went
to spend my money on	a holiday rather than on a new car.
c) 'd better	D) prefer
prefer brown sugarwhite sugar	d) would prefer
a) than	
c) rather than	b) to d) that
ilike trekking in the mountains, but I prefe	w) triat
a) to lying	b) lie
c) lying	d) than lie
lusually have tea, but today I'd prefer	
a) to have	b) have
c) having	d) to having
I'd rather you here with me and	
a) to stay	b) stay
c) stayed	d) staying
prefer travelling by busby tra	
a) to travel	b) to travelling
c) rather than travel	d) than travel
My wife would like to rent a house in New	York but I would camp in the
desert.	
a) like	b) rather to
c) prefer	d) rather
hisiel	

Open Book General Exercises on Units 9 & 10)

64	thoose the contest at	iswer from a, b, c or	d.	sints a will
-4	to company is look	sing to hire a do-		
	Junreliable	ting to hire a dependa b) conscientious ds in my	able and	accountant
	there were lots of Kill	ds in my	c) social	d) lazy
	neighbouring	* *** * ***	when I was growing (up.
19	Ineighbourhood		b) neighborly	
	The government ha	s announced a/an	d) neighbours	
	ailway network.	mounted d/an	Program	me to modernize the
	a) ambitious	b) grateful		
	adel had to	a language severe	c) graceful	d) sociable
	a) do	a language course t	o improve his English	and get a better job.
	8/00	2 /1011	r) provide	11 1
	# Amany said she woul a) heated	d go and ,	some milk for her cl	hildren.
	a) neated	b) heating	c) heats	d) heat
	6 My Drotner	that he was confid	ent of passing the e	xams.
ı	a) told	b) wondered		d) suggested
ı	7 Our teacher	he used to play for	otball when he was	younger.
1	a) talked	b) says	c) told	d) spoke
ı	The tourist told me he	the way	, so there was no ne	ed to take a map.
I	a) knows	b) has known	c) will know	d) knew
ı	When Albert Einstein v	vas 10, a teacher told	him that he	never be a scientist
ı	a) will	b) is	c) would	d) has
ı	Ola asked what she	do with the	e cracked cup and h	ner mother advised he
ı	to throw it.			
ı	a) would	b) should	c) will	d) can
1	I didn't know	Ahmed worked a	t the bank or at the	post office.
ı	a) weather		c) that	d) whether
4	Afterna	b) who		
Ì	After the lecture all per	ople asked nim what	MI AAGO TIIS COLO	phone number.
	a) his telephone numb	er was	d) is his teleph	one number.
4	c) his telephone numb	er is.		
	The interviewer wanted	to know why!	c) wanted	d) will want
	a) have wanted	6) want	C) Walleco	_,

M Do you know	what this word "Italics"	7	
-1	A. I. on a next	c) had meant	d) would mean
# Each citizen no	eeds to apply the same st	andards to himself as	to others, Apply L
means .	and the children and an		
	al request for a Job	b) put a heavy	oad on
c) use somethir	na	d) study hard	
# Even though sh	ne was in terrible pain, she	e never lost the will to	live. That means th
she had			4
a) a legal docun	nent to give money to oth	ers	
b) success in the	future		
c) enough medic	cine for her illness		
d) a strong deter	rmination		
17 The company	training courses	for its employees.	
a) qualifies	b) provides	c) promotes	d) practises
19 To get a	, you have to make out	standing achievemer	nts.
a) motion		c) promotion	d) permission
1 think that the ne	w skills in this course will	make you more	***********
a) employment	b) employer	c) unemployed	d) amployable
20 Many teenagers th	nink that they have the	to understa	and life properly
ar maturity	b) mortality	c) majority	.45 4 44
21 Dalia said that this	book is difficult to read	but it is	I'll learn a latet
life from it.		and the first storogrammidatunbrotrad) i	. I ii learn a lot abo
a) qualified	b) similar	c) unkind	
2 The newly unemplo	yed will need some	c) unkind	d) worthwhile
a) retraining	b) maturing	·····το go back in	ito the job market
Last week, he	b) maturing	c) thinking	d) rewarding
a) entered	on an evening cou	irse to improve his la	nguage.
	w) entitien	c) omenti- i	
are on want to tilld ""	careers that p	oay well and provide	satisfaction.
	w) lewarding	el errolitor	
WAN is an im	portant official that a c	Overnment sends to	a) mature
	h that country.	or comment sends to	another county
) politician	b) president	a) imposes	
	b. enactif	c) inventor	d) ambassador

she said police officer when she grew up. (Units (9&10) a) wants He told his friends that he ice cream, c) would want has never tried b) is always trying d) wanted The teacher asked the students what a policeman always to catch dangerous a) had done b) does The boss asked me whether I at the meeting next Monday. d) was doing d) had been b) why c) weather d) if

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you cut your skin, you bleed. Everyone knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die. At one time people drank blood to make them strong.

When doctors understood how blood went around inside the body, they tried ways of giving blood to people who needed it. They used a rubber tube to take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it. This is called blood transfusion. The blood went through a rubber tube from the arm of the healthy person into the arm of the sick person.

But there were two problems. First it did not always work. Sometimes people died. Later, doctors found the reason for this. We do not all have the same kind of blood. There was another problem. To give blood of the right kind, the doctors had to find a person of the right blood group. Often they could not find a person in time. If they had a way to keep the blood until someone needed it, they could always have the right kind of blood. In the end, they found a way of keeping blood for a very long time. Now people can give or donate blood every three months, If they want to. The blood is put in bottles or special bags and then kept until someone needs it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why did people drink blood?
 - To make up for losing blood.

- b) To become strong.
- d) To be able to donate blood.

c) To taste it.

How do you think we can solve the problem of finding the right blood donors if

b) Blood transplant.

d) Blood transfusion and donation

The main idea of the passage is "...

The different kinds of blood.

a) We should prevent people from having cuts.

b) We should invent ways to make artificial blood.

c) We should develop the nubber tubes giving blood.

d) We should change the way people donate blood.

c) Blood donation.

who was the letter given to Rassendyll from? How many people did Sapt order to guard Rassendyll? What made the people in Ruritania forgave Rassendyll's occasional bad decisions? the correct answer from a, b, c or d: What wasn't in the room in which Antoinette de Mauban and Rassendyll met? How could Antoinette de Mauban be useful to Sapt and Rassendyll? What would happen if Rassendyll showed the letter to anyone? where would Rassendyll and the writer of the letter meet? Why was Antoinette ready to help Rassendyll? a) Rose.) Three men. a) The summer house, () Antoinette de Mauban. 🎒 Because he spoke German weil. b) Because he was like the King. c) A small iron table. a) A small candle. a) She had information about Michael. d) People would know that Michael kept the king prisoner. c) People would know Rassendyll wasn't the real King. b) Michael would punish Antoinette de Mauban. a) Michael would punish Rassendyll. d Because he threatened them. d) She could kill Michael and his menc) She hated Michael and was ready to deceive him. a) She didn't like to see people being killed. b) She could help the King escape. c) She wanted Rassendyll to be the King. b) She wanted Rassendyll to travel to his family quickly. d) She wanted to save Sapt and Fritz. b) Six men. b) The castle b) The Princess. c) Two men. d) The hunting lodge. d) Johann. d) Two chairs. b) A ladder.

197

- 49 According to the report, why were the people in Strelsau not happy?
 - a) Because they wanted the King to kill the Duke.
 - b) Because they wanted the King to marry the Princess.
 - c) Because they wanted the Duke to marry the Princess.
 - d) Because they wanted to arrange a ball for the King.
- so Why was it difficult for Rassendyll to tell anyone the truth?
 - a) They would think he was mad.
 - b) Michael would kill him.

PART

- c) Sapt and Fritz would be killed.
- d) Because he was pleased to be the King.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

st It is thought that the mobile phone is a double-edged weapon and it depends; each one's use.

ال يعتقد الناس أن المواتف المحمولة سلاح نو حدين ويعتمد هذا على استخدام كل شخص. المغتقف أن المواتف المحمولة سلاح نو حدين ويعتمد على استخدام كل شخص. المنافذ المعض أن المواتف المحمولة سلاح نو حدين ويعتمد على استخدام كل شخص. الما يُعتقد أن المواتف المحمولة سلاح نو حدين ويعتمد هذا على استخدام كل شخص.

Choose the correct English translation:

بعدر الأطباء الناس من التدخين إذ إنه السبب في كثير من ألأمراض المزمنة.

- a) Doctors warn people from smoking, as it is the cause for many chronic diseases
- b) Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic disease
- c) Doctors warn people for smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic diseases.
- d) The Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic disease

Choose the correct answer:

- *Road Safety?
 - a) Keep the standards and guidelines of street security as the main concern during.
 - b) People on foot, cyclists represent half of the passing on streets.
 - c) Traffic rules and laws help you to keep away from street accidents.
 - d) Street accidents have become the main reason for death of the young between 15.

Units 11&12





Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

dear up (v)	ينظف/يوضح/يزيل غموض
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز
concern (n)	اهتمام
creative (adj)	إبداعي/مبتكر
defeat (v) (ed) (n)	يمزم/انهزام
department (n)	قسم/إدارة
enrol/enroll (v) (ed)	يدرج الاسم/يسجل
evil (adj)	شربر
gap (n)	فجوة
lecture (n)	مخاضرة
manage (v) (d)	ينجح/يتمكن
mature (adj)	ناضح/بالغ

non-fiction (adj)	واقعى/غير خيالى
Open University	الجامعة المفتوحة
promotion (n)	ترقية
qualified (adj)	مؤهل/كفير
receptionist (n)	موظف استقبال
redundant (adj)	مقصول من العمل (عاطل)
retrain (v) (ed)	يعيد تدريب
rule (v) (d)	يحكم
Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
transport (v) (ed) (n)	ينقل/نتل
worthwhile (adj)	جدير بالاهتمام
writing (n)	كتابة

Helpful Vocabulary

acquire (v) (d)	يكتسب
actor (n)	ممثل
adviser/advisor (n)	ناصح/مستشار
appreciate (v) (d)	مِعْدُر المِدِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ المُعَادِينِ ا
bottom (n)	Els
Career (n)	مهنة/حياة عملية
cave (n)	population and the same offer and remaining
challenge (v) (d) (n)	ينسى/ تحد

character (n)	شخصية
colleague (n)	زمیل عمل
college (n)	צווַג
come round (v)	يزور
confusing (adj)	مربك
constant (adj)	دائم/متواصل
corridor (n)	ممر اممشی
course (n)	مقزر دراسی

PART 1

degree (n)	لرجة علمية	missing (adj)	***
detective (n)	مخبر/ضابط مباحث	moral (n)	يزى ليرس لخلاقي
discuss (v) (ed)	يناقش	mysterious (adj)	viana
distance learning (n)	التعلم عن بعد	part-time (adj)	يز، من الوقت
educational (adj)	تعليمى	position (n)	والميعة اعركز
equipment (n)	معدات	possessions (n)	<u> </u>
essential (adj)	متروري	primary (adj)	بشائى
extra (adj)	زائد/إضافي	provide (v) (d)	يزود ليمد
fence (n)	nec	referee (n)	مغم
finance (n)	مالية	require (v) (d)	بملامت
free (adj)	حر	retire (v) (d)	- अवस्ति
frightened (adj)	مرعوب	reward (v) (ed) (n)	<u>يانئ/مكافأة</u>
full-time (adj)	كامل الوقث	rewarding (adj)	
go back (v)	پرجع	satisfied (adj)	مجزٍ امرضِ
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج <i>ا</i> خريج	sensible (adj)	ا قانع/راض د دارا دری
grow up (v)	ا ينموايكبر	similar (adj)	ا شفق <i>احکیم</i>
grown up (n)	بالغاراشد	stand for (v)	متشابه
ideal (adj)	مثالی		يمثل
imaginary (adj)	* * -	suitable (adj)	ا مناسب
impressive (adj)	خيالی	summary (n)	ملخص
individual (n) (adj)	مؤثر مؤثر	text (n)	نفن
informal (adj)	شخص/فرد/فردی	trouble (n)	استعب
	غير رسعي	unusual (adj)	فيز معتاد
intervals (n)	مُواصل/فَتَرات فَاصلة	upset (v) (adj)	ازعم/منزعج
leave behind (v)	يخلف/يثرك خلفه	warning (n)	تننير
lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة	working life (n)	
master's degree (n)	مرجة العليستير	+ j ine (ii)	لحباة العملية
metal bar (n)	قضيب معننى	wrinkle (n)	نجيد افي وجه شخص كبير السن)
_		F.	570

Phrases, Expressions & Idioms

نی ای سن	at any age
على مُتراث	atintervals
ملتحق بمقرر دراسي	(be) on a course
بنماية	by the end of
يدرس مقررًا جامعيًـا	do a degree course
يشعر بالاهتمام بشأن	feel concern for
وظيفة ذات وقت كامل	full-time job
يلتحق بالجامعة	get into a university
يلقى محاضرات	give lectures
يعود للتعليم	go back to education
لديه مؤهلات في	have qualifications for
لديه الفرصة لكي	have the chance to

- 1000	
have the same kind	to a life to
made Into a film	لديه نفس النوع من
	متحول لفيلم
make up his mind	يقرز
miss opportunities	تفوته الفرص
out of interest	
	بدائع من الاهتمام
part-time job	وظيفة ذات وقت جزئى
progress through life	يتقدم خلال الحياة
take up seem to the	
take up opportunities	يستفيد من الفرص
travel into space	يسافر للقضاء
without a break	بدون راحة/توقف
work on a project	يعمل على انجاز مشروع

Prepositions

concentrate on	يركز على	look round	يطوف/يتجول
concern for/about	اهتمام بشأن	manage to	ينجح/يتمكن أن
enroll on/for/in	المستول/إيدوج في	member of	عضو/فرد من
free from	حر/خالٍ من	provide for	يوفر اـ
9ap in	فجوة في	study at	يدرس في
goround	march management of march march and restrements	transport to	ينقل إلى
help with/by	يساعد بخصوص	travel through	يسافر عبر
hope for	يامل في	workfor	يعمل لدى



Derivatives

Adjective

	Mark	No	oun	, A	nlective
,	Verb		اثير	effective	الرانخال المالية
affect	ۇگر على 				
challenge	تحدى	challenge	حدٍ	the an initial or 2 did to down All	
create	خل <i>ق ایبدع</i>	creativity	بداع/ابتكار	creative	راعی امیتکر
enroli/enro	درج الاسم/يسجل	enrolment	ىراج الاسم/تسجيل	par de rais en emissan e	0 0 de ma
explain	شرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	نسز
express	بعبرعن	expression	تعبير	expressive	JH.
finance	بمول	finance	المالية	financial	
freeze	<u>جمدایتجمد</u>	freezing	تجميد	frozen	منا المعادلة
graduate	يتذرج	graduation	بر بنه مستسمه مهمه		
idealise	يجعله مثاليًا	ideallsm	المثالية	ideal	
manage	ينير	management	ادارة	managerial	
mature	ينضع	maturity	بلوغ/تضج/إدراك	mature	<u>ul</u>
personify	يشخص	personification			اضح/بالغ
persuade	يقنع	persuasion		in many til av men gellem menskelme i statete et strelljer i strikter i strikterior i beljemen i stellem et st	Maring State of States of States and States
promote	يرقى	promotion	H4	persuasive	Comm. 1950-1900 - 1950-1900-1900-1900
qualify	يثلمل	qualification	ترقية	promotional	ترويجي
		redundancy		qualified	مؤهل/كفؤ
relax			فمل عن العمل	redundant	مقصول من العمل
CIOX	يسترخي	relaxation		relaxed	مسترخ/مرتاح
etire	عدائت	retirement		elaxing	مريح
		similarity	-	etired	مثقاعب
oil			the same of the sa	imilar	متشابه
atisfy		atisfaction	کلدح/سائر بصعر		
2)	C-20-32 3	ausiaction	وضا/قناعة	atisfied	قانع/رلض

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym Langue	intonyms	
	بستن		Antony	المضاد m
cquire		obtain	fall	
onstant	دائم/متواصل	ceaseless	fail	فشل
reative	إبداعي/مبتكر	imaginative	ceasing	توقف
_{nroll/enrol}	يدرج الاسم/يسجل	register	uncreative	ير مبدع
			ignore	نجاهل
pert	خبير	professional	amateur	عاو
oplain	يفسر	illustrate	conceal	ء خفی
deal	مثالي	perfect	common	شائع
ntervals	فواصل/فترات فاصلة	interruptions	continuation	ستمراز
mature	ناضج/بالغ	grown-up	immature	فير ناضج
persuade	ونقي	convince	discourage	بثبط العزيمة
promotion	ترقية	advancement	deterioration	ئىمور
qualified	مؤهل/كةؤ	proficient	inefficient	
shape	and the second second section is	Subseq School and the species of the second section of the second		غير كفء
Name and Address of the	شکل	form	difference	اختلاف
^{si} milar	متشابه	alike	different	مختلف
^{state} ment	بيان	announcement	question	استجواب
^{Unfortunately}	لسوم الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
Worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام	beneficial	useless	يلا فائدة "

Important Language Notes

Make up

make up ▶ Women make up 40 percent of the workforce in this factory.

make up They made up a little poem and wrote it in the card.

make up for

I don't eat breakfast but I make up for it at lunch. make up to

زنفص

The new clerk is making up to the manager - it's quite not fair. make up one's mind

بننذ قرازا

Many young people find it difficult to make up their mind about joining a certain college.

Employ



يننيم الفعل (employ) بمعنى يوظف ومع إضافة بادئة أو لاحقة قد يتغير المعنى مثل:

employable (adi)

unemployed (adj) صالح للتوظيف

employee (n)

unemployable (adj) موظف

رتابل للتوظيف

employer (n)

unemployment (n) صاحب العمل

114

employment (n)

توظيف

Phrasal verbs with "come"

شِع النعل (come) بعض حروف الجر لتعطى معنى مختلفًا عن المعنى الأصلى للفعل:

come about come around/round (يحسن) إلمصادفة غالبنا come along come by يصل come back come in come together

بعرعلی) یزور بسرعة

come out

فَلَالِمِسر (كتابــًا/حريدة) /تتزال البقعة

come through یدځل/یصل

بتجعع يمر ب (يقابل شخصـًا/يجد شيلًا)

come up with

بتم أيقدم فكرة

come across

Additional Language Notes



,	_a cquire	يكتسب ايحرز أيحوز	The college acquired a reputation for very high standards.
	require	بنطلب	Most houseplants require regular watering.
	_{inquire}	يستقسر	positions available
1	retire	يتقاعد/يعتزل (العمل)	He was forced to retire early because of poor health.
	resign	يستقيل من عمله	▶ She resigned from the government last week.
Á	appreciate او محضا)	يقدُر (يعتبره شيئًا جيدًا	We appreciate that caring for children is an important job.
	estimate (4.	يقتر (يقيّم كمية أو عد	It's difficult to estimate the cost of the repairs to the damaged building.
P	imaginary	خيالي (غير واقعي)	A lonely child sometimes creates an imaginary friend to play with.
	imaginative		▶ They suggested some very imaginative ways of reducing costs.
Î	present	يقىم (شيئًا)	He presented the report to his colleagues at the meeting.
		١- يقدم (شخصًا)	▶ I would like to introduce you to my friend Martin.
	introduce	۲- یقدم فکرة أو اکتشاف جدید	▶ The store have introduced a new type of food for children.
8	strange	۔ ۔۔۔۔۔۔ غریب	When you arrive in a new country, everything seems strange.
	foreign	۔ جنبے	➤ Spain was the first foreign country I had visited.
5	discussion		▶ We need to have a discussion about your school
	debate	مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن ش	Naguib Maillouz 3
			-smuch debate.

مناظرة لجدال غالبنا أطراف الجعال مختلفين

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(Key Vocabulary			- In Fav
• We really need		or our difficult problem	s in Egypt,
a) creative	b) ordinary	c) strange	ar, irriaginary
2 In the movie, the	hero has to rescue th	e world from a/an	scientist
a) devil	b) evil	c) pure	d) imaginative
Most of the peop	ole in my university o	group are in their twer	nties, but there are a
three			
a) pure	b) impure	c) mature	d) secure
I've always wante	d to paint; that's why	I'veon an a	art course.
a) enrolled	b) entitled	c) entered	d) employed
My uncle is a prof		at Cairo Uni	
a) division		c) part	
The company	meat across t	he country in refrigera	ted containers.
a) transmits	b) transfers	c) transports	d) transplants
She was made	a year ago ai	nd hasn't found any we	ork over since
a/ reduction [1]	D) nomeless	c) unoducated	
mit signer Marife for	be a teacher, the hel	eves teaching is - /-	
	D Hewaldian	A Compatibility of the Compati	
3	HIELDEDUKE (AN NO 3	Market Comments	
	WI KIIPANINAIACE	and the same of th	ience.
	rerueri infoudh a	in the well	d) useless
-/ ////	DI DEICK	and the second s	
Although the curre	nt was strong. I	c) plant to swim to the	d) gap
a) succeeded	b) managed	to swim to the	other bank.
The professor had t	O cancel his last	c) refused	d) persisted
a) report	b) play	c) refused because he tra	velled abroad.
The policemen work	ed hard for a wook soul	c) lecture	d) party
a) clear	b) clean	ng toup the	mystery of the murd
I have always liked t	O read	c) solve	d) push
a) fictional	b) non-fletion	c) solve ooks. I'm not fond of st	ories.
	b) non-fiction	c) fairy	d) angel
			961

Jother asked me to	turn off the TV and	-	Unite (11040)
al pass	turn off the TV and b) apply		
the quides are .	b) pleased	c) depend into the mountains	nework.
agraded	b) pleased	into the mountains	d) concentrate
manharaohs who	b) ruled	c) qualified	during safari trips.
reantured	b) ruled	ypt usually built gro	d) rewarded
gree is a real	thatel	c) freed anda will soon bose	temples and statues.
A THEIR IS OF THE TANK	that the giant p b) excitement	anda will soon beco	d) damaged
1) Collection	b) excitement incle's to n	c) appeal	the extinct.
We celebrated our C	incle's to n	nanager with a small	d) admiration
a) graduation	b) award	c) promotion	party,
	A A TOUR LOCALITY WE	re	torday's some
a) lost	b) retrained	c) awarded	d) defeated
(Helpful Vocabulary 8	Languago Notes		a) deleated
# Mr Soliman is the	sort of teach	ner – direct, friendly	and informal
a) ideal	b) undull	c) idle	d) idol
#learning	is a method of study	that involves workin	g at home and sending
your work to your to	eacher.		3
	b) Distance	c) Far away	d) Open
	working in the nation	-	•
a) birth	b) innovation	c) graduation	
The police offered	a/an for in	formation that wou	ld lead to the arrest of
the thieves.			
a) truce	b) present	c) award	d) reward
* It would have been	more to sa	ve the money than to	spend it all on clothes.
a) sensible	b) sensitive	c) senseless	d) sense
New businesses will	I a lot of p	eople in the city.	
a) docture.	Exampley	c) enjoy	d) expand
This test	b) employ les opportunities to	new skills.	
		C) 0 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	
a) require	b) inquire the story is that honest	ty is always the best	policy.
of t	the story is that nones	c) summary	d) introduction
a) moral	b) brief en searching the coun	tryside for the	girl.
Police have be	en searching the court	c) losing	d) missing
a) winning	b) affecting		207

etching	TV programmes	-	Units (11&12) It Important means of
arning this year.		fill be one of the mos	* I = - · · ·
nachen Spielberg	is an filmr b) imaginary	c) quiz	d) educational
Limaginative	b) imaginary	who made man	V science fiction films
andidates par	Ticipated in several	ranecting	d) impressed
discussions	ticipated in several b) debates	before the	election was held.
Harris still very	b) debatesabout her u	c) views	d) matches
alpleased	b) satisfied	ncle's accident.	
The criminal was ar	b) satisfied rested by clever	c) upset	d) arrogant
attien't advisable to	b) conductors wear	c) researchers	d) detectives
a) formal	b) luxurious	s for a job interview.	d) detectives fou'd better wear a suit.
	b) luxurious		
(Expressions, Idiom	s, Prepositions, Deriva	atives, Synonyms & Ar	ntonyms
	eallyl ke		
a) confuse	b) confused	c) confusing	d) confusion
The art gallery has	s ancolle	ection of modern pai	ntings that are popular
today.			J 7
a) impress	b) impressed	c) impressive	d) impression
			learn things he couldn't,
earlier in his life.	•		
a) give	b) make	c) do	d) take
*The young couple	have already made u	p their ab	out where to go for their
honeymoon.		-	
al bact.	b) heads	c) eyes	d) minds
It is advisable that	the second neo	ple that self-control i	s a sign of
	44.4	CHINGLAICH	•
Nahla wante to tro	the la	test developments in	information technology. d) up with
a) with	ep	c) up	a) up with
	D) on	rporation with 140,00)0worldwide. d) employment
a) em -1	or a multi-national co b) employees	c) employers	d) employment
employs	b) employees otfor you	ng children with the	d) suitable
al mins are no) Commence of the commence of	c) unsultable	d) suitable
a) suiting		***************************************	509

PART			
i with	w skills I am learning at C	ollege will make me m	ore
■ I hope the net	w skills Lam learning at C	b) unemployed	
a) employable	2	d) employee	
c) employer	employer will give me s		get Quid
	employer will give the	b) promotional	1-101
a) promote		d) affected	
c) promoted	to the encentary material		
	sing" is an antonym to th	c) hidden	d) pure
a) constant	b) mysterious		•
	beneficial" is a synonym		menhanners secess &
a) worthless		b) worthwhile	
c) accepted		d) hopeful	
The word 'ineff	icient" can be the oppo	site of the adjective	
a) acquainted		b) quarrelled	
c) qualified		d) disqualified	
The adjective "p	erfect" is similar in mea	ning to the adjective .	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
a) idle	b) uncertain	c) infected	d) ideal
We arrived early	at the theatre and spen	t a few minutes looki	ng
a) back	b) around	c) after	d) up
We are looking f	or graduates who		alifications in method
science.		academic qu	aurications in maths
a) have	b) give	a) 1	
The French profes		c) award	d) reward
a) takes	sorlecture		e at the new university
	b) delivers	c) gives	d) speaks
hank mark!	many different branche	s have come	to try to solve 的
problems.			
a) back	b) forward	c) by	d) together
If you're not	with our product	. Vou can det vour m.	d) together
The product is gua	ranteed to be free	e) suggited	d) dissatisfied
a) from	b) with		
210		c) against	d) at
The second secon			

Advanced & Open General Ex

thinking we be	na, b, cord
thinking, we ha	IVe decided
alrich	ive decided to refuse the company's offer.
. 431016	- Table
of three matches remaining	d) immature I, there are six teams in the race.
aldevelopment	teams in the
promotion	recommendation
author edited the news re	port and rom announcement
statements.	eport and removed anyinformation or
a) redundant	
an lead to a re-	b) employed
c) applied	d) promoted
The Ministry of Education end	courages teaching methods that
Milliovative and dacidi ways	
a) waste	b) employ
c) capture	d) imply
Is this orange juice fresh or is	it made from?
a) mixture	b) combination
c) concentrate	d) syrup
The two friends met again aft	ter aof ten years as they both travelled
abroad.	
a) break	b) gap
c) crack	d) hole
My father is always	me about the way I dress.
a) lecturing	p) relieving
	d) graduating
The new film the	spectators back to the historical era of Salah Eddin.
a) dates	
	d) transmits
c) transports	t socialb) good
overty is one of the greates	b) good
a) benefits	d) evils
^{c)} procedures	to more martner's
Procedures The sales side of our factory	Is my partite 5 b) excitement
^{d)} concern	d) rate
C) Drogs	6

Reported Speech الحلام المنقول (غير المباشرا

Reported Imperatives, suggestions and advice

(الأمر والاقتراع والنصيحة)

١- يتنوع مُعل القول مِي الجملة الأمرية بين :

(أ) أفعال يتبعما المفعول ثم .to (not to) + inf وهم:

		-		, 02	120
advise	ينصح	help	عداسي	teach	يعلم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجه/ يعلم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجع	invite	релд	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	order	يامر	warn	ايحثر

- "Open your books."
- The teacher told/asked/ordered us to open our books.
- ·"If I were you, I'd take your coat."
- My mother advised me to take my coat.
- Don't waste time."
- My father advised me not to waste time.
- 'Study science at university."
- Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university. (ب) أفعال يتبعما المفعول ثم v-ing أو that + subject + infinitive without to وهم:
- یُرْکی ایٹومیں ہِ۔ recommend اینفترح Suggest
- 'Do Exercise 2 again."
- Leila suggested doing/that I do Exercise 2 again.
- *You should revise quietly."
- My friend recommended revising/that I revise quietly. ؟- لا نجد علامات تنصيص في الجملة الأ<mark>مرية المحولة ونريطما بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.</mark> ١- إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا فلا يوجد إلا المصدر الذي بعد 10 والدالات الخاصة

بيام تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما في النوعين: الخبري والاستفعامي. والثرجى باستخدام أقعال مثل:

يتأمتر اينطائب order ريعترض offer ريحت urge ,يستعطف beg

- "Please, forgive me!" she said.
- She begged me to forgive her. ي ينايم to + inf. بعد wonder what/where/how إذا كان القاعل قبل فعل القول هو نفس القاعل الذي قبل فمعدر في الجملة التي بين الأقواس.
- ▶ He asked himself, "Where shall I go?"
- He wondered where to go.

دناجا، شخص بعد recommend مباشرة نستخدم to + inf.

▶ He recommended the workers to finish the task and then have a break.

واتي بمعنى يرشح شخصًا أو شيئًا لشخص وتأخذ to + inf.

I recommend you "Animal farm" to read or watch.

ا، بائي بعد الفعل warn أما .to + inf أو .not to + inf حسب المعثى .

- My father always warns me not to walk home alone.
- ▶ Good teachers warn their students to avoid smoking.

ا- الفلان agree/refuse يأتي بعدهما .to + inf إذا كان الفاعل داخل علامات التنصيص يعود على القائل نفسه. "Yes, I'll do it." I said.

I agreed to do it.

"No, I won't help him."

I refused to help him.

إما إذا كان الفاعل مختلفًا مع agree نستخدم التحويل العلاقُ للجملة الخبرية ولا تستخدم that مع refuse. "Yes, she is angry." I said.

I agreed that she was very angry.

اله يمكن حدق that بعد suggest ويبقى الفاعل والمصدر كما هما:

I suggest we have dinner first, and then watch the film.

admit/advise/insist/threaten/warn/remind بعد that + clause بعد استخدام

- He insisted that I (should) work on Friday.
- The teacher advised us that we should study at least 5 hours a day.

Unit (12)

Modal verbs of necessity, lack of necessity and prohibition

2. Lack of necessity

3. Prohibition



Necessity

الضرورة

Present/ Future		Past			
_{have} to				Future	
has to	<u>ئ</u> خ	had to	>		2
must	essar to + ii		necessary to + inf.	will have to	necessal to + inf.
have got to	It's necessary for to + inf.		was nec		it will be necessary for to + inf.
has got to	for R	no past	for for		t will for
need/ needs to		needed to		will need to	

Have to/has to

- نستخدم have to/has to بمعنى يجب أن/لزامنا عندما لا يكون لدينا اختيار فعل شيء.
- You have to show your passport when you leave the country.
 - نستخدم must بمعنى يجب أن للتعبير عن المشاعر القوية والنصيحة القوية والدعوة الحارة.

Must

	1000	
strong advice	نصيحة قوية	You must wash your hands before you eat.
a warm invitation	دعوة حارة	You must come and see us at the weekend.
the a desired now details		We mustn't forget that tourism is important.
a strong reminder		Drivers must stop when the light is red.
gams .	هوانين	- العاض من had to se have to/has to/must مع العاض من

had بمعنى شيء كان ضروريًّا في العاضي وتم فعله.

*We had to take the bus to school because my father's car was not working.



Present		Past			Future	7
don't have to + inf. doesn't have to + inf.	necessary to + inf.	didn't have to + inf. الم یکن ضروریًا نعل شیء فتم نفعله. needn't have + P.P.	cessar	+ inf.	won't have to	cessary
needn t + inf. (to پدون) den t doesn't need to + inf.	It isn't ne	ام یکن ضروریا فعل شیء ولکن تم فعله. didn't need to + inf.	sn't	for to	won't need to	won't be ne
ورة. She isn't late for school so al	عدم الضرو	don't/doesn't للتعبير عن	have	e t	0/pood=4	=

· She isn't late for school so she doesn't have to/needn't hurry.

، لناضي من عدم الضرورة هو didn't have to أو needn't have + P.P. ولكن مثاك اختلافًا في المعني:

لم یکن ضروریا فلم أفعل .didn't have to + inf

needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا ولكني فعلت

• I didn't have to go to school on Friday as it was a holiday.

-لم اضطر إلى الدُهاب إلى المدرسة يوم الجمعة لأنه كان إجازة.

· I needn't have taken a taxi as it wasn't far, but I did.

-لم يكن ضروريًا أن أحْدُ تاكسي لأنها لم تكن بعيدة ولكني فعلت.

Prohibitio	n
------------	---

المِنْعُ / الْحَظْرِ / التَّحَرِيْمِ

lt's		الكتبة (الحصد ال
162	banned/forbidden/prohibited/not allowed	
Parking is	banned / forbidden / prohibited / not allowed	to park here.
	not allowed	here.

'نستخدم :mustn't + inf للتعبير عن المتع والحظر.

- · You mustn't (can't) park here: it is not allowed.
- You aren't allowed to park here.
- · You are forbidden from parking here.

yodal verbs of necessity, prohibition, lack of necessity, advice, regret and deduction:

Present/future

have to/has to/must

- -1 have to put petrol in the car.
- -I must visit my uncle.

158

Necessity Obligation

Lack of Necessity

Prohibition

- -I must go on a diet. (I say so)
- I have to go on a diet. (the doctor says so)
- You must visit me. (warm invitation)
- You must obey your parents. (strong advice)
- -We mustn't forget our duties. (reminder)
- Drivers must hold valid licences. (law)

Past

had to

- I had to buy a new jacket.
- He had to find a large flat last month.
 - تعبر had to عن الضرورة التي تم فعلها.

don't have to/doesn't have to/needn't

- Ali doesn't have to find another job.
- -We don't have to stay up late.
- He needn't borrow my dictionary.

didn't have to needn't have + P.P.

- نم اشتری .l didn't have to buy a car لم اشتری
- l needn't have bought a car. اشتریت

be not allowed to/mustn't/can't

- -We aren't allowed to park here.
- -We mustn't (can't) park here.

be not allowed to/couldn't

- -They couldn't smoke there.
- They weren't allowed to

مراجعة سريعة للنقاط الهامة:

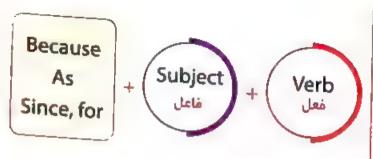
- ١- نستخدم have to/has to بمعنى يجب أن/ لزاما عندما لا يكون لدينا اختيار فعل شيء.
- ٣٠٠ نستخدم must بمعنى يجب أن للتعبير عن المشاعر القوية والنميحة القوية والدعوة الحارة.
- ٣- الماضي من have to/has to/must هو had to بمعنى شيء كان طروريًا في العلضي وتم فعله. ٤- نستندم .don't/doesn't have to/needn't + inf للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة،
 - ه- نستخدم didn't have to عن شيء لم يكن ضروريًّا فلم نفعله.
 - ۳- نستخدم needn't have + p.p من شيء لم يكن شرورياً ولكن فعلناهـ
 - ٧- نستخدم .can't/mustn't + inf للتعبير عن المنع والحظر

Linking words (Conjunctions)

Pinlo Inte



Cause



Because of On account of بتتجد As a result of Owing to Due to Thanks to खं Through

- Noun Adj.+ Noun
- Because (As/Since) he is clever, he always comes first.
- Because of his cleverness (Being clever), he always comes first.

لكونه/لكونها Being + Adj. Being polite, his teachers respect and love him.

دة (بعلة + Because of/Due to the fact that

▶ Because of the fact that he made mistakes, he was punished.



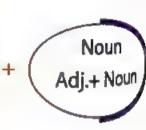
Contrast

أررات ريط التشاقض

Although Though Even though Even if



Despite In spite of For all Regardless of



- Although (Though) he is strong, he can't carry the bag.
- Despite (In spite of) his strength (Being strong), he can't carry the bag.



Verb فعل

, but However, however, , yet.





He is strong, but (. However,/, however,) he can't carry the bag.

ملحوظة:

Although our team played badly, they won the match, يمكن استخدام although/despite في أول الجملة أو وسطما. Our team won the match although they played badly.

In spite of the fact that he ran fast, he couldn't win the race. العظ: (بعلة + In spite of/Despite the fact that + العظاء (بعلة +

However land	+	A the codign't W	vin the	e race.		
Whatever Inco	+	Adj./Adv.	+	فاعل	+	فعل
کل صفة حسب معناها ,Adj	+	Noun	+	فاعل	+	فعل
However strong he is, he	1 ' 1	as	+	فاعل	+	شعل

- However strong he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Strong as he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever strength he has, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever you do, I'll forgive you.

Addition

أدوات ربط الإضافة

				The second secon		أدوات ربط الإضافة
In addition to As well as Besides		بالإضافة إلى	+	·····9	eject +	Verb معل
In addition to As well as Besides		studying h	er less	ons, Mona help	oed her	mother.
فاعل	مُعل	مفعول		well as	P	مفعول ثان/اس
Osama	plays	football	in a	ddition to and		tennis.
. July		-11	+	فاعل ثان	+	فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
, Uelà +		well as	والمناوي المناوي	his friends		is a doctor.
Omar	as	well as	l			ليس فقط ولكن أيضًا

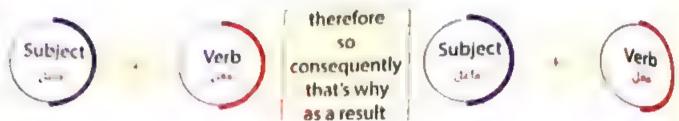
Not only but also.

Not only Ahmed but also his friends are going to the party. الأحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

Not only did Manal do her homework but also she helped her mother. لأحظ أن الفعل يأتي في صيفة الاستقمام



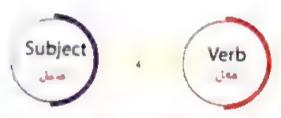




- Our team played badly, so therefore they lost the match.
- Forests are being destroyed. As a result a lot of animals are losing their homes.



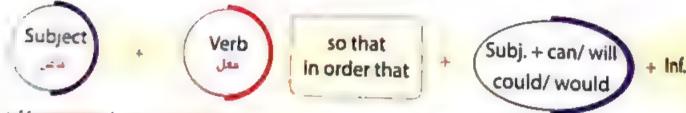
أروات ربط الهدف/الغرش



in order to to so as to



▶ He studies hard to so as to in order to get high marks.



- He studies hard so that/in order that he can get high marks.
- He studied hard so that/in order that he could get high marks.



> He went to the doctor's for a check-up.

تُحَدُّ إِنَا يُستَخْدِم for +v.ing لِلتَعبِيرِ عِنَ القَرِضَ العلمِ مِن الشِّيءِ ولوس لملنا يِنْصُ الشِّفِي ا

- We use a pen for writing. I use this brush for washing the dishes. Or (to wash)
- I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

في النفي نستخيم so as not to/in order not to He put his keys in his briefcase in order not to lose them.

Grammar EXercises)

the correct a	Ramy and	Ses.	
Mose her	Ramy any mone b) lending	d;	
113dvised	b) lending I him b) to put	y as he never paid by	
mother tolo	him	c) not to lend	ebts.
Harry to put	b) to put	things in his pockets	d) that she lends
The teacher	the student	c) that he put	
the margin.	the students to re	ead the questions tude	d) putting
alwarned	b) roses	1-43110112 (MICE	and not to write
41792111	777660111111111111111111111111111111111		
He warned the boy			d) suggested
a) have been	b) had been ged me for b) to apply	c) will be	ed,
My father encoura	ged me for	the job as it would ive	d) would be
	*		
the me	to open a bank accour	It to save money for th	a the a of a and
Mediaca	of reconnitional	C) Warned	d) suggested
# Ke asked me .	my case as it wa	s blocking the door	d) suggested
a) moving	b) where I move	c) why to move	d) to move
The policeman wa	rned the drivers	the high way as t	here was going to be
astorm.		,,,,,,,, .	and may going to bu
a) not to avoid	b) avoiding	c) to avoid	d) that avoid
	nt asked the passenge		
takeoff.	itt dakte tite passongs		,
a) why	b) to	c) that	d) if
The doctor warmen	d memore		3.
	a me	c) take	d) not to take
a) to take	b) taking m to book a table at th	e restaurant that night	
a) suggested	b) inquired by to lunch that day but	Samy refused Wit	h him as he was busy.
* omar invited Sam	y to lunch that day but	c) go	d) that to go
a) to go	b) going hat Ahmedto a	dentist before his toot	hache got any worse.
* recommended to	hat Ahmed to a	c) had gone	d) to go
Almod J.	my co	c) had used	d) having used
a) using	b) hadn't used to the cinema	explaining that they	hadn't seen a film for
He Suggested	to the cinema	Cybia	**
ייטוונתק	(4) 61 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	c) that I had gone	d) go
a) to go	b) going		221)
30	מוש		

washers	warn their students b) to be avoided	smoking,	d) to avoid
Good teachers	b) to be avoided	c) not to avoid	
11000	dinner first, and the	en watch the film.	d) not having
Laugest	b) Ali have	c) having	d) not liber
a) Ali has	D) All Have	their best in the test.	
The teacher ask	ced the class		d) doing
The leas	b) not to do	c) do	
alto do	ou "this novel"		d) to be read
alto do	b) reading	c) to read	
a) not to read	li travelied abroad." He ag abroad	reed abro	
	Il travelled abroduction	b) that Ali had tra	velled
Ali to traver o	10,000	II A A A Bir travelili	D
c) that Ali to tra	ays encourages	t and the nest the hes	st marks.
Citiot ther alw	avs encourages	hard to get the be-	d) to studying
My teacher div	b) to study	c) that we study	۵, ۱۵ -
a) studying	6-Newing is untrue?		
Which one of the	ne following is untrue?	ean the flat.	
	AAPTAA IIIAL WE JIIOWY -	the flat	
A A A A A A A STATE OF STATE	idested we should cicam		
4	worked We cledit title now		
c) My sister sug	gested that we cleaning	the flat.	
d) My sister sug	gested that desses The	v're dean.	
you .	wash those glasses. The	c) needn't	d) must
a) mustn't	b) have to	twented to see the t	acing results.
bu bu	b) have to y a newspaper yesterday	, I Wanted to see the	d) didn't have to
Du.	b) must	c) have to	. tile
a) had to	wear your best clothes.	ou can wear what yo	u like.
You	Wear your best electric	c) mustn't	d) needn't
a) had to	b) have to	ou'll get them dirty.	
You	wear your best clothes.	c) didn't have to	d) had to
al marcha/t	b) needn't	c) didn't have to	C , 110 - 1
a) mustn't	go to the bank, He ha	sn't got any money.	and the language
Youssif	go to the barrer	c) needn't	d) doesn't have to
A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	tal mat ili	_	
You	drop those glasses. They	Il Dienw	d) don't have to
a) mucta/t	b) needn't	c) have to	
a) mustri t	b) needn t make less noise. l'i	n trying to concentra	ite.
You really		c) must	d) had to
a) mustn't	b) have to park here.	ril just go and read th	nat notice.
think you	pay to park nere-	a) had to	d) have to
Short at the factor of the	_ Interest in the second secon		w/ interes
The Cart Have II	ee. Wepay fo	r it.	
ine rood was fre	ee. vveto and to	c) mustn't	d) can't
a) don't need to	b) didn't need to		
			622

Total 1		We don't want to be la	te.
9 You really	hurry up, Tamer.	We don't want	d) had to
a) must	b) don't have to	c) needn't because we had plenty	of food.
## We	go to the supermarket	c) didn't need to	d) have to
a) had to			
Service was in	b) must cluded in the bill, so you .	b) needn't have ti	bbeq
a) had to tip		D) HEEMILE HOLD IN	PP
c) didn't have	to tip	d) don't have to ti	þ
Why does Ana	s study every	evening?	4. 1
a) need	b) has to	c) had to	d) have to
# I'm sorry I coul	dn't come yesterday. 1	work late.	
	b) have to	c) must	d) should
We've got plen	ty of time. We	hurry.	
a) must	b) have to		d) needn't
se You	come and visit us the ne	ext time you come to C	airo.
a) have to		c) had to	
57 J ge	t up early tomorrow. I'm	going away and my tra	in leaves at 7:30
a) needn't	b) had to	c) will have to	d) need
58 You	eat so much chocolate.	vou'll be sick	dyffeed
a) mustn't	b) don't have to	c) needn't	all alouds
My grandfather	work six day	S a Wook whom he	d) don't need
a) 1193 fO	p) needn't	e) docon/t have a	young.
The state of the s	COTTOTICION, COTT		
a) golf Hiceff	D) ((On't have to	-N -12-1 (c.)	
a) didn't have to	k this morning. There w b) don't have to	as no queue, so]	wait.
62 We	ck the car. It's safe here.	c) don't need	d) need to
a) mustn't	hi don't nood to		
We h	b) don't need to	c) shouldn't	d) can't
a) mustn't	Jy souvenirs for our frier b) needp't	nds while we're here.	•
When you arrive i	b) needn't	c) must	d) have to
a) don't need to	n another country, you . b) have to	show your	Dassport
Since his car was t	b) have to	c) haven't	passport,
a) must	peing repaired, he	CO to Alexandra	d) mustn't
S You	b) mustn't	c) needn't	by train.
a) don't have to	an athlete to go snork	eling.	d) had to
7 Drivers	b) mustn't	c) can't he	
a) need to	carry a valid driving lic	ence when one	d) shouldn't
- 1 11 CEU (O	b) mustn't " carry a valid driving lic b) doesn't need to	c) have to	motor vehicle.
(224)		17.1012 (0	d) must

		(U	nits (11&12)
You smo	ke inside the building.	Smoking is forbidde	n Indoors
a) Could	D) Carri	E) can	4 4 44
We couldn't repair th	ne car ourselves. We	taka it to a	d) couldn't
A) LIGAC 10	u) nad to	C) Boodn's	garage.
cut the	grass myself. My broth	er did ir	a) didn't nave to
a) had to		b) don't have to	
c) needn't have		d) didn't have to	
As it is absolute nece	essity, the doctor says t	hat I eye	rcise every day
a) had to	b) have to	c) should	d) can
l carry th	is bag? It seems heavy	and my back hurts.	a, car
a) Must	b) Would	c) Could	d) Might
She start	dieting because she w	ants to lose weight.	
a) need	b) had to		
She start	dieting because her h	usband wants her to	o lose weight.
a) needs	b) has got to	c) had to	d) must
Children under five y	ears oldsv	vim without an adul	t.
a) don't have to	b) are supposed to	c) must not	d) have to
I must tidy up my roc	om but I tic	ly up my sister's roo	m.
a) needn't	b) must		
The girls needn't be h	nome early but they	be home	by midnight.
a) needn't	b) have to	c) don't have to	
It was a national holid	day so all workers		
a) mustn't go		b) had to go	
c) needn't have gone		d) didn't have to g	٥
	he lecturer said as mai		
a) must write		b) had to write	with Course,
c) needn't have writte	en	d) have to write	
Which one of the follo			
a) You shouldn't use	your flash inside the m	nuseum, It's forbidde	en.
b) You mustn't use we	our flash inside the mu	seum, It's forbidder	1.
c) You can't use would	flash inside the museu	ım, İt's forbidden.	
() You can't use your flash inside the museum, It's forbidden. d) You aren't allowed to use your flash inside the museum, it's forbidden.			
- oreitt allowed	to use your most man		THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF TH

Advanced & Open

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: his stupidity that we got into trouble. b) because 1 It was d) as a result al as b) because a) because of d) 50 c) due to Ramy didn't play his iliness. **b**) as a) because d) owing to c) for She was very unhappy, she missed her children. b) owing to a) for d) because of c) due to the bad weather, we cancelled the trip. b) Because a) As d) Owing c) Due to he was injured, he continued to play. a) Despite b) However c) But d) Though 7 She did not get the jobthe fact that she did well in the interview. a) in spite b) in spite of c) despite of d) although a) however b) despite c) in spite d) in spite of fast our car was, we took 5 hours to reach Assuit. a) Whatever b) Although c) However d) As mistakes he made, he wasn't punished. a) However b) Although c) Owing to d) Whatever

a although		
a) aithough	Units (11&12) We've decided to change the flat.	
c) consequently	a necause	
doing her homework, she	d) however	
a) Not only	riciped her mother.	
c) in addition to	b) As well	
The teachers	d) in addition	
a) as well as		
c) as well	b) in addition	
She has got not only a motorbike,	d) but also	
a) as well as		
c) but	b) and	
•	d) but also	
a) as	l've decided to go back to sci	hoo
c) because	b) so	
I went to his office meet h	d) but	
a) so that		
s) so	b) because	
	d) in order to	
lam planning to move house		
a) so	b) so as to	
c) so that	d) because of	
talked to the shy girlshe	would not feel left out.	
a) in order to	b) so as not to	
c) so that	d) because	
A barometer is used meas	uring pressure.	
a) for	b) to	
c) owing to	d) thanks to	
He got up earlymiss the fl	rst bus to the factory.	
a) so as to	b) so as not to	
-1 30 B3 (U		

Open Book General Exercises on Units 11 & 12)

	Choose the correct answ	ver from a, b, c or d:		
	1 The company	training courses for	its employees.	D
	a) qualifies	A A Lilian		d) practises
	2 We all want to find	careers that pa	av well and provide	satisfaction.
	a) employable	h) mature	c) quality	a) rewarding
	3 Adel had to a lar	aguage course to impr	ove his English and	get a better joh
	a) do	b) run	c) provide	a) make
	Dalia said that this boo	_	ut it is	I'll learn a lot abo
	life from it.			
	a) qualified	b) similar	c) worthwhile	d) unkind
	Last week, he	on an evening cour	se to improve his la	nguage.
	a) entitled	b) enrolled	c) entered	d) employed
	5 Egypt is always helpin	g the of		
	countries.			3
	a) development		b) recommendati	on
	c) promotion		d) announcemen	t
	Medhat offered Ashraf a	a cigarette. Ashraf	him and said I	ne didn't smoke.
	a) recommended	b) apologised	c) threatened	d) thanked
1	Police are warning all w	omen in the area	extra care when	going out alone
	a) to take	D) not to take	el takin n	the set of
	The doctor always tells h	ner about h	ner illness as it is ea	silv cured now
	-, 10 11011	DITIOL TO WOTTY	elto be mentelle	all wassing
10	Weeveryone	that the time had be	en changed	u) worrying
	a) iniottlied	b) said	all in automate	an and and
11	I suggestdir	ner and watch the film	n after that	d) asked
	a) naving	b) have	almost	
12	wear a scho	of uniform when two	c) we have	d) to have
	a) don't have to	b) needn't		
13	In England, most school	children	c) had to	d) have to
	w) iicculi (n) can't		
14	You reallywo	ork harder if you want	c) must	d) have to
	a) must	b) mustn't	to pass the examin	ation.

b) mustn't

c) needn't

d) shouldn't

	_				
		The car park is f	ree; you pay to b) ought to	()	Jnits (11&12)
U	1	a) must	b) ought to	park your car there	(
	и	with are you sin	UDO horo dete	Ci Dood-is	
	и	a) ought to	b) must	. be wo	rking
	ı,	The report says	that the	c) can't	el) will
	Г	a) wire	b) must that the betwee b) brick	en the rich and the p	oor has increased.
	ı.	Officers Arctoria A	V45 & Great Guego	at laurit	d) gap
		a) marked	b) ruled	England for	60 years.
	ú	The Chemistry	. Was compliant	c) (imited	d) repaired
ı		a) event	b) scene	and difficult to follo	ow.
ŀ	20	She tried to	on reading her boo	c) lecture	d) paper
П		a) pass	b) apply	k but couldn't,	
I	25	Most businesses :	b) apply see government regulation	c) depend	d) concentrate
I	a) devil	b) evil	as a necessary .	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
	<u> 22</u> 5	low learners find	b) evil I it difficult to keep	c) pure	d) imaginative
ı	a) with	b) on	with the rest of	the class,
ı,		lass media alway	ys advise people to be	c) up	a) up with
ı	139	se.	ys durise people to be	" about the	amount of water they
ı			b) sensitive	e) sansalass	d) conco
94			ky to find a job immediate		
ľ		birth	b) innovation		
a è	_		lains of some fine		
43			Idillo of source time	around her ey	es leating that she is
	_	tting old.	I. V lauriage	e) weinklos	d) scratches
	_	cracks	b) bruises		Q) scratches
			se you your un	ilbiella with you.	d) not to take
			b) taking	c) to take	a) not to take
7	He	warned his son .	with bad peop	ne.	- A) if he involved
ē	a) t	o involve	b) not to involve	c) from involving	g a) if the involved
1	The	y suggested tha	t Alia course t	o improve his Eng	IISN.
a	ı) ta	akes	b) take	c) took	d) taking
Y	'ou	get	your bandage wet, or you	ir leg might not he	al properly.
a) m	nustn't	b) don't have to	c) must	d) needn't
Н	le	tell ti	he police when his jewels	disappeared.	
		en't tell		b) might tell	
		ouldn't have to	al .	d) had to	
C) 3 F1	ogian (nave (o)	a		

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Earthquakes are natural disasters that humans cannot control. Sometimes earthquakes can be very dangerous and people need to know more about where earthquakes come from, and how to protect themselves from them any other natural disasters.

Earthquakes are the shaking, rolling or sudden shock of the earth's surface. They are the earth's natural means of releasing pressure. More than a million earthquakes occur in the world each year. Earthquakes can be felt over large areas although they usually last less than a minute. However, earthquakes cannot be predicted although scientists are still working on the problem.

There are about 20 plates along the surface of the earth that move continuously and slowly past each other. When the plates squeeze or stretch, huge rocks form at their edges and the rocks shift with great force, causing an earthquake. As the plates move, they put forces on themselves and each other. When the force s large enough, the crust is forced to break.

Shaking and ground breaking are the main effects created by earthquakes, principally resulting in more or less severe damage to buildings and other structures. The severity of the effect depends on the complex combination of the earthquake magnitude. Ground break is a major risk for large engineering structures such as dams, bridges and nuclear power stations and requires careful mapping of existing faults to identify any likely to break the ground surface within the life of the structure.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Earthquake are considered natural disaster because

a) they are man-made

b) man has no control over them

d) they are always expected

Earthquakes are considered disastrous for people and properties because

a) earthquakes happen in cities

b) man can control them

c) they are unpredictable

According to the text, how long does an earthquake usually last?

b) Less than a minute.

c) More than a minute.

d) Exactly a minute.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why couldn't Michael legally become a king?
 - a) As his brother refused that.

h

- b) As his mother was not royal.
- c) As his father didn't want him to be a king.
- d) As his father was not royal.

PART Why did the Marshal fear that the people wouldn't believe him? a) Because the King's writing was different from his usual.

b) Because they hated him.

c) Because he was used to lying to them.

d) Because the King was still among them.

49 What mission would Flavia have if the King (Rassendyll) didn't come back?

a) She would be on a mission to rescue Ruritania and be a queen.

b) She would kill Michael and his men.

c) She would assign the Marshal to lead the country.

d) She would marry Michael and he would become a king.

Where was the modern country house?

a) It was on the opposite side of the town to where the castle stood.

b) It was beside the castle of Zenda.

c) It was next to the mansion where the Duke stayed.

d) It was between the Inn and the hunting lodge.

What did Rassendyll tell the ten men about their mission?

a) That Michael had tried to kill him.

b) That a good friend of the King was held prisoner in the castle.

c) To be brave and loyal not to ask any more questions.

d) All of these.

Where did Rassendyll and Fritz go during their visit to Zenda? Why?

a) To the Inn as he wanted the innkeeper's daughter's help.

b) To the castle as he wanted to rescue the King.

c) To the hunting lodge for hunting.

d) To the Inn as he wanted to reward the innkeeper and her daughter

Why did Rupert pay another visit to Rassendyll at the modern house?

a) He came to invite him to the mansion.

b) He came with a message from the Duke.

c) He came as he was invited to Tarlenheim.

d) He came to take a message for Michael.

How did Rupert deceive Rassendyll while leaving the modern country house?

a) He asked Rassendyll to shake hands and stabbed him in his shoulder with his known

b) He took the money and gave him nothing.

c) He promised to work with him but he didn't keep his promise.

d) He killed the King, Sapt and Fritz.

Units (11&12)

How was Rassendyll lucky when Rupert stabbed him?

As he wasn't killed by that cowardly attack.

h) As he was wearing heavy clothes.

As it was not a bad injury.

d) a and c.

What was the best qualities of Johann?

a) He was a weak man.

d He was wealthy.

b) He wasn't a wicked man.

d) He was a cheerful one.

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

§Students should take part in the conversation inside the classroom to feel more

﴿ أَ) يجب أن يشارك الطلاب في المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر في أنفسهم. (ب) يجب أن يأخذ الطلاب جزءًا في المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر في أنفسهم.

(جـا يجب أن يتكلم الطلاب المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر في أنفسهم.

(د) لا يجب أن يشارك الطلاب في المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر في أنفسهم.

Choose the correct English translation:

52 على كل قرد أن يشارك في تحمل المستولية للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية.

- a) Everyone should share responsible for overcoming our economic, social and environmental problems,
- b) Everyone should share responsibility for overcoming our economic, social and environment problems.
- c) Everyone should share responsibility for overcoming our economic, social and environmental problems.
- d) Everyone should share responsibility for overcome our economic, social and environmental problems.

Choose the correct answer:

- Which sentence is correct?
 - a) Sometimes parents dream of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or engineers.
 - Sometimes parents dream of their kids to be at high work like doctors or engineers,
 - c) Parents sometimes dreams of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or engineers. d) Sometimes parents' dream of their kids to be at high professions like doctors or
 - engineers.





Units 13&14





Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

bark (n)	اللحاء/القشرة الخارجية
base (n) (v) (d)	قاعدة/أساس/يؤسس
calculate (v) (d)	بحسب
cardboard (n)	ورق مقوی/کرتونی
carve (v) (d)	
cliff (n)	متحدر صخری
commuter (n)	ميندر الكب
consider (v) (ed)	
diameter (n)	يعتبر
drill (n) (v) (ed)	قطر الدائرة
emission (n)	تنقيب/ينقب عن/يحفر
extract (v) (ed)	انبعاث (غاز)
harden (v) (ed)	يستخلص/ينزع
illuminate (v) (d)	يجمدابقوى
nvestment (n)	Processing the special party of the second s
_	- Luthalt

massive (adj) position (n) (v) (ed) power cut (n) power station (n) ray (n) ring (n) rubber (n) sap (n) solar panel (n) solar (adj)	فنم بوضع ايضع في مكان انتفاع طاقة (كهرباء) معلة طاقة (كهرباء) شعاع مطاط مطاط المثل داخل الشجرة (تسغ) لوح شعسي
tube (n) tunnel (n) (v) (led) turpentine (n) valuable (adj) width (n)	لنبوب/أنبوبة ننق/يحفر/يشق الأنفاق زيت التربيتين قدِم عرض

de

dig

dri

ext

for

Helpful Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	والمرافع
amazing (adj)	to more (placed has short) hims tracks shown appropriate
attach (v) (ed)	بريط/يميل
attackers (n)	Úpasia
attractive (adj)	منك
	· ·

beam (n)	
branch (n)	شعاع
breathe (v) (d)	غصن/فرع
cable car	يتنفس
cells (n)	عربة قطار هوالى
	خلايا



B / 125 / 5	
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائي/ مادة كيمائية
climate (n)	المناغ
combination (n)	مجموعة/ اتحاد
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
concrete (n)	خرسانة
cut down (v)	ولمقاء
deduce (v) (d)	يستنتج
destroy (v) (ed)	يبمز
dig (V)	 يحفر
drill (v) (ed)	محفر/ بثقب
emperor (n)	إمبراطور
enemy (n)	24.0
engineering (n) (adj)	هندسة/ هندسی
environment (n)	البيئة
equipment (n)	 معدات/ تجهیزات
eventually (adv)	ض النماية/ أخيرًا
extra (adj)	إضافي
fertiliser (n)	سماد
flat (adj)	مسطح/ مستو
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/ يقيض
form (v) (ed)	پشکل/ پکؤن
freeze (v)	يتجمد
fuel (n) (v) (led)	وقود/ پزود بالوقود
furniture (n)	الثف
gate (n)	بواية
giant (adj)	مملاق
global warming (n)	الامتياس المرارئ

	Jnits (138.14)
gloves (n)	قفاز/ جوانثي
heat (n) (v) (ed)	حرارة/ يسخن
historical (adj)	تاریخی
hole (n)	القب/ فقدة
instructions (n)	تعليمات
instruments (n)	الإت/ أموات
leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر
liquid (n)	سائل
materials (n)	مواد
mix (v) (ed)	يخلط
monuments (n)	أثار
mud bricks (n)	الطوب اللبن (من الطين)
nuts (n)	بندق/ مكسرات
pick(v)(ed)	يقطف
pour (v) (ed)	يصبا يسكب
products (n)	منتجات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
railway (n)	سكك مبينية
recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
refer (v) (red)	يشير
remover (n)	مزيل
re-open (v) (ed)	يعيد افتتاح
rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ/ ينقذ
rise (n)	ترتفع/ تشرق (الشمس)
roots (n)	جنور
sandstorm (n)	علصفة رملية
seed (n)	بنرة

PART	شکل	structure (n)	بنا اترکیب امینی
shape (n)	; سجن قصیر	surface (n)	كالمر
short (adj)		take in (v)	بمثو
simple (adj)	بسيط	take place (v)	متياشي
site (n)	ا موقع	threaten (v) (ed)	عد
skin (n)		tie (v) (d)	يريط
soft (adj)	لين/ناعم	toothpaste (n)	بعجون أسنان
soil (n)	ا تربة	underground (adj)	يت الأرض
solve (v) (d)	يحل ا	valley (n)	4
statue (n)	ا تمثال	valuable (adi)	ائم

Expressions & Idioms

weather (n)

steam (n)

steep (adj)

		(Publicaniasi.	
بنمو على الأشجار	grow on trees	ينقطع إلى قبطع	(be) cut into pieces
ىيعم أشياء مشتركة	have in common	منحوت في المنحدر الصد	(be) carved into a cliff ಳು
بعد عن	keep away from	ينقل الماء من إلى	carry water from to
يعد المعاجمين	keep the attackers out	يلحق بالقطار	catch the train
يقد خططا	make plans	يصل إلى اتفاق على ١٥	come to an agreement of
بفوته القطار	miss the train	يحقر في الصخر	cut into rock
يصل طوله إلى	reach a length of	يسبب ضررًا لـ	do damage to
فبموعة تعليمات	set of instructions	يرسم خطة	draw up a plan
يبدو كأنه	sound like	يسقط أثناء هيوب الريار	fall over in the wind
يركب (يستقل) المترو	take the underground	يتحسن سُ	get better at
يستخدم الخشب كوقود	use wood as a fuel	يعطى تعليمات	give instructions

Phrases & Prepositions

attract to	يجنب اء	move to	ينقل إلى
attractive to	باغم	pour into	يصب في
centre for	مركز ك	press with	يضغط ب
drill into	يثقب في	protect from	يحمي من
enough for	کلئے ل	proud of	فخور بـ
extract from	يستخلص من	refer to	يشير إلى
grown for	مزروع من أجل	remind of	ينكرب
important for	عام ك	remove from	يزيل من
instead of	بدلًا من	right for	مىدىج ل
investment in	استثمار في	tie to	يربط ف
made from	مصنوع من	turn into	يتحول إلى

Derivatives

	Verb	Nour	1	Adje	ctive
attack	يهاجم	attack attacker	هجوم مهاجم	attacking	معاجم
attract	م المام الما	attraction	جثب	attractive	' جذاب
breathe	يثلقس	breath	نفس 	breathless	لأهث/منقطع النفس
combine	يتحد <i>ا</i> يضم/يجمع	combination	مجموعة/اتحاد	combined	متحد/مجمع
commute	يسللر	commuter	مسافر <i>ا</i> راکب		
consider	,	consideration	اعتبار	considerable	, معتبر
deduce	يستنتع	deduction	استئتاع	deductive	استىتلچى
deepen		depth	- Jac	deep	مديق

		demonstration	יש	demonstrativ	و نوضيحي
demonstrate	شرح ایتظامر	demonstration			
emit	خرج/يطلق (غاز)		نبعاث (غاز)	41 40 110 40 4	
equip	جھز/یمد ب	equipment	معدات/تجميزات	equipped	يفهز
extract	يستخلص/ينزع	extraction	ستخلاص/نزع		
harden	يجمد/يقوى	hardness	علابة	hard	عاب/باه
heighten	يرفع/يجعله عاليًا	height	ارتفاع	high	عال/مرتفع
Improve	يحسن/يطو <i>ر</i>	improvement	تحسین/تطویر	improved	يحسن
invest	يستلمر	investment investor	استثمار مستثمر		
lengthen	يطول	length	ملول - مد	long	ملويل
		mass	2175	massive	شخم
produce	ينتع	production product	انتاج منئج	productive	منتج
protect	يخمى	protection	وقاية/حماية	protective	ولقي
	-	rubber	مظاط	rubbery	ة مطلطي مطلطي
sharpen	يجعله حادًا	sharpness	277	sharp	د برید
strengthen	و يقوى	strength	قوة	strong	قوي
threaten	ا يمند	threat	تميد	threatening	معبد/تعدیدی
value	۷ يقثر	/alue	li-	valuable	قلِم
weaken • ,	۷ يضعف	veakness	1000000 100 -0000 1000	weak	
viden	K rema	vldth	ر عرون	vide	منعیف
					واسع/عريض

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Mounting	Synonym Wijali	Antonym -	المضار
attractive	جذاب	charming	boring	ممل
base	<u>قاعدة/أساس</u>	foundation	top	242
carve	ينجت	dig	mend	يصلح
compare	يقارن	contrast	disregard	د ا
consider	يعتبر	believe	ignore	يتجاهل
deduce	يستنتج	assume	misunderstand	يسىء قھم
emission	انبعاث	discharge	concealment	إخفاء
illuminate	يثير	light up	darken	يظلم
investment	استثمار	financing	divestment	تجريد
position	يضع في موضع	locate	displace	يزيع
rescue	ينقذ	save	endanger	يعرض للخطر
structure	تركيب	formation	disorganisation	عدم تنظيم
calculate	नेन्त्र	estimate	disregard	يتجاهل
extract	يستخلص/ينزع	extort	spread	ينشر
glant	عملاق	enormous	tiny	صفير
hole	لقب/متحة	gap .	closure	غلق
narrow	طيق	tight	wide	عريض
soft	مدانانيا	flexible	rough	خشن/قاسِ
valuable	الإم	expensive	cheap	رخيص

Additional Language Notes

rise (rose/ risen)

يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/ تشرق/يزداد/يستيقط/ يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)

arise (arose/ arisen)

يحدث (لا يأتي بعده مفعول) ايظهر/ينشأ

raise (raised/ raised)

یزید (یاتی بعده مفعول)/پریی/پجمع/پرفع/ بثبر

رمذاوف fears /أمثل raise: hopes اهتمام interest /شكوك Suspicions

arouse (aroused/ aroused)

يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدى الناس)

(یأتی بعدہ مفعول) interest/مشاعر arouse: feelings suspicions/مخاوف fears/اهتمام شکوك (doubts)

- Smoke from the factory was rising high in the sky.
- Family expenses have risen a lot these days.
- The child couldn't rise up as he was tired.
- Some financial problems arose because of the rise in prices,
- Most workers always ask the government to raise the wages.
- The teacher asked the student to raise his voice to answer his question.
- ▶ Most charities are organising events to raise money.

• The new law aroused a lot of criticism النقد.

take place

take someone's place

يحل محل

- The Olympic Games take place every four years in a different city.
- ▶ The manager asked his son to take his place as a manager when he travelled abroad.
- Logs of some certain trees are used to produce paper. لاحظ استخدام produce كاسم بمعنى إنتاج زراعي فقط.

produce (v)

Egypt exports much of her produce such as oranges and potatoes to other countries.

product (n) منتتج (سلعة) My father insists on buying fresh dairy products believing that they are healthy.

producer (n) منتح (شخص) ▶ The producer of the film is the one who is responsible for all expenses.

productive (adj)

My sister has been very productive at home; she does much of the housework.

منتيج (غزير الإنتاج)

▶ We should improve the quality of our production to sell more goods.

production (n)

الإنتاج

use + object + to + inf. ا پستندم لکی

We use a special machine to compress the mixture of paper into sheets.

use + object + for + (v-ing.) پستخدم من اجل

We use a special machine for compressing the mixture of paper into sheets.

use + object + as

یستخدم ک

Some villages still use wood as a fuel for heating and cooking.

قاعدة/أساس (الجزء الأسفل الذي يحمل فوقه باقى الشيء)

The statue stands on a large round base.

أساس/قاعدة أساس/قاعدة (الأفكار والحقائق العامة التي منها يمكن للشيء أن يتطور)

▶ This document will form the basis for our discussion.

أساسى/جوهرى (أهم جزء في الشيء الذي بدونه لا يمكن لهذا الشيء أن يوجد)

Rice is the basic ingredient of the dish. ♦ القم جزء في الشيء الذي بدونه لا يمكن

تاریخی (لانه قدیم او مؤثر دو اهمیة تاریخیة)

▶ Tourists like to visit historic monuments in Egypt.

تاريخي (مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ أو بالماضي)

تاریخی • She specialises in historical novels set in eighteenth-century England.

🥱 site

موقع

This is the site of the accident where a lot of people died.

sight

بصر/منظر

- I'm having laser treatment to improve my sight.
- I can't stand the sight of blood.

sights

. We enjoyed seeing the sights of Rome مواقع اثرية

ہ He carved the wood to resemble a small bird. یندت (پختر فی شیء او من شیء) • Signall bird.

dig

• We dug a hole and planted the tree. ♦ يحفر (ني الأرض)

drill

يحفر (باستخدام أداة) غالبًا <mark>بحثًا عن شيء</mark> أو لداء شيء The company has been licensed to drill for oil in the area.

PART		
system	نظام (عمل/تشفیل)	TIDE ALL COMPANY - 2 - 7
discipline	نظام (انضياط)	discipline.
شی، tunnel	ثفق (طريق/ممر) محفور في	The Giza underground line goes into a tunnel under the Nile.
canal	قناة(مائية)/ترعة	In order to turn the deserts into fertile land, we built an 800-km canal.
channel	قناة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية)	He changed the channel to a news programme,
1	متصل ہـ (شيء يتصل مب	Every house must have a computer connected to the Internet nowadays.
connected v	مرتبط بـ/له علاقة بــ	There are many problems connected with drug misuse,
contact	﴿ پٹمال ہـ 	You can always contact me on my home number.
ring ية على شكل دائرة)	١ - حلقة إنتىء المجموء	The city was overlooked by a ring of high-rise buildings.
circle (ا ۲- خاتم	She wore a gold ring on his right hand.
	و الاحتمامات)	Draw a circle around the right answer. Over the years she had established a circle of good friends.
عنقصد pour	 ا مسب(سائلًا في شيء) 	de poured the last of his drink down the sink.
رقصد spill 14 list	0 ﴿ يِسكب (سائلًا) عن غَير	Oh no! I've spilt coffee all down my shirt!
شيئه) لمراجعتما	ارقام/ الماء/ارقام/ الماء/ارقام/ الماء	d better make a list, or I'll forget who I've invited.
menu (1	THE HEALTSON

لفي مطعم) • We asked the waiter for a menu,

From the Edit menu, you can select Cut or Copy. > المعلم) في جماز يمكن الاختيار منما

menu

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from	a,	b,	Ç	or	d	:
--------------------	-------------	----	----	---	----	---	---

(Key topapaigi			
Many new laws	s were issued to limit harmi	ful	
a) emission	b) absorption	rui gas	. into the atmosphere.
A solar	is a piece of equipment	c) consuming	d) farming
a) power	is a piece of equipment	t that changes the	sun's light into electricity.
	-,	CIDADOL	all
a bridge over it	as not yet been made whe	tner to	under the river or build
_			
* The tunnel whi	b) funnel	c) channel	d) canal
a) length	ch was dug under the Nile	is eight metres in	IDDAGGGDAA AA GA IIGGGIIIP M
		c) speed	d) distance
The governmen	nt is planning to attract for	eign t	o help the economy.
a) policy	b) encouragement	c) investment	d) certificate
	name can be found at the		statue.
a) basis	b) role	c) rule	d) base
The trains are a	lways full ofat	this time of the da	ay.
a) drivers	b) engineers	c) commuters	d) computers
He put the paper	ers into a folde	r and tied it carefu	ılly.
a) dashboard	b) cardboard	c) blackboard	d) whiteboard
Artists use	for making paint th	inner and for clea	ning paint from brushes.
a) turpentine	b) turbine	c) turtles	d) tubes
When I saw tha	t my neighbour's house wa	asby	spotlights, I knew that he
had come back	from his travel.		
a) beamed	b) darkened	c) eliminated	d) illuminated
	of China was a		
complete.			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
a) heavy	b) mass ,,	c) massive	d) long
	strong substance that is		
	strong substance that is	asea for making	amiga sucii da tyrea dilu
boots.	b) Wood	a) Turnantina	d) Can
a) Rubber	· ·	c) Turpentine	
	u played hockey - what		
a) sight	b) base	c) location	d) position

™ Th	e skin of babi	ar and .		
	on of th	es and young chi	dren needs very spec	cial protection from the
ali	rails			and the
18 Thu	C Ortica	b) lines	c) rays	d) lights
a) c	auti2f "·······"	many of his	c) rays famous statues out o	fold branches
The The	.urveg	b) caused	s) cannod	old blanciles.
an rije	man stood o	n the top of a stee	c) carved	a) dug
4 Th -	reet	b) stiff	c) carved ep and lo	oked out to the sea.
- 1110	OIL AALIJE IS 16	_	- J 2(a))	OI Cliff
a) co	Intracted	b) extracted	c) staff lives is used for cooki	ng. d) included
16 The	hard	Sthe mate:	c) excavated	d) included
a) le	aves	b) root-	I that forms the surface	d) included ce of the wood of a tree.
The c	:hildren sat ar	2) 1001 (a	c) bark	d) beautifee.
a) rin	n – –	ound their grand	father in a	of pranches
20 It's di	fficult to	D) root	c) fruit	eager to hear his story.
2) CO:	Int	TONG TONG	the project in .	w/ reaves
21 My br	Other's nous	b) suppose	c) calculate	
4440000	The s new jo	ob at the United I	Vations Valculate	d) appreciate
a) valu	relos-	nce.	c) calculate Vations gave him an	opportunity to gain
29 Faynt	Jeless	b) helpless		to gain
a) state	is building its	first nuclear now	c) estimated vernear N	d) value is
69 W/ 5(d[on	b) papel	ver near M	d) valuable
201-20-20-20-20-20-	is the liq	uid that cares	c) rocket	iddodff,
a) 20nt		b) Soon	c) rocket pod and salts in trees.	d) stop
e in every	tree, there is	a circle - s	c) San	
a) hard	en	by directe of soft co	ells which	d) Tube
** The	of th	or arop	c) stay	d) Tube every spring or summer,
every ye	ar.	e rings of trees c	lepends on the	d) do
a) lengti	h	•	is a rid on the clima	te and the arra
They		b) width	c) strength racted a thin piece of called	d) Tube every spring or summer, d) go te and the amount of rain
a) felled	""" Into	the tree and extr	c) strength	all to a constant
Pelé is w		b) pulled	acted a thin piece of	d) height
		***** ICI DO 96 -		
2) Wo a-	a l	b) Considered	c) expected c) expected c) division energy states	d) drilled
we are ar	igry because	the power	c) expected	
a) reactor		are bowel warmen	left us in the	d) expected
Egypt has	One of the I	or supply	c) division	ark for five hours
shines all	the year roun	rgest	energy station	d) cut
a) lunar	year roun	la.	as arguons in A	swan whom
The old ma	in hadea) wind	c) cole	d) expected ark for five hours, d) cut swan where the sun
a) tube	riviau to be f	ed through a feed	ding -	d) -
	b) pipe	el for several	d) molecular days after the operation. d) tunnel
244)			c) Wile	after the operation
				d) tunnel

was so cold yesterday, so we didn't go out. d) sky 48 The c) atmosphere b) climate Coal, oil and gas are fossil which have been formed under the ground millions of years ago. d) shapes c) fueis b) products al soils is the part of a plant that grows under the ground and absorbs water to The and minerals. d) trunk c) bark b) root a) fruit The near the river is fertile and produces the best crops. c) sail b) floor a) ground She has a lot of sports in her house which she uses to practise sports. a) equipment d) wavs b) styles c) techniques 13 The of this evergreen tree doesn't fall in autumn. a) roots b) leaves c) bark d) branches A cello is a musical ... which produces a sound similar to a violin. b) equipment c) player d) instrument 55 Wax passes from the solid state to the state when you heat it. a) water b) solid c) liquid d) moisture A new factory was set up in our village to animal waste to produce fertilisers. a) remake b) reproduce c) reshape d) recycle The government has announced thefor the new airport. a) site b) sight c) view Big Ben is one of London's oldest existing that attract tourists. b) structures c) exposures a) fractures The tunnel of the underground Giza metro is about 30 metres below the d) inspectors a) ceiling b) roof c) surface The chef the garlic sauce over the hot chicken pieces to give it a better taste. c) spoiled d) poured (Expressions, idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms 61 The word "darken" is an antonym to the word "......" a) harden b) illuminate c) extract 62 My grandfather owned a big house with an _____ garden. d) construct a) attractive He compared the Cairo underground _____ those in London and Paris. b) attracted d) attraction d) of 246

# If you want to save a lot of time, you can	d) miss d) remover d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
My brother used a paint	d) miss d) remover d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
My brother used a paint	d) remover d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
a) remove b) removal c) removing The word "foundation" is similar in meaning to the word " a) base b) discipline c) software Professor Magdy referred	d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
# The word "foundation" is similar in meaning to the word "	d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
a) base b) discipline c) software Professor Magdy referred	d) inspection ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
a) In b) to c) at The verb "locate" is a synonym to the verb	ts in his last lecture. d) on d) extract d) giant
a) in b) to c) at The verb "locate" is a synonym to the verb a) defy b) magnify c) position The adjective "tiny" can be the opposite to the adjective	d) on d) extract d) giant
The verb "locate" is a synonym to the verb a) defy b) magnify c) position The adjective "tiny" can be the opposite to the adjective	d) extract d) giant
a) defy b) magnify c) position The adjective "tiny" can be the opposite to the adjective	d) giant
The adjective "tiny" can be the opposite to the adjective	d) giant
a) small b) light c) unimportant Tennis and table tennis are two games which	d) giant
Tennis and table tennis are two games which	
a) give b) take c) have A lot of local farmers are against plans to the roal a) widen b) width c) wide We can examine the bones of dinosaurs and make a/an a) deduce b) deduction c) deductive A sunscreen gives your skin a layer against the sinal protect b) protection c) protective The Abu Simbel Temple near Aswan was cut color of a) for b) off c) at	ich in common.
A lot of local farmers are against plans to	48-4-
a) widen b) width c) wide We can examine the bones of dinosaurs and make a/an	
We can examine the bones of dinosaurs and make a/an	
a) deduce b) deduction c) deductive 73 A sunscreen gives your skin a	
74 A sunscreen gives your skin a	*
a) protect b) protection c) protective 74 The Abu Simbel Temple near Aswan was cutrock a) for b) off c) at	
74 The Abu Simbel Temple near Aswan was cutrock a) for b) off c) at	· ·
a) for b) off c) at	
If The service of the	d) into
75 The manager all the staff instructions to be in t	the factory by six oʻclock
next Thursday.	
a) gave b) had c) followed	
The first line of Cairo metroa length of 44 kilometres	
a) arrived b) reached c) came	d) got
77 This kind of horror films is attractive young peop	
a) in b) at c) to	d) of
My elder brother likes this song which reminds him	
a) about b) at c) from	d) of
Technology and good management are really a winning	for any business
nowadays.	
a) combine b) combination c) combined	d) combinative
The Chinese built the Great Wall to keep the attackers	
a) out b) at c) of	d) into

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:			
The of the bab	y's cough woke the other children.			
a) bark	b) branch			
c) laughter	d) voice			
The teacher was	the class in the forms of the past tense.			
a) digging	b) carving			
c) drilling	d) shaping			
I've only seen short	from the film, but I liked it much.			
a) revisions	b) extracts			
c) papers	d) documents			
The report the d	ifficult problems we face in our schools.			
a) lengthened	b) shortened			
c) lighted	d) illuminated			
We take the that	these changes are to be welcomed.			
-,				
c) structure	b) position			
The freelance accountant use	s his home as the			
a) foundation .	s his home as the for his accounting busines			
c) base	o) top			
The school rules are not	d) statue in stone. They can be changed.			
a) dug	mstone. They can be changed.			
c) built	D) carved			
The baby was a	d) demolished			
a) beam	sunshine to his parents as he made thorn			
. The government has to the	d) ray steps to reduce gas emissions in the area. b) brick			
a) concrete	steps to reduce gas and			
c) metal	b) brick gas emissions in the area.			
The appointment	new COVID-19 vaccine in Russia was really a light at			
the end of the	new COVID-19 vaccine			
al mill	Russia was really a light a			
c) tup-ol	b) way			
c) tunnel				
(248)	d) station			



Unit (13)

Modal verbs of deduction, advice and regret

Deduction

etiiin

Deductio			pate rath apper passenggar instance
المارات	lacetal	Ceri	
Certain Age	Verb to be (am-is-are) أى فعل فى المضارع يعتبر مؤكد	Verb to be (was-were) أى فعل فى الماضى يعتبر مؤكد	 My father is a doctor. Hany speaks English well. My brother travelled abroad. My grandmother died in 1990.
Near certain	Must be (Verb) اکید	Must have been (P.P.) كان مؤكدًا في الماضي	- Ahmed must be wrong. I'm sure he is, - Trees must get their food from the soil and, - Osama must have been ill yesterday. We didn't see him at school.
Uncertain अंग्र क्टेंट	May be (verb) ريما	May have been (P.P.)	 They may visit us tomorrow but I'm notsue. Perhaps, he passed the exam. He may hat passed the exam. I don't know what happened. They may have punished him.
Very uncertain غیر مؤکد إلى حد كبیر	Might/could be (verb) ریما	(P.P.) لمي	
Negative	Can't be ن يعكن أن يكون May not be Might not be Couldn't be	Can't have been (P.P.) ناد يمكن انه كان May not have + P.P. Might not	- He can't be III, He is at school. - You can't know my brother. He lives abrown the should introduce yourself; he may in a should introduce yourself; he may in a should have read my e-mail.

Present/ Future

النصيحة والندهر

Advice

chould (shouldn't) + inf.

ought to (oughtn't to) + inf.

Past

Regret

should (shouldn't) have + P.P.

ought to (oughtn't to) have + P.P.

ishould/ought to make a study plan.

He should have studied/ought to have studied harder to pass the exam. ploughtn't to have insulted/shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.

shouldn't have + P.P.

كان ينبغي عليك فعل شيء لم تفعله.

فعلت شيئًا لم يكن واجبنًا فعله،

Summary

Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition, lack of necessity, advice, regret and deduction

Use

Advice/ Regret

Deduction

Present / Future

Advice

should/ought to/had better

They should help the poor.

We shouldn't waste our time.

They ought to study hard.

He had better not use the phone a lot.

Past

Regret

should/ought to have + P.P.

You should (ought to) have gone to

bed earlier last night.

I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted

my time.

must be (verb) - can't be (verb)

She must be working. (positive)

She can't be over forty. (negative)

He may be mistaken. (I'm not sure)

He might/ could be mistaken.

He might not/couldn't be mistaken.

must have + P.P./can't have + P.P.

She must have been working.

She can't have been over forty.

He may have been mistaken.

He might have been mistaken.

مراجعة سريعة للنقاط الهامة:

۱- تستخدم (must be (verb) عندما نشعر بان شيئًا ما حقيقي بسبب وجود دليل قوي.

Must be clever because he always gives the correct answers.

۲- تستخدم may/might/could عندما نعتقد بأن شيئا ما ممكن ولكن لسنا متأكدين.

try to get there early but we may arrive late if there's a lot of traffic. ٣- تستخدم can't عندما نشعر بأن شيئًا ما غير حقيقى بسبب، وجود دئيل قوى.

He has to work on the feast Day? He can't feel very happy about that.

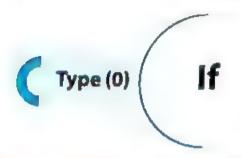
251



The conditional sentence



The Zero Conditional





سرادالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).

- If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.
- If/When we heat air, it rises.

سْنُنِم الدالة الصفرية أيضًا مع الأشياء التي أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

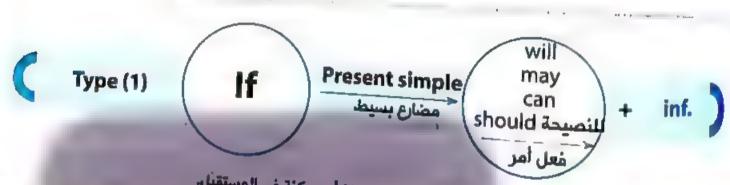
- If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.
- If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

لنة استخدام when بدلًا من if في الحالة الصفرية.

- When I go to bed, I always take much time to sleep.
- When I eat, I begin with salad as I'm on a diet.



The First Conditional



سُنْتُم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التي تعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة في المستقبل.

If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.

If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

- يهردن عال، في الشرط للنصيحة أو الاستحباب و(have to) للوجوب والإلزام. استنام (should) في جواب الشرط للنصيحة أو الاستحباب و(should) ما يجوم طواط If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.
- If you know more than one language, they may give you the job. بركن استخدام may للاحتمال و can للاستطاعة.
- If my father buys me a computer, I will be able to (can) log on the internet.

(Units (13&14)

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تعديد.

Hyou win the gold medal, I will reward you, win the gold medal, I will be very famous.

won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

lyou like, stay for another two days.

- يعكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط في الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نص: if you want to get high marks, don't waste much time playing or watching TV.

The Second Conditional



- تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل في المضارع أو المستقبل وفي إعطاء النصيحة.

offwere a bird, I could fly.

(I'm not a bird, untrue in the present)

Hilwere you, I'd help him.

(Giving advice)

The Third Conditional



- نستخيم الحالة الثالثة للمديث عن المواقف الملضية أو الأحداث للتي ثم تتم

lithey had know

Countable nouns

والمعدودة

الا ياخذ ٥.	الجمع شاذ	s/es/ies الجمع أو أن يكون	حنفان في الجمع ونضيف	a) في المفرد وت	- an) مقبست بعد
a pen	قلم	→ pens	a man	 . رجل	→ men
a watch	ساعة	watches	a foot	- قدم	feet
a baby	رضيع	babies	a mouse	ـ غار	→ mice
a leaf	ورقة	leaves	a means	_ وسيلة	→ means
a child	طفل	children	a species	- قصيلة/توع	→ species

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء القير المعدودة

يمارالتي لا تعد تعامل مفرد ولا تجمع أي تأخذ is/has/was/does/s/es مع الفعل.

- 1. Food الطعام meat - cheese - rice - sugar.
- 2. Liquids السوائل water - oil - coffee - petroi milk - soup
- 3. Materials المواد wood - plastic - glass - paper
- 4. Abstract nouns الأسماء المجردة knowledge - beauty freedom - justice العدل
- 5. School subjects المواد الدراسية physics - chemistry mathematics - history, etc.

6. Other nouns:

accommodation - advice - applause المتاف - baggage - camping - cash - chaos النبص - chess - clothing - النبس - conduct - السلوك - courage - cutlery - المائدة - dancing - dirt - employment - equipmed - evidence - فيلا - fun - furniture - harm - health - homework - housing - information - leisure المائدة - litter - luck - luggage - machinery - money - music - news - nonsense - parking - pay - permission - photography - poetry - pollution - produce - progres - publicity - النبوع - research - rubbish - safety - scene - shopping - sightseeing - بيارة الإماكن السياحية - research - rubbish - safety - scene - shopping - sightseeing - بيارة الإماكن السياحية transport - violence - weather - work - traffic - angle - blood - bread - business - education - gold - help laughter

اسماء دائما جمع belongings - بضائع belongings - أرباح and - أرباح outskirts - الضواحي outskirts - أرباح and - أرباح والمرات clothes - looks - أرباح عمتلكات والمرات clothes - ثروات riches - ثروات والمرات وا بنطرات clothes - ممتلكات elongings - ثروات riches - الضواحي outskirts - أرياح stairs - أرياح stairs - أرياح stairs - فضراوات stairs - فراوات stairs - فراوات - فرا 18e careful .The stairs are very slippery.

) _{Nouns} ending in (s) but singular

- علم الحساب mathematics - السياسة politics - الإقتصاد news - economics - الألعاب الرياضية - سر سسب ۱۱۱۰۵ - ۱۱۱۰۵ - سیــــ د ۱۱۱۰۵ - الألغاب الرياضيّة اختمباز gymnastics - الفيزياء statistics - الأبب اليوناني القديم classics - إحصانيات statistics - الأبب اليوناني القديم

Diabetes is a serious disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood.

Physics is a very difficult subject.

Nouns which refer to groups

أسماء تشير إلى مجموعات

- حشد crowd - طاقم crew - هيئة staff - شركة company - جيش army - فصل class - فريق team university - نادى club - سكان population - البحرية navy - مجموعة group - عصابة family - gang (جمع The couple - نوج couple - جمعور audience - العامة the public - دامعة لجنة committee - الزوجار

معظم الأسماء التي تشير إلى مجموعات يمكن أن يُستخدم معما فعل مفرد أو جمع.

There are 32 teams in the world cup and our team is one of them.

The Egyptian team are receiving the medals.

Nouns which are (countable and uncountable) أسماء لا تعد لها معنى وتعد بمعنى آخر

شعرة a hair ؎ الشعر منجان قموة a coffee 🚤 بن/تموة Coffee محيلة paper عنه paper محيلة مصباح a light 🕳 النور/الضوء برتقالة an orange حـــــ اللون البرتقالي orange مرة ولحدة a time 🚤 وقت/زمن time عوب a glass → لزجاع glass فرخة a chicken حـــ لحم الفراخ Chicken نزلة برد a cold ---- البرد عموما cold مكونة an iron - الحديد تحربة an experience حجبة experience مدرسة a school مدرسة حجرة a room حــــ قراغ room Wood - woods 255 Einstein changed the way we think about space and time.

• yesterday مرات yesterday المرات yesterday

٤/الدراسة (لا تعد)

My five-year-old sister will start school in September.

▶ The government is going to build a school in this area.

لسماء تبدوجمعا لكنها مضرر

Nouns which look plural but they are singular

سبلغ المالية والعسافات والكميات والوقت وترجات الحرارة والوزن تبدو جمعًا ولكنما مفرد.

2 thousand pounds isn't enough for a family to live on.

- Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.
- Two hours is a long time to wait.
- 500 kilometres is a long way to travel.
- Fifty degrees is a very high temperature.
- Five kilometres is a long way to walk if you are carrying a heavy bag.

مولكن لأحظ أننا نقول:

Three one-pound coins are on the desk.

ثلاث عملات معدنية من فلة الجنيه (هذه التركيبة تعامل على أنها جمع).

How to make the uncountable countable?

كيف تجعل الذي لا يعد يعد؟

يعكن استخدام أدوات تجزئة مع الكلمات التي لا تعــد و في حالة الجمع تجمع أداة التجزئة مثل:

a piece of jewellery	قطعة مجوهرات	an item of information	بند من المعرفة
a glass of lemonade	كوب ليمون	a bottle of milk	الرجاجة لبن
a bar of chocolate	قطعة شوكولاته -	a piece of furniture	قطعة من الأثاث
a piece of advice	تصيحة	a tube of toothpaste	، انبوب ة معجون اسنان
a jar of jam	برطمان مربى	a bar of soap	تطعة صابون
piece of luggage	أحد الأمتعة	a slice of cake/meat	1
loaf of bread		The contract of the same of the contract of th	شريحة كيك/لحم
sheet/a packet of paper	فرخ/رزمة ورق	the residence of the same of t	ٔ فنجان قموة
		a glass of lemonade a bar of chocolate a piece of advice a jar of jam برطمان مریی a piece of luggage a loaf of bread a glass of lemonade a bar of chocolate a piece of advice a jar of jam الحد الأمتعة a loaf of bread	a glass of lemonade کوب لیمون a bottle of milk a bar of chocolate قطعة شوکولاته a piece of furniture a piece of advice تميحة a tube of toothpaste a jar of jam برطعان مربی a bar of soap a piece of luggage علية عنام عليه a slice of cake/meat a loaf of bread عنية خبز a cup of coffee

المائع (13&14) (Units (13&14) Some/much/all, etc. المائعة الم some/much/all, etc. :الصفات والكلمات المحددة مثل: ,الصفات والكلمات

Countable	ł.	Uncountable	.ads المعدودة وغير المعدودة مع بعض الصفات والكلمات المحددة ما
1	all	1	Evamori
1	most	1	e.g. All cats are animals. They have eaten all the food. e.g. Most students are absent.
	much	1	e.g. I don't need much tea
1	many		e.g. He doesn't need many shirts
/	a lot of	1	e.g. There were a lot of people at the mosting
1	plenty	1	There was a lot of rain. e.g. I've plenty of time/chances.
/	some	/	e.g. Some of his books are exciting. We need some butter. Would you like some tea? (offer)
/	any	/	e.g. Do you want any books? في السؤال أ don't need any books/ water. في النفي
/	several		e.g. Several buildings were damaged by the explosion.
	a little	1	e.g. They have a little money. (قليل ولكن يكفي)
	little	✓ .	e.g. They have very little money. (not enough لا يكفى)
1	a few		e.g. I knew a few of the people there. = some قليل ويكفئ للعدد
1	few ,		e.g. Few people came to the meeting, so we postponed it. قليل ولا يكفى
/	none	✓	e.g. None of the trains is/ are going to Assuit. لا لحد None of the information given to me was helpful. لا شيء

الله الله الله لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة:

- ▶ She had a good education.
- We had a wonderful lunch yesterday.

incri yesteruay. مع الاسم المفرد أو الجمع المخصص الذي لا يشير إلى شيء عام. مناسم electricity.

- The water of the Nile is used for irrigation and producing electricity.
- ▶ The people in our street are friendly and neighbourly.

منتنام كلمة Some أحيانًا للدلالة على يعض الشيء وليس أشياء كثيرة .

I wrote my address on some paper and gave it to my colleague.

پائي بعد One of اسم جمع لأن معناها واحد من شيء كثير معدود.

رُ ربيم من الأسماء التي تشير إلى المجموعات collective nouns ونستخدم الفعل بعدها مقربًا.

- ▶One of the criminals admitted committing the crime so all of them were hanged.
- ▶ One of our team is leaving to Paris tomorrow.

اللمات gloves/trousers/glasses تعامل على أنها جمع، أما إذا جاء قبلها كلمة a pair of تعامل على أنها مفرد.

- My trousers are of a good material and they don't cost much.
- A pair of trousers is very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

) تعامل على أنها مغرد.) تعامل كلمة a number of معاملة الجمع بينما كلمة the number نعامل على أنها مغرد.

- A number of my friends are coming to the party tomorrow.
- The number of cars in the street is increasing in an incredible rate.

يعكن استخدام a lot of/lots of بنفس المعنى للمعدود وغير المعدود.

We have got a lot of/lots of work to do.

اتستندم كلمة plenty of بمعنى كثرة من/وفرة من للمعدود وغير المعدود. استندم كلمة plenty of على المعنى كثرة من/وفرة من للمعدود وغير المعدود.

أساء الكتب وأسماء الجرائد والأفلام والمسرحيات تعامل معاملة المفرد حتى ولو كانت جمعًا.

"Gulliver's Travels" was written by Jonathan Swift."The Times" is a famous English paper.



Grammar Exercises

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	
Go and look in the kitchen for your glove	d:
a) can't b) have to	s. They be in there.
He has to work on the Feast Day, He	c) must d) shouldn't
He has to work on the Feast Day, He a) must b) should	feel very happy about that.
I got really wet walking home last pight	d) can't
al treeatt titase rakeu	an disipiesia
c) should have taken	b) I should take
Ahmed the bus, I expect he m	d) must have taken
a) may not have caught	
c) caught	b) needn't have caught
That's the second new car they have boug a) can't b) shouldn't	d) must have caught
a) can't b) shouldn't	this year. They be very rich!
written down the number in	c) have to d) must ncorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the
restaurant.	icorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the
a) don't have b) can't have	c) much have
Young children watch violent	c) must have d) may have
a) must b) don't have	c) shouldn't
Hevery happy when he was to	old about his promotion
a) must have been	b) can't have been
c) should have been	d) must be
The man her because he was	
a) must kill	b) must have killed
c) may have killed	d) can't have killed
Nasser the bus. It doesn't run	on Sundays.
a) must have caught	b) couldn't have caught
c) may catch	d) must catch
It was wrong of him to leave the door ope	n. He that.
a) shouldn't do	b) should do
shouldn't have done	d) should have done
Our phone is ringing. Dad the	phone bill.
a) Must have naid this can't pay	c) should pay d) can't have paid
She misunderstood my directi	ions. Why else is she late?
a) must be b) can't be	c) can't have d) must have
	4 -

the exam. I don't f	el very confident.	••
a) must pass b) may n	t pass c) can pass	d) shouldn't pay
Come inside and get warm - vo	freezing out there.	Day Day
a) shouldn't be b) aren't	c) must be	d) can't be
to bed earlier, r	ow you have missed the train.	- 06
a) couldn't have gone	b) should have gone	
c) must have gone	d) shouldn't have got	ne
1º He all the cookles. T	ere's none left in the fridge.	
a) may eat	b) must have eaten	
c) should have eaten	d) can't have eaten	
They are wearing heavy clothes.	t summer have	
armust be blrould b	-1 to 1	d) ab
it was a terrible accident. The del	ers driving slowly.	d) should be
arcant have been	b) must have been	
c) might have been	dimore	
my friend yesterday	d) were	
a) called	but I couldn't find his telephone	number.
c) had to call	b) should have called	
21 He his phone at home	d) must have called	
a) can't forget	again. He's not answering.	
c) should forget	D) must forget	
22 The exam was too difficult to	d) must have forgotte	
	it.	11
CIMUST have	b) could have passed	
23 They are carrying him on a litter as a) can injure	d) can't have failed	
a) can injure	He his large failed	
c) must have injured	b) can't b	
He got 98% in his final exam. He a) should study studying c) can't have been studying	b) can't have injured	
a) should study at rinal exam. He	uj may injure	
c) can't have t	nard during the year	
c) can't have been studying	b) must have been study	ale st — —
Yesterday, I left the car unlocked. It a) could have c) can't have been	d) can't study	aying
a) could have	stolen but he la	
c) can't have been	b) must have been	wasn't.
a) couldn't have gone	d) could be	
a) couldn't have gone	d) could have been	
c) could have gone	b) must	
	b) must have gone	
260	ar could an	

	Units (13&14)
They away for the weekend	but I'm not sure
a) widge of must be	of march 1
He knows a lot about flying planes. He	" a pilot when he was young
	b) can't be
c) can't have been	d) must be a
you the money. Why didn't	you ask me?
a) could lend	b) could have lent
c) can't have lent	d) must have lent
Fatma walked past me without speaking	g. She me.
a) might have seen	b) must have seen
c) can't have seen	d) should have seen
The thieves in through the v	vindow; the flat is on the 21st floor!
a) can't nave got	b) must get
c) should have got	d) must have got
A: Do you think she saw you?	
B: No, she was too far away. She	me.
a) could have seen	b) might have seen
c) must have seen	d) couldn't have seen
BHe gone to the city centre. I	
a) could have b) must have	. ,
He much for the exam beca	use he failed horribly.
a) must study	b) can't study
c) can't have studied	d) must have studied
ង Ali isn't at work today. He ili.	
a) must be	b) can't be
c) can't have been	d) must have been
*It was really wrong of him. He	you before borrowing your car.
a) must have asked	b) should have asked
c) can't have asked	d) might have asked
He was obliged to work on the last feas	t. He happy.
a) shouldn't have been	b) must nave been
c) should have been	d) can't have been
He exceeded the speed limit and was fi	ned. Hedone that.
Must have \$2 con/t have	C) SHORIGHT HOSE OF HIGHER
Don't move him - he have it	nternal injuries. Somebody call an ambulance
a) mustn't b) might	c) should d) can't
	(26)
	160

CorScion - Science

All could have gone to school by bus, but he went on foot. This means that a) I'm sure that Ali went to school by bus b) I'm not sure that Ali went to school by bus c) I'm sure that Ali didn't go to school by bus although it was possible d) I'm sure that it was impossible for Ali to go to school by bus When we select reverse gear, the car backwards. d) goes c) went b) would go a) will go 40 You can stay here tonight if you anywhere else to stay. b) don't have c) didn't have d) hadn't had that old opera house, we would not have any historical architect 43 If they left in the city. a) demolish b) had demolished c) demolished d) didn't demoli I didn't have a car. But if I a car, I would have given you a lift to work. a) had had b) had c) have d) didn't have The machine if it doesn't have enough oil. a) doesn't work b) didn't work c) hadn't worked d) works 44 If Shady, tell him to meet me at the station. a) phoned b) had phoned c) phones d) would phone 47 If the government increased income tax, I be able to survive. a) wouldn't have b) would not . c) won't What would you have done if you to help the disabled last week? a) had asked b) hadn't asked c) asked If you freeze water, ita solid. d) had been asket a) will become b) may become c) becomes 50 If they tired, they will go to sleep early tonight. d) became a) be b) were c) will be 51 If a balloon with hot air, it rises. d) are a) fills b) is filled c) is full 52 If I saw someone committing a robbery, I the police. d) filled b) called 15 you cook vegetables for too long, theyawful. c) will call d) can call b) taste me if you finish your work early? c) tasted d) had tasted a) Will help b) Helped c) Help d) Will you help 262

100

He is ill. But if he were well, he (Units (13&14) to the party. a) could come b) comes c) will come If I go to bed late, I always d) can come tired the next day. a) will feel b) feel c) felt if you lost your passport? d) may feel What a) will you do b) would you do c) had you done d) would you have done you a lift if you hadn't had your blke with you. We a) would have given b) would give c) will give d) may give We get water if we hydrogen and oxygen. a) don't mix b) mixed c) mix d) had mixed If the mechanic our car on time, we can drive to Luxor. a) would fix b) will fix c) fixed d) fixes If you ate so many sweets, you stomachache. a) would get b) have got c) will get d) gets Oil if you pour it on water. al will float b) floats c) float d) would float If my wife has a cold, I usually it. a) caught b) will catch c) catch d) catches if the hurrigane Miami, thousands of people might have lost their lives. a) had hit b) would hit c) has hit d) hit If I have enough money, I a new pair of shoes. a) would have bought b) buy c) would buy d) will buy You couldn't visit any country if you ... a passport. c) hadn't had b) didn't have a) don't have d) had if heguilty, he would have gone to jall for 30 years. c) had been found a) had found b) was found d) found Water if the temperature fails below zero. d) frozen a) freezes b) will freeze c) freeze If it fine tomorrow, we may go for a swim. c) would be d) is a) were b) will be If the sun ____ us heat and light, we would die. d) gave c) gives a) doesn't give b) didn't give



He was not wearing a motorc	ycle helmet. If he had crashed	into that car L
killed.		-21, U6
a) would have	b) will have	
c) would have been	d) wouldn't hav	e been
12 If he's angry, his face always	bright red.	
a) goes b) will g	0 () (0	d) went
73 The kidnappers won't release to	the child if the ransom	Threfit
b) pays	c) is paid	mily to make
74 If you had put that bottle of w	ater in the freezer, it	d) isn't paid
u) (all 13	b) will turn	nito ice.
c) would have turned	d) turned	
If you want to stay at a luxuriou a) should b) will	Is hotel, you	Al. es
folf I 5 million pou	c) won't	d) need
a villa of my own.	nds tolllollow, Id leave my c	rowded street and h
a) had had b) have		
If you wash woolen clothes in the	c) had	d) was having
	Christian .	·
a) will visit b) am visi	c) can shrink	d) shrink
a) will visit b) am visi	end, i my grandm	other.
If you I'd have neve	r spoken to ver	d) would visit
a) had apologised	spoken to you again.	
c) apologised	b) hadn't apolog	ised
• If the money he had	d) didn't apologi	SA
a) had b) been	enough, he would have box	Oht the en
b) been	c) had been	
		d) were
terri de la companya		
	*	
4. 00	28.4	
A STATE OF THE STA	Branch of the	
6	1-16, 15	

Advanced & Open General Exercises

hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or de

¥	dell irom a, b, c or d	•
	How money do you earn in a w	Vanle?
	b)	
	c) many	b) long
2	Politicsa dirty game.	d) much
Ī	a) have	Las
	c) are	b) is
	We are all eager to increase our	d) were
ı	a) knowledgeable	
	c) knowledge	b) knowledges
	Six people lost their in the accid	d) know
ı	a) lives	
ı	c) a life	b) life
9	My children likebut I prefer the	d) the life
ı	a) sea	
ı	c) a sea	b) the sea
ı	Theard news in the morning.	d) some sea
ı	a) any	b) those
ı	c) these	d) this
7	My uncle is a kind man. He always provides	with food 1
ı	a) the blind	b) the blinds
ı	c) any blinds	d) some blind
8	The Journal has published aon	
ı	a) researches	b) research
ı,	c) piece of research	d) researching
E	Ais absolutely essential for succ	ess in the show business.
ı	a) luck	b) bit of luck
	c) lucky	d) pieces of luck
	Have you bought the?	
	and grocery	b) grocery
	c) groceries	d) two grocery

	hanging in the cupboard.
11 A pair of trousers	b) were
a) have been	d) is
c) are	on the mountain.
	b) a few
a) no	d) none
c) many	
1 feel like going out tonig	b) club
a) night	d) dancing
c) entertainment	
Sorry for being late, but I a) work	
c) labour	b) task
	d) job
Thanks for a great weeker a) hospitality	
c) good time	b) enjoyment
	d) fun
When the police arrived, was them	
c) him or her	b) it
	d) him
a) injuries	uckily it didn't suffer serious
c) damage	b) damages
	d) injury
In order to prove he is inn a) evidence	ocent, we must find some
c) information	b) knowledge
a) clothing	d) means I have spilled some juice on the floor
c) clothes	b) a cloth
a) too much	d) a clothing . mathematics is taught in schools.
c) too many	b) few
	d) several
1	

Open Book General Exercises on Units 13 & 14)

hoose	wer from a, b, c or d		
She specialises in a) historic	novels set in	= -1-	
a) historic	b) historical	eighteenth-century i	England,
There is a Saudi Arabi	an proverb which ha	c) historian	d) history
There is a Saudi Arabi in stone.	, and which no	lds that what is learn	ed in youth is
a) covered	b) carved		
The Taj Mahal is a hist	orical	c) craved	d) curved
a) moment	b) memory		
The study of language	e can help to illumina	c) monument	d) mount
here means	e can help to illumina	te now the human n	nind works. Illuminate
a) shine light on			
b) use lights for a spe	cial occasion		
c) make something e			
d) use science to find			
	s working on various	Hinre to annual	
into the a	tmosphere	ways to encourage	countries reduce ga
a) emission		c) consuming	d) forming
The of the s			
a) rails	b) lines	c) rays	•
	•		d) lights
He has a house in Cai a) may be	·	c) can't be	d) is
	b) must be		u) 15
He hasn't eaten for he			d) can't be
a) must be	b) should be		
I'm not sure where m	y keys are, but I	b) can't have lef	
a) should have left			
c) must have left		d) may have lef	
Ali is a brilliant surge	on. Hea c	lever stadent.	
a) must be		b) can't be	100
c) must have been		d) can't have be	ren 4-
			Ge

		on the	rocks.
a) should slip	als in the mountains,) b) would slip	c) slipped	d) will at
12 If Rasha	her homework, the	e teacher will give her b) forgets	a rest High
a) forgot		d) is forgettin	o .
c) has forgotten		a) is joigettiin	Storda
ne should have re	eceived my e-mail if h	e c) had been	esterday evening
a) was	b) were		d) would be
19 If the parents		children would be very	
a) bought	b) had bought	c) buy	d) will buy
al had torn		tle if they	off the labels,
18 The bank	b) hadn't torn	c) tear	d) didn't tear
months.	the company 100,00	0 pounds if they repai	id the money with
a) lent			
c) can lend		b) would have	lent
em it		d) would lend	
a) traveller	neone who regularly t	travels between work	and home.
-1 414461161	D) Competitor	-1 ·	d) contractor
1 collect postcards wa) paper	hich I keep in a	box.	
19 The river can be	b) card	c) cardboard	d) wood
The river can be used a) wide	d by many ships beca	use of its	- / #1000
20 Some addition	b) width	c) widening	d) widened
Some additives are a a) harden	dded to the cement i	to the con	G) Widened
• Fynarts south and	b) drop	c) stav	crete quickly.
Experts say that the final role	irst of dri	ving is to pay attend	d) go
# The immediate	b) rail	c) reel	n.
The importance of say	ing "please" and "tha	Dk vou"une	d) rufe
The importance of say a) drilled	b) pulled	s) call a	into us as chia:
Rubbish bags are mad	le of plastic	frame de	d) felled
Rubbish bags are mad a) reformed Scientists bellow the	b) reproduced	"" Irom old packagin	g material.
Scientists believe that g	lobal warming is male	c) reputed	d) recycled
Scientists believe that g a) fuels The new botel is in a re	b) products	iny caused by burning	fossil
The new hotel is in a po	eculiar	c) soil	d) shapes
The new hotel is in a po	b) sight	verlooking the sea.	
68		c) view	d) scene

He happy	when his cat disappe	ared.	Jnits (13&14)
c) must have been She has been chosen.	as the best ambassad	b) might have to	een een
a) must speak c) can't speak Oil floats when it		b) must have sp d) will speak	many languages. Poken
a) poured if you are cold,	b) pours	c) is poured	d) will pour
a) puts f heso bu	b) will you put isy, he would take a b	c) will put reak.	d) put
a) wasn't	b) had	c) had been	d) is

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Leaning Tower of Pisa is one of the ancient wonders of the world because it leans. Although it was designed to be perfectly vertical, it started to lean during construction. However, even without this famous characteristic, this building would still be one of the most remarkable architectural structures from medieval Europe. It stands at 60 metres high and until 1990 was leaning at about a 10-degree angle. The construction of the Tower of Pisa began in August 1173 and continued for about 200 years due to the attacks of a series of wars. Till today, the name of the architect is a mystery.

Many ideas have been suggested to straighten the Tower of Pisa, including taking it apart stone by stone and rebuilding it at a different location. In the 1920s the foundations of the tower were injected with cement grouting that has stabilised the tower to some extent. A successful restoration work, which was undertaken from 1999 to 2001, stabilised the tower. Engineers placed weights on the structure's north end, while at the same time extracting soil from below, on the structure's north end, while at the same time extracting soil from below, causing it to slowly sink back in that direction. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still leans causing it to slowly sink back in that direction. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still leans causing it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees. Engineers believe it will stay for at south, but now it does so at just 3.99 degrees.

			-	h 4	COL	ď
Channatha	correct answel	' from	4	D, 1		

Choose the correct and		
The architect of the Tower of Pisa is b) well-known	c) unknown	d) kept a sec
The Tower of Pisa is not likely to fall because		
a) the restoration work rebuilt it		
b) the restoration work stopped its leaning	in the foundation	5
c) the restoration work put cement grouting	J III the too	
d) the restoration work reduced its leaning	3	
Why did it take a long time to build the Town	er:	داد مؤسی
a) Because it was difficult to build.	b) Because of la	-
c) Because the war stopped building it.	d) Because it lea	ins.
What does the underlined word "that" refer t	to?	
a) North. b) South.	c) East.	d) West.
So Why didn't the tower fall down?		
a) It is well-built.		
b) It is made of concrete.		
c) The engineers could reduce its leaning.		
d) Because it was made a long time ago.		
36 Why do you think the Pisa Tower leans?		
a) It was designed like that.	b) It is made of b	and annealist.
c) Its architect is unknown.		
The process of trying to keep the Pisa Tower	d) There was a m	nistake buildingi
a) 200 years		
c) eighty years	b) fifty years	
One of the following wasn't a suggestion to f	d) one hundred	years
a) Taking it apart stone by stone.	ix the Pisa Tower.	
b) Building a concrete Tower beside it.		
c) Placing weights on the state of the		
c) Placing weights on the structure's north en	nd.	
d) injecting the foundations of the Tower were From the passage, find a synonym to the wor	re with cement are	usina
	d(s) "carried out"?	uting.
Engineers believe ab . T	c) Extraction	42
a) it leans at just a go of	a few hundred	d) Architectur
Engineers believe the Tower will stay for at least a) it leans at just 3.99 degrees b) engineers failed to the	red year	s because
b) engineers failed in their restoration work c) it was rebuilt in 2001		
d) it took about 200 years to build it		
and about 200 years to build it		

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why did the Princess Insist on going to Zenda?
 - Because she wanted to fight the Duke.
 - b) Because the King was injured.
 - Because the Duke invited her.
 - a) Because Sapt wanted her to come.
- What did Rassendyll consider the strangest thing in the history of any country?
 - a) The war between him and the Duke,
 - b) His offer to marry the Princess.
 - the plan between him and Rupert.
 - d) His fight with Rupert,
- How did Rassendyll go down into the water?
 - al He climbed down a ladder.
 - b) He jumped into the water.
 - r) He took the stairs.
 - d) He climbed down using a rope.
- What helped Rassendyll not to be seen in the water?
 - a) He was hidden.

b) It was so dark.

() Nobody was in the moat.

- d) All the Duke's men were away.
- How did Rassendyll kill Max Hoif?
 - a) He stabbed him with a knife.

b) He shot him.

c) He fought him with a sword.

- d) He hit him with a hard stick.
- What showed that the King was in great despair in his imprisonment?
 - a) He told Detchard he didn't want to eat.
 - b) He didn't want to meet anyone.
 - c) He asked Detchard why Michael didn't kill him.
 - d) He asked Detchard to put him in prison
- What did Sapt do to tell the seven men to come and take Max's body?
 - a) He signed to them.

b) He whistled to them.

c) He used flashes from a torch.

d) He called out in a loud voice.

- What loses did Rupert have at the end of the fight?
 - a) Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed.
 - b) De Gautet and Detchard were both killed.
 - c) He lost nothing.
 - d) Three of his men were killed.
- 49 How was the relation between Michael and Rupert not a good one?
 - a) Rupert said that he was ready to arrest him.
 - b) Rupert said that he always fought with him.
 - c) Rupert said he injured him before.
 - d) Rupert said he nearly killed him the night before.
- 50 What did the doctor advise the Duke to
 - a) keep the King in prison

b) stay with the King

c) take the King to hospital

d) set the King free at once

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

51 Many people support space exploration because we may need to live in space in future.

> البيعم الكثير من الناس اكتشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش في الفضاء في المستقبل. ـأينهم الكثير من الناس اختراع الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش في الفضاء في المستقبل. دايزهم الكثير من الناس استكشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش في الفضاء في المستقبل. «أيتم الكثير من الناس استكشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش في الفضاء في المستقبل.

Choose the correct English translation:

بغرايعي حقى لأسلوبه الفريد في الأدب المصري.

- a) Yehia Haqqi is respectful for his unique style in the Egyptian Literature.
- b) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in the Egyptian Literature. c) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in the Egypt Literature.
- d) Yehia Haqqi is respected for his unique style in Egyptian Literature.

Choose the correct answer:

- ss Which sentence is correct?
 - a) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for each the individual and the patrice.
 - b) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for both the individual and the national an

 - c) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for the entire individual and the part. d) Decent education builds a brilliant tomorrow for all the individual and the native

Units 15&16



Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

	1
absorb (v) (ed)	بمثمي
ancestors (n)	اسلاف
beneath (prep)	أسفل
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور
centigrade (n)	ملوية
correspondent (n)	مراسل
degree (n)	درجة
depression (n)	الكساد/انخفاض/ركود
directly (adv)	مباشرة
drought (n)	الجفاف
eclipse (n) (v) (d)	كسوف <i>اخسوف ا</i> تنكسف
evil (n) (adj)	شراشرير
fire (n) (v) (d)	ثار - حريق/يطلق الرصاص
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/يجبر/يرغم
greed (n)	The statement of the st
harmful (adj)	and torque despination saids. All the said of the said
heat (n) (v) (ed)	حرارة/يسفن
lightning (n)	البرق
7 111	

merchant (n)	تاجر
Mexico (n)	Office and and only control on the second of
northern (adj)	بندالی
occur (v) (red)	deal with "discrepance mann many read laborative above 400 to 400
pearl (n)	Merchanista Company (Company Company C
phenomenon (n)	ظاهرة (مفرد)
publicity (n)	شيوع اشعرة إعلامية
rainfall (n)	سقوط المطر
scorpion (n)	عقرب
sting (n) (v)	لدغة/يلدغ
success (n)	تجاح
sunburn (n)	حرق الشعس
throw away (v)	يلقى
treat (v) (ed)	كالع
trick (n) (v) (ed)	خدعةايخدع
ultraviolet rays (n)	أشعة غوق بنفسجية
violent (adj)	عنيف





Helpful Vocabulary

atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوى	electrical storm (n)	علصفة كمربية
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهجم على	emergency (n)	دالة طوارئ
attention (n)	اهتمام/عناية	exist (v) (ed)	يوجه
average (n)	متوسط/معدل	extreme (adj)	عيمة
bail lightning (n)	كرة البرق	eyesight (n)	بصو
block (v) (ed)	يسد/يعوق	fear (n) (v) (ed)	دوف/يخاف
bright (adj)	ساطع/مضيء	flash (n) (v) (ed)	وميض/يومض
cause (v) (d)	تسب	float (v) (ed)	
cave (n)	كهف	flood (n) (v) (ed)	يطقو
century (n)	قرن	freeze (v)	فيضان/يفيض
chase (v) (d)	يطارد	gases (n)	عمبيا/عمبتي
common (adj)	عام/شائع		غازات
Creature (n)	مخلوق	general (adj)	ple
cure (n) (v) (d)	- It was no statement on the sea of the space	get rid of (v)	يتخلص من
curved (adj)	علاج/يعالج	geyser (n)	نبع ماء حار
decision (n)	ساقه/نِعند	give out (v)	تطلق/ترسل/تذرج
discussion (n)	Apple on the second of the second	grapes (n)	عنب/عناقيد
diver (n)	TABLE	Influential (adj)	مؤثر
economy (n)	velge:	.insect (n)	دشرة
274	- Ustaile	jewellery (n)	جواهر <i>احت</i> لی
//4			

andscape (n)	and a war	Units	(15816)
	منظر طبيعي/تضاريس	safely (adv)	أمقن
RR (v) (ed)	يرنع	serious (adj)	
measure (v) (d)	4 0.11 2		<u>نطير/جاد</u>
nature (n)	سيتي	skin (n)	بل <i>دابشر</i> ة
	طبيعة	snow (n)	ئنج
_{necklace} (n)	ع <u>قد/قلا</u> دة	southern (adj)	چنوبی
nelghbourhood (n)	الحيرة/الحي	speed (n)	سرعة
ysters (n)	مدار	steal (n) (v)	
eriod (n)	فترة	storm chasers (n)	سرقة/يسرق
emanently (adv)	بشكل مائم		متعقبو العواصف
ersuade (v) (d)		summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
	يقنع	surface (n)	سطح
net (n)	كوكب	temperature (n)	برجة الحرارة
isonous (adj)	أسلم	tide (n)	المد والجزير
wer (n)	āgā	truth (n)	عقيقة
sentation (n)	عرض/تقديم	volcano (n)	بركان
vate (adj)	خصوصی	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
olic (adj)	علم	waves (n)	أمواج
(adj)	تادر	· weather forecast (n)	النشرة الجوية
'n)	elech	wedding (n)	زواج/عقد قران
rd (v) (ed)	يسجل/پدون	wrath (n)	القضب

Expressions & Idioms

a badly paid job	بظيفة ذات عائد منخفض
a private person	شخص كتوم
at the sight of	عند رؤية
(be) respected for	يمترم من أجل
(be) stung by a scorp	يئلدغ من عقرب on
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
cause/do harm to	يضر/يؤدي
cause/do damage to	يسېپ ممارًا ك
change his mind	يفير رايه
come into sight	يظمر/يتضح
damage eyesight	يؤذى البصر
do the shopping	يتسوق
fire guns at	يطلق النار على
go darker	يصبح داكنا

go diving	ينعب للغوص
go into town	ينعب إلى المدينة
go swimming	يمارس للسباحة
have problems with	لييه مشاكل في
keep children off	يبعد الأطفال عن
lift him off his feet	ترفعه من على الأرض
look straight at	ينظر مباشرة إلى
make noise	بحدث ضوضاء
on their journey to	أثناء سفرهم إلى
take pride in	يتبامى/يتفاذر بــ
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
throw into the sea	 يرمي في البحر
wear sun cream	يضع كريم الشمس
wear warm clothes	 يرتدى ملابس ثقيلة

Phrases & Prepositions

block out/off	يحجب/يعوق
careful with	حريص بشأن
correspondent for	مراسل ا
difference in	اختلاف في
explanation for	تفسیر ا
find out about	يكتشف عن
go out	المنظمين على بديد بعد بالمنطقية المنطقية المنطقية المنطقية المنطقية المنطقية المنطقية المنطقة المنطقة المنطقة ا

harmful to	ضار ك
known to	معروف لدی
report from	
return to	تقرير من
take over	پرجع إلى
and the same of th	يستولى على
warn about	يمترعن

Derivatives

Ver	b	Noun			
	1			Adj	ective
absorb		absorption	امتصلص	absorbent	ملص/نشاف
correspond	يراسل محفياً	correspondent correspondence	مراسل مراسلة		
depress	يحزن/يصيب بالكسا <i>د</i>	depression ارکوه		depressed	مکتلب/مصاب بکساد
dive	يغوص/يغطس	diver	غواص	** ***	ske desprendigen to sel de
exist	يوجد	existence	4929	existent	
force	يجبرايرغم	force	قوة	forceful	ئشيط <i>ا اقوى ا</i> فعال
		greed	طمع/جشع	greedy	طماع/جشع
harm	يۇنى/يضر	harm	ضرو	harmful harmless	<i>شار</i> غیر شار
hide	يختبئ/يخفي	hiding	إخفاء/اختباء	hidden	مختبئ/مخفی
occur	يحنث	occurrence	حدوث	dy top depty an last	the same of the task down to the
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	
publicise	يعلن/يقوم بالدعاية	مية publicity	شيوع/شعرة إعلا	public	**************************************
revise	يرلجع	revision	مراجعة	revised	مراجع
sting	يندغ	sting	32.1	stinging	لاسع/لانع
treat	سیاح	treatment	علاج	treated	معالج
Street, or other street		violence	عنف	violent	عنيف
trick	ne wanter same	trickery	خديعة/خداع	tricky	مخادع/خادع
Warn		warning	تعنير	warning	محثر
Maili	The same and the s	wealth	ثروة	wealthy	ئرى

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانب Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
absorb	يمتص	soak up	abstain	يذرج
ancestor	جد/سلف	predecessor	descendant اخلف	دفيد
average	متوسط/معدل	standard	exception	استثنا
depression	الكساد/انخقاض/ركود	bankruptcy	recovery	تعافى
drought	الجفاف	dryness	abundance	غزارة
flash	وميض	blaze	darkness	ظلام
harmful	ضار	damaging	helpful	مفيد
influential	مؤثر	powerful	ى معنى insignificant	غير ذ
occur	يحدث	happen	precede &	يسبق
permanently	بشكل دائم	forever	temporarily L	مؤقث
publicity	شيوع/شمرة إعلامية	propaganda	obscurity ن	غموه
sting	يلدغ	bite	cure 8	يعالج
summarise	يلقص	sum up	expand يوسع	يمدا
surface	سیملح سیملح	exterior	interior J	الداخ
treat	يعالج	cure	injure	يؤذى
trick	خدمة/يخدع	cheat	protect	يتمو
violent	عنيف	flerce	gentle	لطية
wealthy	فري	affluent	destitute	معده

(Units (15&16)

Important Language Notes

The points of the compass

الجمات الأصلية هي: (north – south – east – west) ولتدويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern): The writer grew up in the north of France.

Alex is a famous tourist city in northern Egypt.

لاحظ ايضًا استخدام (northerly – southerly – easterly – westerly) بمعنى (في اتجاها: The ship was fast sailing in a northerly direction.

Adjectives with weather phenomena

يمكن استخدام بعض الصفات مع طواهر الطقس للتعبير عن شدة الظلمرة وقد تختلف الصفة من ظاهرة لأخرى:

heavy rain

عواصف عنيفة

high temperature

strong wind درجة حرارة عالية

رياح عاتبة

high waves

أمواج عالية

Additional Language Notes



pay (paid/paid)

I was surprised at the amount of money which I had to pay the mechanic.

الم ينغع ≯ l paid the bill.

Pay for

يدفع ثمن سلعة

I insisted on paying for the meal I had with my brother.

pay (in) cash

يدفع نقنا

> Some people think that paying in cash is safer than credit cards.

ينقع بواسطة

pay by (cheque/credit card/ > The hotel said that I mustn't pay by cheque; they only accept cash.

pay a visit

Met

I recommended my friends to pay a visit to the art exhibition.

The New Suez Canal Project had received 2 publicity دعاية/شعرة إعلامية widespread publicity. ▶ Big companies spend billions of dollars a year on advertising معاية/إعلان بغرض البيع advertising. Experts say that we shouldn't believe all the propaganda دعاية سناسية political propaganda. A violent gang robbed the National Bank yesterday, پستب/پسرق (المكان أو الشخص) (rob steal بيسرق (الشيء المسروق) ► Thieves stole millions of dollars and ran away. rare This is one of the rarest plants in the collection.

• تادر (غیر شانع/غیر مألوف جدًا) scarce Fresh water and medicines were scarce in the war شحيح/قليل (صعب الحصول عليه) area. force ▶ The bad weather forced us to cancel the trip. يجبر (يتبعما (المصدر .inf cause ▶ The earthquake caused many people to leave يسبب (يتبعها (المصدر .to + inf)) their houses. make The wind made the ship change its route. يجعل (يتبعها (المصدر بدون (to))

Phenomena
 Phenomena
 Phenomena
 Phenomena
 Phenomena
 Phenomenal
 Pheno

drought

no rain for months.

A draught of cold air blew in the room through

Vocabulary Exercises

(hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Key voors and			
	shouldn't have	b) done		
7	a) thrown	b) done their kids about right	ot. I need it to return	this shirt.
1	parents have to teach	their kids about state.	c) brought	d) taken
	a) devil	hlevil	and wrong, good an	d
3	Heleft the local paper	to become a	pule	d) imaginary
	a) correspond	b) correspondence ofabout	for a famous inter	national newspaper.
ŧ	There has been a lot	ofahout	the now files	d) correspondently
	stories, TV and radio a	dvertisements.	the new film; newsp	paper and magazine
	a) publication	b) public	c) publicise	d\ muhlister
Í		- 1114 CHOIC [1]3	Officially care a fe	man Tradition
	al alice stors	or granddaughters	c) children	محمله التجامل محمد الما
Í	me 101 pt	ower sometimes drives	s politicians to do ille	gal actions.
	a) greed	b) value	c) vice	d) envy
1	is a long p	period when there is no	ot a lot of business ac	tivity.
		b) Depression		
•		iable small white round	d object that forms in	side an oyster and is
	used in jewellery.			15 14
	a) diamond	b) stone	c) peari	d) necklace
7		ned that the annual	was lower	this year than ever
	before.	e s.tr	c) dew	d) rainfall
4	a) fluid	b) liquid some small c		-
ľ		b) treated	c) made	d) attacked
4	a) forced	person who buys and s		
	alou	4-3-morehant	E) ODSELACI	m) iesearchet
1	The hee's	had left a red mark on	my arm and it took t	ime to heal.
	2144.2	e. s	C) Still 3	d) sink
	A is a dar	gerous insect as it has	a poisonous sting.	d) butterfly
				d) butterny
	The gang had to thin	k of a	e) trick	d) truck
	a) track	b) speck	2,1110.1	6

PART is a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plan d) Drought and animals to live. c) Desert ** The army soldiers their guns at the enemy to stop the attack. b) Rainfall d) stopped c) stood b) tired a) fired The city was destroyed by high waves andstorms. d) severe b) violent The atmosphere absorbs most of the sun's rays. d) incredible c) harmful a) acceptable b) harmless The children were afraid when they saw the flash of that lit up the sky. d) lightning c) lighting a) fighting b) sighting t is believed that caffeine is quickly into the bloodstream. a) absorbed b) disappeared c) appeared d) gone Accidents more frequently when the roads are busy. b) occur d) come in c) cause A/An of the sun is an unusual event that a lot of worldwide media cover. a) ecstasy . b) storm c) eclipse d) appearance 23 We all agree that violence in our society is a new and unacceptable a) phenomenon b) look c) response The sun gives out X-rays and ... rays that can be harmful to us. d) view b) beta 25 The young couple stood on the bridge, looking at the river and talking c) alpha Mohamed Salah has become a/an who is admired all over the world. Temperatures are measured either In or Fahrenheit. d) personality The driver wasresponsible for the accident as he was having drugs. c) angles The new company has achieved considerable in the electronics market b) failure You should use a sunscreen to prevent on the beach. d) sorrow c) sunburn d) sunset

The chef said that the cold Antibiotics are widel	e dish should be		C Unite (150.15)
a) cold Antibiotics are widel a) heal	b) heater	red at a high	Onits (15&16)
Antibiotics are widel	y used to	c) stove	for 10 minutes.
a) heal	bitrast	bacterial infection	d) heat
		c) detect	
(Helpful Vocabulary &	Language Notes		d) expect
Amanus	uallywa		oower, etc. than he needs.
Nareedy	b) sants to have m	ore money, food	20Mor start .
# l'il report you to the	b) speedy police, if I catch you	c) thirsty	di hunani ne needs.
a) robbing	police, if I catch you	things	u) nungry
a) robbing Doctors say that it is a) heal	b) stealing	c) taking	d) aptting
* Doctors say that it is	better to prevent rath	er than	diseases
a) near	b) injure	c) cure	d) stop
	THE COULTED DESIGN		
arsoutherry	D) South	c) the couth	93
o me moenting	sent into space	Was a dog named	Laika
a) macnine	b) man	c) creature	d) robot
• hospital:	s can afford to pay mu	ch higher salaries	than state-run hospitals
a) Private	b) Special	c) General	d) Public
The mountaineers s	pent the night in a na	arrow	to complete their climb
towards the summit	•		
a) cottage	b) tunnel	c) cave	d) palace
The gardener used a	kind of poison to kill t	the rats that	the garden.
a) attracted	b) attended		d) attacked
The fath	er bought for my moth	n <mark>er w</mark> as very valua	ble because it was made
of gold.			
a) pearl	b) necklace	c) material	d) gloves
Samy didn't want to	come to the party at fi	irst, but we	him to come with us.
41-	1.1	Cl fillion	u) acoatea
The workers objects	ed to the to	close down the	factory as they lost their
Jobs,		c) invitation	d) precision
a) decision	b) percussion	C) IIIVITATION	-
The press plays an in	nportant role in rormii	c) public	d) popular
a) private	b) special	hotographers.	
Famous artists are u	easily	c) looked	d) chased
a) ran	b) attacked		(283)
			103

12	Palan 1			by an electric fault
		Aut Gro of the	factory was	d) flashed
ļ ³¹	47 The police reporte a) reasoned	b) caused	c) done	by an electric fault, d) flashed
	a) site	a natural spring that	loud noises and see b	d) sight bright flashes of light, d) lightning steam suddenly into t
	a) starm	b) carthauake	c) geyser	d) volcano
	51 Iceland is known fo	or its extinct	which are great ge	eological marvels,
	a) storms	b) earthquakes	c) waves	d) volcanoes
	52 Bad dreams are fair			
	a) famous	b) common	c) known	d) commonly
	dioxide.	setting new laws to	reduce harmful	such as carb
	a) substances	b) liquids	c) solids	d) gases
	54 They are driving in a	directio	n from Cairo towards	Assuit and Sohao.
	a) southerly	b) southern	c) south	d) porthern
	55 Not all people are in	terested in weather.	which try	to predict the future
	Most people who we	rorecasts are born in villages li	C COLLINS	W.A 40
	a) landscape	b) landslide	c) landsite	wherever they liv
	S7 Water pollution in Eg	ypt has become a	Droblem	d) land storm
	a) interesting	b) joyful	c) harmless	
	Sa Volcanoes, waves and	storms are	of matrices	d) serious
	a) energies 59 weather of a) Extreme	D) Strengths		d) firms
	a) Extreme	b) Extremely	a chect on the envir	onment.
- (I have worked in a lot a) rewarded	of different places	c) Extra	d) Fine
	a) rewarded	b) accepted	would like a me	orelob.
6	1 The of the	water in the near	c) temporary	d) permanent
	- 1 hasi	presid	as just right for swin	Mino
62	Storm are j	people who find and	c) temperature d follow storms.	d) centigrade
(28	a) chasers	o) purchasers	c) sellers.	d) buyers

evolessions, idio	ms, Prepositions, Deri	vatives, Synonyms & Ant the word" ".	onyma
word "destitu	ute" is an antonym to t	the word " ",	
The World	b) wealthy	c) healthy ousinessman in the state c) uninfluenced	d) sound
usey's uncle is a	rich and b	ousinessman in the state	, a stal
Mary	b) Influenced	c) uninfluenced	d) influential
and DEODIE are	allaid that the right is	om the sun might go	permanently
during an eclipse	in I		
		c) In	d) out
admire nii	m because he always.	the truth.	
			d) tells
a and of Sam	ws failtre to join the i	universityhis	s family.
Daggorant	ni debressing	Clastication	d) presses
Mamia opened h	er sister's letter	mistake.	
5 mile	b) by	CIII	d) for
The verb "soak U	p" is a synonym to the	verb"	
-1 ovit	b) consume	c) absorb	d) breathe
a trate and his wife	have taken up	and they love it.	
t all an	h) diving	c) diver	d) driver
n Dr Fl Baz is knov	vnall the s	clentists who are interes	sted in remote sensing.
	1. 1. a.f.	el about	ai to
The verb "cheat"	is similar in meaning	to the verb ""	
_ h desired a	h protect	CIDICACIIC	_,
Some companie	to se	ell their products using a	dvertisements.
al talele	h) trickery	CLEUCKEO	u) tractable
NOur neighbour	great pride	In his children's achieve	ements.
- A - D	la l'urene	citakes	u) 03319113
The minister had	d a conference with th	e correspondents	foreign newspapers.
3) 60-	h) off	Clabour	My III
Some people do	ouht the	filfe at the very bottom	of the ocean.
at out of	Li avietanca	C) GYISIGA	m) everative
The American P	resident made a	attack on World H	ealth Organisation due
to the Coronavi	riis		
a) sting	h) ctung	c) stinging	d) string
The tree outside	the window blocks	the sun.	
a) in	5) out	C) Over	d) down
As we drive an	the Suez Canal	Into sight.	
Alexander and the second	1.5	C) gare	d) went
The advert "tem	u. g he the C	pposite of the adverb "	# ************************************
a) gradually	b) mistakenly	c) lively	d) permanently
3-4ddally	Dittio		Gas
			■ 39 €

Configure - School

Advanced & Open The young mother went into Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: d) attention 2 The bank guard was because of surfing the net during work time. a) laughter a) fired d) noticed Sharm El Sheikh is considered the of Egypt's resorts. b) landslide a) diamond d) pearl c) treasury He'll try everyin the book to win the next match. b) cheat a) trap d) imposter c) trick Babbage's first model of a calculator was the of the modern computer b) ancestor a) branch c) root d) original The lifeguard moved likeand saved the little girl from drowning. a) lightning b) thunder c) wave d) tide Harry Potter was a great book publishing as it sold millions of copies over the world. a) elite b) figure c) phenomenon d) shape The new computer has a lot of to attach printers, speakers or other device b) ports c) exits d) entrances Parents should try to create a/an of calm and security for their children b) weather c) temperature The politician's comments created a/an of protest in the media. c) tornado b) hurricane

d) earthquake

717

by the new book tha	Units (15&16)
14BSOLDER	b) and track of time.
hattached	b) attacked
The new educational system simplified the	d) attributed
the new educational system simplified the	by a process to a certain
acentigrade	o) degree
The popularity of television led to the	d) export
a) hurricane	d) export of the radio as a means of entertainment.
declipse	u) tornado
alf you keep on borrowing, you are only	d) sunshine postponing the day when you
have to pay it all back.	postponing the day when you
a) ill	b) devil
¿) good	d) evil
The new law comes intoas fr	'Om midnight tomorrow
a) force	b) influence
c) prospect	d) infect
Ithink chilli peppers and some spices ad	
a) snow	b) heat
c) detest	d) respect
When we were kids, a trip to the beach v	
a) fight	b) threat
c) heal	d) treat
• Some factory owners complain that chea	p imported goods arethe market.
a) reducing	b) flooding
c)drying	d) wetting
The of the food in this restau	ırant made it look very delicious.
a)inspection	b) expectation
c) presentation	. d) recipe
Our good holiday seemed to be over in	@ actifications and the #
a) lightning	D) triuliuei
c) scene	d) flash
-4116	



Unit (15)

Wish / If only

_	181311 / 11 0111 /	
	+ past simple —— refers to the present	
Wish & If only	+ past perfect refers to the past	
	+ would/could refers to the future	
ون مختلفًا،	wish + past simpl للتمني أو الندم في المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمني أن يكر	0

+ Wish للتمنى أو الندم في المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلفًا.

- I wish he were/was with us now.
- I wish I lived near my school.

were/was مع l/he/she/it و were فقط مع were/was مع they/we/you

يُسْتُنِم Wish + Could للتَمنَى أو النَّمِ في المضارع بِخُصوص عدم القِيرَة على فعل شيء.

- I wish he could know Spanish.
- I wish I could make my own clothes.

. نيتغدم Wish + past perfect للندم عن شيء حدث أو لم يحدث في الماضي، I wish he hadn't insuited his friend.

انستندم Wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة في تغيير مستقبلي غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة في التعبير عن عدم

I wish they would build a new station near my home.

الرضا أو الحرِّن،

- · نستندم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا -١/We.
- If only he would help me. I wish I could play squash.

He wishes he could play tennis.

أُ عَنْدُ اسْتَخْدَام Wish وبعدها Would لابد أن يكون الفاعلين مختلفين مثل:

He wishes he would play tennis.

* تسر could بعد Wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة

I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to ...) I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ...)

أ سُنْنِم (Could have + P.P.) بدلا من الماضي التام للتعبير عن (ندم) عن موقف في الماضي. If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

My brother wishes to have a better Job..

ا انا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish ياتي . o+ inf



Unit (16)

Alternatives to using if

ال بدائل

41	tern	0.6	Mo
Al	gwrn	a C	AR

Milatinative		
provided that	1	Example
On condition that As long as (حالة أولى وثانية)	جملة	He can go and play with his friends, provided/on condition (that)/as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose/Supposing/ Imagine (that)	جملة	► Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) you met the President, what would you ask him to do?
Unless		جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية) + فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)
	I can't buy the	car unless I have enough money.
Without	n/v.lng	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	▶ But for doctors, we might die.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	▶ Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
(حالة اولى او ثانية) Should	Subj. + Inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were apis are	Subj. + n/adj.	▶ Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were this are	Subj. + to + inf.	▶ Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had atto atta	Subj. + P.P.	→ Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
if it weren't for (عاله ثانية)	n/v.lng	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for	n/v.ing	▶ If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.

- حاصرس هدا العام



Adjectives

مى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الذي بعدها جمعًا.

He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

v. to be بناتي قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be

رَيْنِ الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية:

- be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.
- ▶ She is beautiful.

▶ The food tastes good.

المقاد الأثية لا يأتي بعدها أسماء:

- Afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.
- They are still alive.

He was so exhausted that he fell asleep at his desk

·لمنات الآتية يأتي بعدها اسم:

▶ chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

·بَسُ الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

• old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.

Order of Adjectives

ترتيب الصفات

	opinion			Fact a	djective		opposition up 24 2 mag	Perker to color respects exercises	noun
		size	age	shape	colour	origin	material	trend for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	10. 11	wooden		table.
						icolidii	Moodel	dinner	table

' أن الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

... a beautiful, white wedding dress



one-syllable adjectives

مغات المقطع الواهد

Pos	itive	Comm		-		2	صفات المقطع الواعد	
			parison		Superlativ	ve		
tall	ملويل	taller	tha	n			في المقارنة نضع	
young	صابير السن	younger	tha	n	the youngest	ed a	adj.+ er + than	
soft	ناعم	softer	tha	n			في التفضيل نضع	
short	قصير	shorter	tha	n	the shortest	ı	the + adj. + est	
large	واسع	larger	tha	n			tile + Buj. + est	
wide	عريض	wider	tha	n	the widest		نا كانت الصفة تنتمى بحرف	
cheap	رځيص	cheaper	tha	n			- r∕st eioi e	
Pos	itive	Compa	rison		Superlative			
big	كبير الحجم	blgger	than	the biggest		كانث الصفة تنتمى بحرف ساكن		
hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the	the hott est		قبله متحرك نضعف الساك	
low	منخفض	lower	than	the	lowest		اً كانت الصفة تنتهى بحرف W قبله	
few	قليل	fewer	than	the	e fewest	يف	o نضع er/est يون تضعيف	
Tv	vo or more	syllable-a	djective	es et	nding in y			
ugly	قبيع	uglier	than	the	ugliest			
easy	سهل	easier	than	the	the easiest the heaviest the happiest		إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين و بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إ	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the			ier/iest	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the				
lucky		luckier	than	the	luckiest			

than + صفة المقارنة

of/in + صفة التفضيل

xamples:

hady is a young boy.

hady is younger than Ehab.

hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

More than two-syllable adjectives

هاه اکثر من مقطعین

Positive		Comparison	Superlative	
		more + الصفة + than	the most + الصفة	
nodern	عصري	more modern than	the most modern	
careful) دریص	more careful than	the most careful	
expensive	بالد	more expensive than	the most expensive	
wonderful	رائع	more wonderful than	the most wonderful	
exciting	مثير	more exciting than	the most exciting	
difficult	جالم	more difficult than	the most difficult	
Interesting	شيق	more interesting than	the most interesting	
beautiful Juy		more beautiful than	the most beautiful	

iamples:

nglish is an interesting subject.

inglish is more interesting than Spanish.

English is the most interesting subject of all languages.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative .

xamples:

hady is a young boy.

hady is younger than Ehab.

hady is the youngest boy in class/of all students.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

More than two-syllable adjectives

هاه اکثر من مقطعین

Positive		Comparison	Superlative	
		more + الصفة + than	the most + الصفة	
nodern	عصري	more modern than	the most modern	
careful) دریص	more careful than	the most careful	
expensive	بالد	more expensive than	the most expensive	
wonderful	رائع	more wonderful than	the most wonderful	
exciting	مثير	more exciting than	the most exciting	
difficult	جالم	more difficult than	the most difficult	
Interesting	شيق	more interesting than	the most interesting	
beautiful Juy		more beautiful than	the most beautiful	

iamples:

nglish is an interesting subject.

inglish is more interesting than Spanish.

English is the most interesting subject of all languages.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative .

Irregular comparatives and superlatives

(Units (15&16)

الصفات الشاذة

Positive			الطفاح الشادة	
		Comparison	Superlative	
good/well	جيد/دسن	better than	the best	
bad/badly	سیی/ردیء	worse than	the worst	
Tittle	قليل	less than		
much/many/a lot of	كثير	more than	the least	
far	يعيد		the most	
		farther/further than	the farthest/furthest	

Examples:

addiction is a bad habit.

Addiction is worse than smoking.

Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj. + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabicisn't as/so difficult as biology.





نستخدم no/never دائمًا في صيغة المقارئة.

No river in the world is longer than the Nile. I've never bought a faster carthan Mercedes.

🔾 نستخدم ever في صيغة التغضيل.

Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever bought.

يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/even قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er أو more

Gold is much/a lot more expensive than salt.

Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

نستخدم iess + adjective + than للمقارنة بين شفصين أو شيلين.

Silver is less expensive than gold. This book is less interesting than that one.

👩 مع التركيبة الأتية نستخدم صفات المقارلة بمعنى (كلما كلم))

The more books you read, the more information you get.

ing forms or the infinitive

The to infinitive is used

 أ- نستخدم () للتعبير عن العدف أو الغرض: لکی To/in order to/so as to He went to the shops to buy some food. ٢- بعد الأفعال الأثية:

arrange/decide/agree/want/expect/ hope/learn/allow/offer/promise/plan /يشتاق advise/appear/prepare/long/ /يجرؤ care/wait/dare/يحاول warn/attempt /ببرمن pretend/prove/يستحق deserve /choose/يضمن manage/fail/guarantee/ /ask/يصمم determine ريمنع wish/forbid /happen/رحمل refuse/threaten/neglect/ /want/need/remind/expect/ plan/allow, etc.

▶ He refused to help his brother.

٣- بعد الأمَّعال الآتية للتعبير عن الرغبة في وقت معين: would like / would love / would/prefer.

I would like to see the manager.

- ویمکن ان ثاتی بعد love/ like/prefer بدون would لتعبر عن الرغبة في وقت معين أو إنها فكرة جيئة.

I like to brush my teeth every day.

٤ - بعد الصفات الدالة على المشاعر والعواطف:

(happy, glad, sorry, surprised, etc.)

She was sorry to miss the conference. too/enough au -o

He's too shy to meet the strangers.

He's clever enough to pass the test.

٦- بعد only للتعبير عن نتيجة غير مرضية.

He came only to meet his friend Ahmed.

the first/second, etc. / next /last / best, etc. +y -Y He was the first to come to the party.

- إذا جله فاعل بعب expect, hope, promise

نستشم [[أw في المضارع و would للماضي

I promise that I will phone him after returning back home.

The -ing form is used

بالم Ving كاسم أول الكلام محل الفاعل.

Swimming strengthens your body

والمعال الأشية:

suggest/enjoy/fancy يتخيل finish/admlt على المادية ال imagine/delay ينكر deny/يؤجل avold/consid continue/discuss/escape/excuse/forgive go/involve بشمل/keep/mention ينكر miss/postpone يؤجل/practise/prevent quit يستدعى/recall يستدعي/recollect/report/rese resist يقاوم/risk يخاطر/save/stand/tolerate understand/appreciate يقدر/spend/waste (time, money, etc.)

They discussed buying a house.

والأنقال الأتية للتعبير عن الرغبة العامة:

dislike, enjoy, hate, like, love. > She likes playing the piano. (رغبه عامة)

مدلتسوات الأنبة:

الا فائدة t's (no) good الا فائدة, it's (no it's (not) worth لا يستحق, what's the use of, a الله can't stand إلا استطيع أن أمنع نفسي من help have difficulty (in), in addition to, as wells have trouble, have a hard/difficult time.do mind / How about...?/ feel like/ There is the state of th لا مشكلة في point in

He is busy doing his homework.

'^{دراف} الجر ماعدا to يأثى بعدها المصدر:

▶ He left the shop without paying, so he WE accused of stealing.

ُ^{الِد}ُ فِنْهُ التَّعْبِيرَاتُ التِّي بِهَا to المال يعتاد على look forward to, be/get used to

get accustomed to معتاد على object to معتاد على admit (to)/take to پعتاد علی, etc.

I'm looking forward to meeting the President ر المدث. الأتية وتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث. Hear, listen, notice, see, watch

I saw them playing football.



verbs + to + Inf. Or v.ing

١- أفعال يأتي بعدها .to + inf أو v.ing بدون تغيير في المعنى.

start / begin/ intend / continue It started raining / to rain heavily.

- ولكن إذا لحق بمنه الأفعال v.ing أو كانت ثدل على المستقبل يأتي بعدها ،to + inf. It's beginning to rain, ▶ He is starting to study.

> He will start to work. ٢- أفعال يأثى بعيما .to + inf أو v.ing ومثاك تغيير في المعثى.

A) stop:

stop + v.ing stop + to + inf.

يتوقف عن فعل شيء لفترة أو يقلع عن الشيء تعامًا. يتوقف عن شيء ليفعل شيلًا آخر (هدف) وغالبًا عندها يكون ماشيًا.

B) remember:

remember + v.ing remember + to + inf

بتذكر أنه فعل شبئًا تم الحيوث أولاً ثم تذكر ثانيًا. متذكر أن يفعل شيء متذكر أولاً ثم يفعل الشيء ثانيًا.

C) forget:

forget + v.ing forget + to + inf.

تم حدوث الشيء أولاً ثم نسيه أو لم يَخْسَبُهُ بعد ذلك غيين أن يفعل الشيء أصلًا فيعتنز أو ينهب ليفعله بعد ذلك

D) regret:

regret + v.ing regret + to + inf.

قعل شناً ثم نيم بعد بُلك بأسف أن يقول شيئًا أو يفعل شيئًا مضطرًا لذلك.

The infinitive without to is used:

تستخيم المصدر فقط بعد الأتي:

- after most modal verbs (can, must, will, etc.). You can leave now if you want.
- after had better / would rather. I'd rather not go out tonight. I'd better stay at home.
- after make / let + object. They made him pay for the damage.
- after hear, listen, notice, see, watch to refer to the whole action.
- saw them play football. (the whole action)
- know and help are followed by a to infinitive or an infinitive without to.
- Could you help me (to) fix the car?

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	
Washing clothes on my hands	s is very tiring. I wish I	a washing marks
MOGI	O Have	T TING
All proved to be an honest pe	rson. I wish Ihim a	liar.
a) had called b) hadn	't called c) called	d) could call
I'm sorry my son gets up so lat	te. I wish he to bec	earlier.
a) had gone b) didn't	t go c) went	d) would go
I regret coming to this country	Luich I	
al had pever come by best a	1 10 1 10	d) could co-
www.ranca co age up Eudlish' i M	ish nea job where	he could use by a
a) didn't get b) had go	ot c) gets	d) would get
It's a pity he didn't do very wel	in his exams. I wish he	harden I e
a) hadn't worked b) had we	orked c) worked	alv.
and we doll I know th	10 Mari Luciele	d) could work
131000 all the Way on the train t	to Assume I all a	d) would know
a) have	Lyould five	d) will book
a) have	, would my around the world.	
Samy told everyone about our r	c) will have	d) had
a) hadn't trusted b) had to	him.	
ineed help badly. If only you	sted c) trusted	d) didn't trust
a) asked b) would a	c) will help	d) could halo
(b) Would a	sk c) had asked	now to get there.
wish I to set the alar	m yesterday.	d) could ask
a) didn't forget b) hadn't fo	orgotten C) wouldn't c	
a) had stopped b) stop	Shouting Thousand forge	t d) don't forget
a) had stopped b) stop	iney are always fi	ghting,
	TO LOUGH STAR	
a) didn't rain b) hadn't ra	book would go to football r	Practice
a) didn't rain b) hadn't ra He wishes he rich to b	c) wouldn't rain	d) doesn't rain
He wishes herich to b	ouy a luxurious car.	4) 006211 (1911.
	c) has been	***
296	2001	d) is being

4 . 71		(U	nite (15816)
She is fat. She wish	es she the wi		
a) had had	b) had more. He wasted	chwill be a	liet.
# I wish my son	b) will study	much time - 1	d) can have
plwish Samy	playing his music so lo	andly White and	d) had studied
			SK him to turn it down?
Est 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	7 ·	Clica	
a) took	b) had taken	c) could be to	d) taka
SI DIE MINICO DITE	- Hear ner school	To should be a	n every day
S) tiga ii aca	n) nvez	c) lived	d) is living
22 If only I	about the concert, I'd ha	ave gone to it.	dylanving
a) knew	b) would know	c) had known	d) could know
# He wishes he	the programme a	hout wildlife vester	day
a) had seen	b) saw	c) was seeing	d) would see
24 wish	at the children like that.	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	u ,
	b) would shout		d) hadn't shouted
🛍 I wish you	your room more ofte	en.	
	b) didn't tidy		d) hadn't tidied
	there when they arrived		
a) was	b) will be	c) had been	d) could be
27 wîsh	. out of school at 14.		
a) wouldn't drop	b) hadn't dropped	c) didn't drop	d) can drop
28 I wish dad	soon. We are waiting	g him for dinner.	
a) would come	b) will come	c) had come	d) is coming
29 1 wish 1	work tomorrow. It's my	birthday.	
al can't	b) don't have to	c) didn't have to	d) won't
30 I wish you	on leaving early. We	have to discuss ma	ny things.
a) hadn't Insisted	T - [A] m c CC	c) would insist	d) will insist
Nish			15 I . I
a) could	b) can	c) should	d) would
a I wish you	leave me alone.	. 115	all annuals
a) should	h) would	c) will	d) must
²³ Do you wish	juice after meals!	a) me to serve	d) me serving
4.114	1-1 CELAL		a) me serving
Sil an at	ppointment with the ma	nager. c) wish	d) want
a) hope	b) 'd rather	C) WISH	wy work
, nope			

36 | you feel better tomorrow. d) 'd rather c) want b) wish a) hope 36he train harder, he'd be fitter. d) Unless c) Should b) If 17 He won't get a better job he passes that exam. d) as long as c) without **b)** if a) unless 38you follow the instructions exactly, you won't have any difficulty. d) As long as c) Without b) In case of a) Unless J don't arrive till after midnight, will you be waiting for me? c) Unless d) Were b) Supposing a) As long as bad weather, the wedding will be held indoors. b) Without c) Unless d) If a) In case of 41 I'll make some sandwiches we get hungry. b) without d) but for a) unless c) in case 42 You'll never understand Englishyou study this grammar carefully. d) supposing b) unless c) as long as 43you were in Paris, where would you stay? b) But for c) In case of a) Without d) Suppose 44your brother travel abroad, he'd better go by plane as it's fast and comforta a) if b) Should c) When d) As long as we helped him, he'd have been pleased. a) Were b) Should c) Had d) In case He can come with us,he pays for his own meals. a) on condition that b) without c) but for d) in case of 47 You can take my car you've a licence. a) unless b) without c) but for d) as long asyou have booked a table, you won't be able to eat here tonight. b) Unless c) Were Should hehis order, he'd better contact the customer service departing b) cancelled • you won the lottery, what would you do with the money? c) cancel d) cancelling Take some cash they don't accept credit cards. d) Were b) in case of our savings, we wouldn't have been able to buy the new flat. d) in case c) if d) As long as

PART

Advanced & Open General Exercises

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	me, but I don't agree!	
1 My sister thinks :	than	- Lauch intellige	nt
a) the most intel		d) more intellige	nt
فحمد فالمفادة الم			
Of the two option	ns, the is	more viable.	d) next
a) late	b) later		· · · · ·
* The c	hapter is very interes	ting.	d) latter
a) late	b) last	c) latest	d) latter
Who is	person in your cour	ntry?	
a) powerful		b) more powerful	
c) the most power	rful	d) much powerfu	1
6 How far is	railway station fr	rom here?	
a) the nearest		c) the near	d) the another
6 He is o	f the two.		
a) cleverer		c) the cleverest	d) the clever
7 He is th			- LEISE CIEAGI
a) more taller	b) the tallest	c) the taller	الم الم
Was not as intellig	ent as the others bu	it I was	d) taller
a) more prettier	b) pretty	a) Al.	
9 I am afraid his situa	tion is going from to	c) the prettiest	d) most pretty
a) worse	b) bad	ad to	
	Nordo in the	c) worst	d) badly
become a rod ata-w	words is an adjective	?? "The sun in our solar	System will eventu
a) system			System will crow
1 Of the true	b) solar	c) glant	10
Of the two sisters, M	agda is the	r glorit	d) sun
	D) Oldori		
Shimaa is my	sister.	c) older	d) eldest
-/ cluer			
As soon as she finishe	ed one project	c) old Started working on	d) both a and b
a) the last	b) the project, she	started working on	a) both o
You must act without	The nearest	c) the next	The transmission of the same o
You must act without a) farther	b) c	lay,	d) the latest
	b) further	c) farthest	
(300)		729(1) 151	d) furthest

oick out the adjectiv	es in the following ser	Yon - FT	nits (158:16)
PIPIOT T			
a) frantic/royal	b) a lot of/arrival	el fennatura e e	44 E 44 E
Che ingrance Leading	" Sinc you the log, but	two weeks	d) trantic/before
3) latter	ומ(פו	c) latest	att Inch
Both the tiger and th	ne leopard are cats, bu	t the former is much le	a) last
a) last	m) larear	c) latter	d) later
I cannot walk any	Premainstrongsveri	-, 121161	G) later
a) farther	b) further	c) farthest	d) both a and b
China is	than any other count	ry in the world.	
a) most populated	b) more populated	c) populated	d) as populated
ls she? A	All her students respec	t her.	
a) How a good teac		b) How good teacl	ner
c) How good a teacl	her	d) How a good a to	eacher
n The parents made th	he child ti	ne milk as the doctor	said.
a) drinking	b) drank	c) to drink	d) drink
She prevented him	from her i	room.	
a) enter	b) entering	c) being entered	d) entered
The mother encoura	aged the boy	again.	
a) trying	b) to try	c) tried	d) try
I hope you don't mi	nd myea	rly.	
a) left	b) leave	c) leaving	d) to leave
We left without	411541(0-11451544) #		
a) anyone knowing		b) they know	
c) anyone know		d) anyone's know	ing
Why don't you let m	ne to the	manager?	
a) to speak	b) speak	c) speaking	d) spoke
on the f	arm habituated him	to rising early.	
a) To monte	Marking	0,0000	d) Working
Alaskana	omed to	in cold weather.	
5.45			d) be lived
a) live	over the wall and r	un fast crossing the s	treet.
rsaw him	Over the man	c) to jump	d) jumped
a) jump	b) jumping		
We found the house	B	c) to desert	d) deserting
a) desert	b) deserted		

PART 1

Open Book General Exercises on Units 15 & 18)

et the serve	ct answer from a, b, c or c	:	han we need
Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or c	ore money or pur	d) affection
1 Jealousy and	b) fame	c) publicity	a direction
a) greed	b) fame et crash marked the start o	f a severe	·
The stock market	b) depression	c) compression	d) submission
a) Impression	b) depression is when the sun or the m	oon seems to disappe	ear.
* A/An	Is when the suit of the	c) eclipse	d) phenomen
a) geyser	 b) tornado accurately predict the 	of eclipses due	to their calculat
	accurately predict the	c) production	d) insistence
a) accident	b) occurrence		
	sunscreen on your skin be		attraviolet lays
a) blind	b) sunny	c) harmless	d) harmful
_	periods of deep depressi		ierself away and
	for weeks. Depression here	e means	
a) decrease in we		b) recession	
c) unhappiness a		d) unsuccessfulne	ess
7 my ch	nildren were more helpful	with the housework.	
a) Unless	b) If	c) If only	d) in case
fire, le	ave the building as quickl	v as possible	d) III case
a) in case of	b) But for	-1.1-	***
I wish it	rain. The garden really r	c) in case	d) if
	DI WOHICH'S		
10 I known	VOII Were waiting and the	c) won't	d) would
a) Were	you were waiting outside b) Had	I would have invited	you to come in
ff only people	My nau	c) Should	el) if
a) stopped	b) mad b) will stop	s, we would have a m	an and a world
You can play to the	b) will stop living room	c) had stopped	eaceful Wolle
a) but for	IIVING room	Oll don's and	d) stop
1 Block - m	b) unless	or don't make a mes	SS.
a) had	b) unless Ind the world. If only I b) had had	c) as long as	d) in case of
I'll leave	b) had had	""" time to real	ise my dream.
a) but for	obile number	c) have	d) have had
Lyould t	b) in case of	there's an emerge-	sandila l'an awil
a) in save travell	b) had had bbile number b) in case of led to many countries b) unless	c) in case	y while this
a) in case of	h) unit	Par C	d) unless
02)	Truppess .	c) if	objection.
9		47.11	d) but for

Children cannot watch	this film	(Uni	ts (15&16)
a) if	b) unless	they are accompanie	d by an adult.
The antonym of the w	ord "violence" is	c) without	d) as long as
a) friendliness	b) cruelty	विश्व के क्षा के ता br>विश्व के ता क	-,
The terrorists financed	themselves by	c) aggression	d) hostility
a) taking	b) hurving	···· banks,	
one day, scientists wil		c) stealing	d) robbing
One day, scientists wil	b) care	r all serious illnesses.	
the director was	in nersuadia - 4	c) cure	d) deal
The director was	h) influentially	producers to put mo	ney into the film.
	b) influentially	c) influence	d) influenced
Willess grant and and	Tall in t	he last two years	
a) prienomentary	b) artificially	c) accidentally	d) traditionally
in the future, more ele	b) activity		
alloice	b) activity	c) power	d) energy
The medical compar coronavirus vaccine.	ly decided to go	with the	research about the
	le) amountal		
a) private	o) special	c) public	d) popular
Many British politiciar COVID-19 pandemic.		. attack on the govern	ment policy of facing
a) sting	b) stung	c) stinging	d) string
We put a heavy curta	in on our bedroom w	indow to block	the light,
a) in	b) out	c) over	d) down
 The TV announcer is t	famous for making	interviews.	
a) infinity	b) celebrity	c) fame	d) personality
e vou get u	now, you will be lat	te for work.	
a) Without	b) in case	attends C) If	d) Unless
he finishe	ed early, we would ha	ve had time for a gar	me.
-114	1.3 Idlams	C7 11	al OHESS
Had He bought three san	dwiches	anyone of his colleag	ues would ask him for
one,	Gittieries		
2) 0.0	b) unless	c) in case	d) if
without wish Ia	and now to be able to	reach the airport in	time.
3) have a second a	b) had	c) had had	d) am having
a) have find if only he	in the his teacher	would be pleased wit	h him.
only he	b) finish	c) could finish	d) had finished
a) finishes	D) Illuses		0.
			303

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are

Many experts believe there are too many people that he number of children they should big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have, the world's population will double in 25 years. There will be more than 20 cities with populations greater than 20 million. Now there is only one. People may not have enough food and a lot may die of starvation and diseases.

Some people point to countries such as Australia and say, "There is plenty of room there." Although most of Australia is unpopulated, and much of it is tiny populated, there are reasons for this. Firstly, much of the land is desert and waterless, and secondly, even the land that is not desert is not suitable for anything, not even growing grass,

Another major problem we shall have to face, as the world's population grows. is a shortage of energy. We are using up coal and oil and when they have been used up, we shall have to find something to take their place. It is true that we can make electricity from the heat of the sun and moving water, but we don't yet have the technology to do this in a big way. Perhaps, the biggest problem we shall have when the world's population doubles will be pollution. The air we breathe is already badly polluted. Although there are great efforts to control the population increase, it is difficult to make sure that it will be controlled in the near future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 32 In order to prevent the world's population from being doubled, there must be a
 - a) the methods of agriculture
 - b) sources of energy
 - c) the way people think about the number of children they should have
 - d) the education of the great numbers of children
- 33 Why will there be a problem of energy shortage as the world's population grows?
 - b) We have to grow more food.
 - c) We can make energy from the sun.
 - d) There will be more pollution.
- 39 How many present cities have a population of over 20 million?
 - a) Twenty.

b) Three.

c) Twenty five.

d) One.

	Units (15&16)
The underlined word "they" refers to	
experts	b) coal and oil
c) electricity and moving water	d) population and pollution
the underlined phrase "tiny populated" mea	ans
a) having a great number of people	
b) having a small number of people	
c) not having any people	
d) being totally empty	
# According to the passage, what will happen t	to the problem of energy in the future?
a) We can't make energy from new sources.	
b) We can't control pollution.	
c) We don't have enough food for everyone	a a
d) We don't yet have the technology to mai	ke electricity from the heat of the sun in
a big way.	
*A suitable title for the passage is "".	
a) The problem of overpopulation	
b) How to inhabit Australia	
c) How to solve overpopulation	
d) How to make cities smaller	
39 The passage suggests that it is to s	olve the overpopulation problem.
a) easy	b) controlled
c) difficult	d) scientific
According to the passage, why is a great are	ea of Australia unpopulateor
a) People don't like living there.	
b) Australian people don't have children.	
() Much of the land is desert and waterless.	un mêre
d) Australian people don't welcome immig	rance as a result of overnonulation
One of the following Isn't a problem we will	b) A shortage of energy.
a) A shortage of food.	d) A shortage of desert land.
c) Poliution.	
	305

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why did Michael and Rupert fight in Antoinette's room?
 - a) As Michael wanted to kill Antoinette.
 - b) As Michael was guarding Antoinette.
 - c) As Rupert wanted to punish Antoinette.
 - d) As Rupert insulted Michael.
- How did Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?
 - a) He got them after killing Bersonin.
 - b) He got them after killing Rupert.
 - c) He found them in De Gautet's clothes.
 - d) He found them on the floor.
- How did Rassendyll kill Bersonin?
 - a) He shot him.
 - b) He stabbed him with a knife.
 - c) He struck him with his sword.
 - d) He pushed him down the steps.
- could kill the doctor, hurt Rassendyll and the King.
 - a) Detchard

b) Bersonin

c) Rupert

- d) De Gautet
- Rassendyll could hearvoice on the drawbridge calling for Michael?
 - a) Sapt's

b) Johann's

c) Rupert's

- d) Fritz's
- Why did Rassendyll follow Rupert?
 - a) He wanted to take his revenge.
 - c) He wanted to reward him.
- Rassendyll could injure Rupert on his while he was on the horse.

 - c) leg

- b) He wanted to warn him.
- d) He wanted to give him money.
- b) shoulder
- d) foot
- Sapt ordered the men to carry the King with to the mansion to keep the

- a) his hands bandaged
- c) his face covered

- b) his arm treated
- d) his cheek hurt

Units (15&16)

- What did the real King want to reward Rassendyll?
- a) He wanted to give him a lot of money.
- b) He wanted to make him a Duke.
- c) He wanted to give him a medal.
- d) He wanted to take him to Strelsau.
- Rose and Robert were when Rassendyll showed them the newspaper photo.
- a) happy

b) amazed

c) frightened

d) annoyed

hoose the correct Arabic translation:

It was a wonderful picnic in the park where we breathed some fresh air.

(١) لقد كانت نزمة رائعة في الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء الطازج،

(ت) لقد كانت رحلة رائعة في الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء النقي.

أحا لقد كانت نزهة رائعة في الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الحواء النقي.

(د) لقد كانت رحلة والعة في الحديقة حيث تنفسنا بعض الهواء الجنيد،

hoose the correct English translation:

13 يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة الاستفادة من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء والرياح والطاقة الثووية.

- a) Scientists do many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.
- b) Scientists do much researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.
- c) Scientists make many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.
- d) Scientists make much researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

hoose the correct answer:

Which sentence is correct?

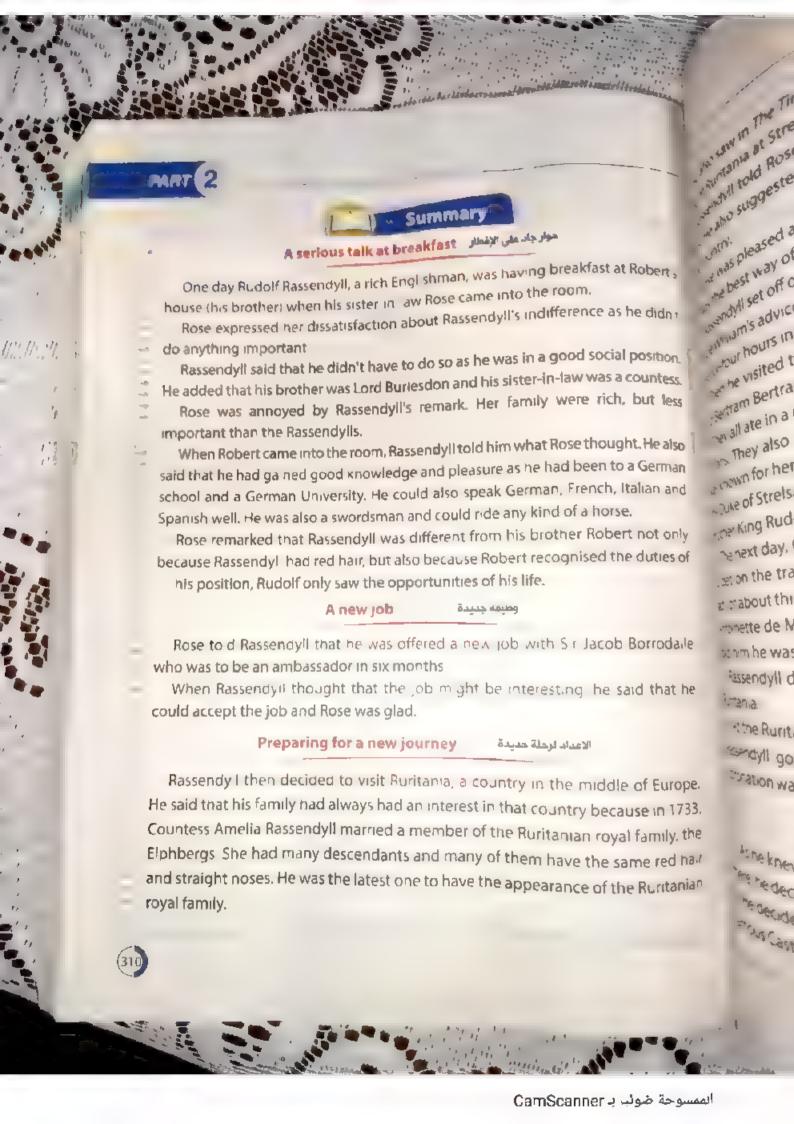
- a) You have to finish your work, such long it takes.
- b) You have to finish your work however long it takes.
- c) You have to finish your work, however long it takes.
- d) You have to finish your work, so long it takes.

تابعنا على التيليجرام @Talta_Secondary_Alwm

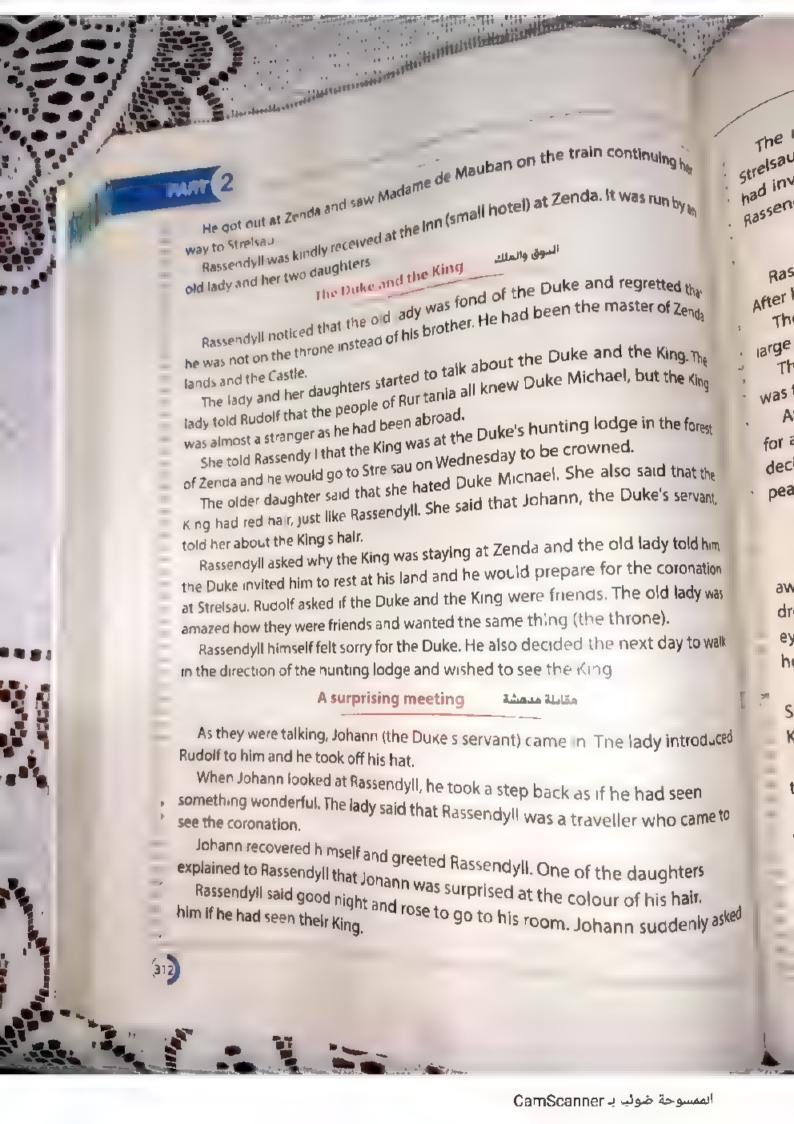
بوت المراجعات Moragat2_3Sec_bot@

Shehab

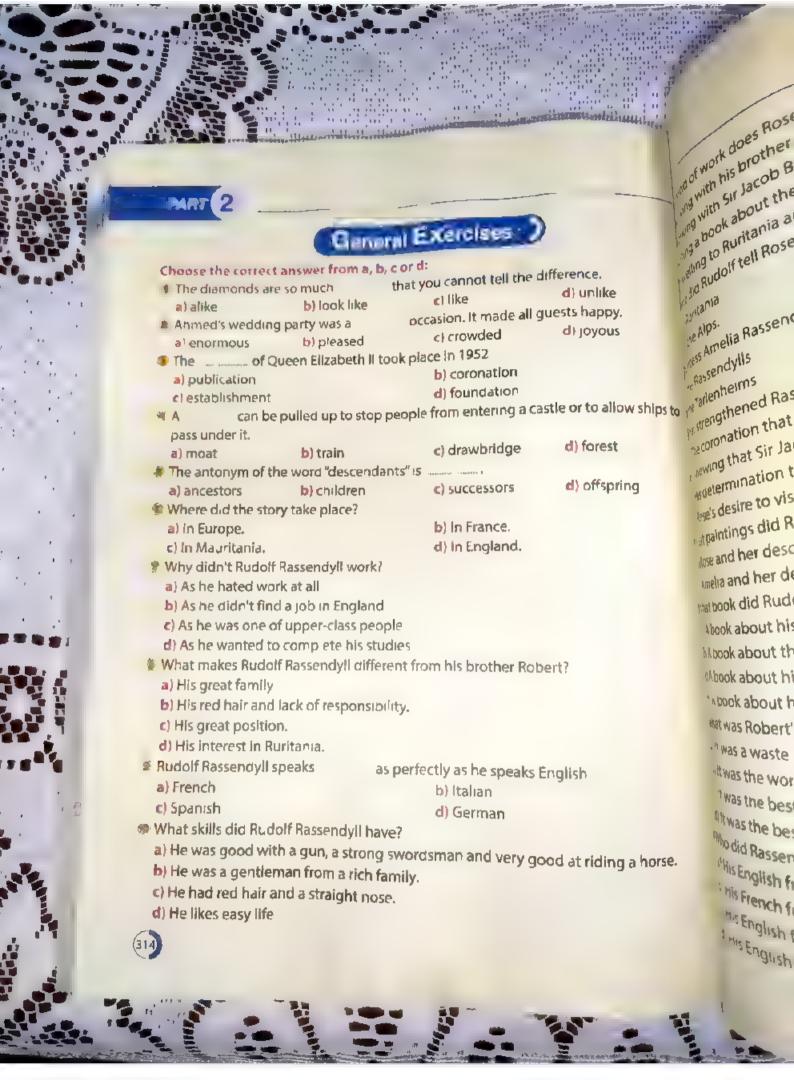
Chapter (1) Important Vocabulary accommodation Antal **identical** مؤمائل امتطابق elike متشته Indeed بالمعل along حابه مندق سعير inn amazement مهول loyous سايد انهيج ambassador سقير look like Portion طموح lying annoy يتصابق mansion border حدود (بین دونتین) مندق ماني moat castle ميعية occasion celebration مرمسة احثمال opportunity characteristics owner حصائص peaceful همين بعيسالم conversation محادثة بتحميه personality coronation تتويج مك حسماني physical crowded مربيدم السياسة politics احماير descendants مركز موقع position drawbridge حبير متحرك نتس ملاحظة remark نوق لمت بشخص بينايا Duke مستوبثة responsibility سعرة embassy صحم 640 enormous حطل chade حداث events sister-in-law روفه الأح أدث الروحة منفة اثارة excitement sword منمير extraordinary المعازز بالسيف swordsman مغرجان سيبال festival قلس حارم tough forest wealthy ئري أيفيا further well-defended محمى جيدًا حراس **guards** می خلال within اح عير شعيق half-brother يتساءل wonder مسكل صيد hunting lodge 309

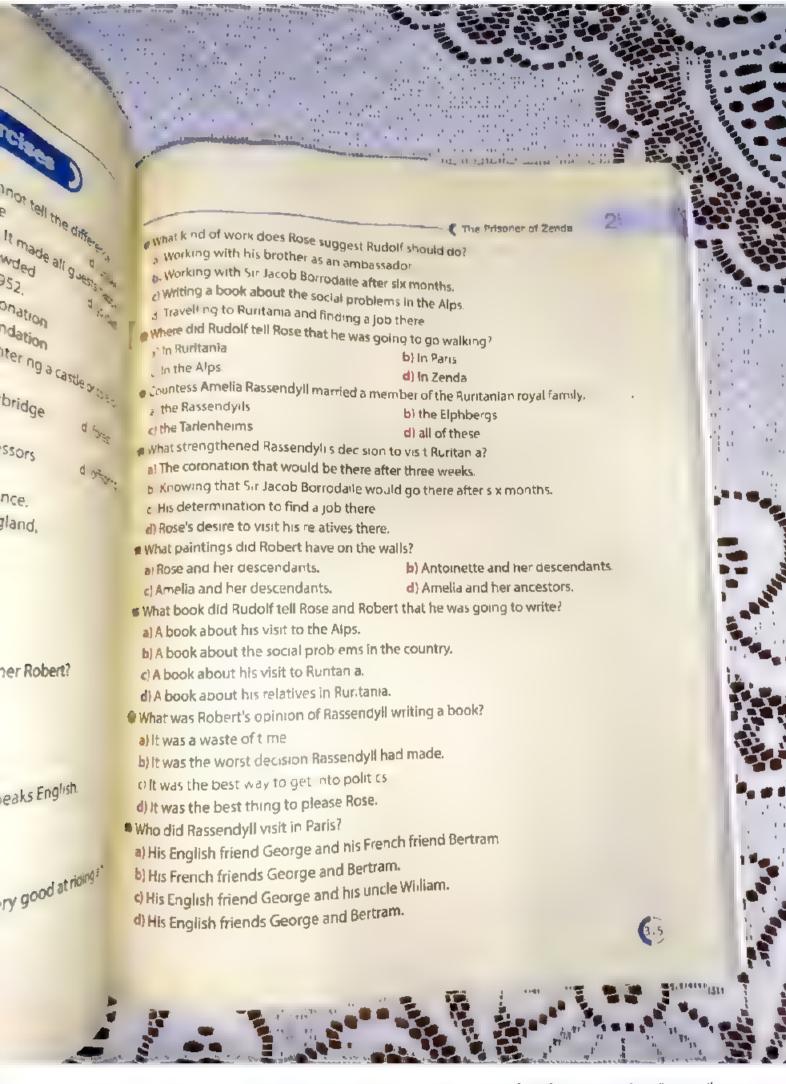


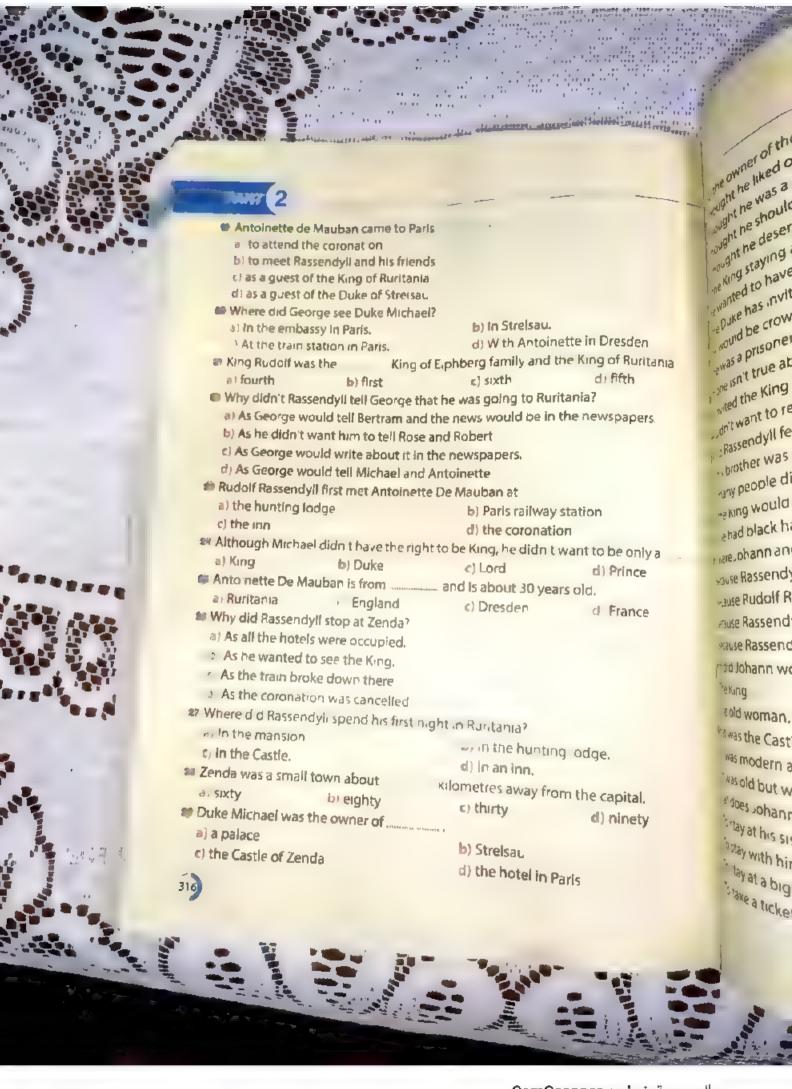
(The Prisoner of Zenda He also saw in The Times newspaper that Rudolf the Fifth was to be crowned as of Ruritania at Streisau in the course of the next three weeks passendyll told Rose and Robert that he was going on a waking tour in the He also suggested that he might write a book about the social problems of ast at Robert's gose was pleased and Robert, who had written several books himself said that e as he didn't was the best way of introducing himself to politics Rassendyll set off on his train Journey to Ruritania. When he reached Paris, he took cial position. William's advice that no man should ever pass through Par's without spending s a countess. wenty-four hours in the city. So, he booked a night at The Continental Hotel ch, but less Then he visited two old friends George Featherly who worked at the embassy. and Bertram Bertrand, who was now a famous journalist in the city ught. He also They al. ate in a restaurant and they told him all about the latest exciting events to a German Paris. They also told him about Antoinette de Mauban, the beautiful lady who Italian and was known for her wealth and amb tion. They also told him about her relation with the Duke of Strelsau who visited Paris and went back to Runtania to prepare for his se. ert not only brother King Rudolf's coronation. The next day, George came with Rassendyll to the station. As Rudoif was about ne duties of to get on the train, George left him to talk to a graceful and fashionably dressed lady of about thirty years old. When he returned to Rudolf, he told him that the lady Antoinette de Mauban was also travelling to Dresden with Rassendyll. Rassendyll Borrodaile told him he was going there. Rassendyll didn't see her on the train nor on the next train they both took to id that he At the Ruritanian border, the guards stared at Rassendyll in surprise. Ruritania. Rassendyll got into the country and bought a newspaper He found that the coronation was to be in two days' time, which was much earlier than he had thought. الإقامة غي زلدا of Europe. Staying at Zenda As he knew that Strelsau was crowded and that he wouldn't find a place to stay e in 1733, there, he decided to stop at Zenda, a small town eighty kilometres from the capital. mily, the He decided to spend a day there walking over the nilis and taking a look at the e red hair famous Castle there. On the day of the coronation, he would go by train to Strelsau uritanian 311 الممسوحة ضولب بـ CamScanner

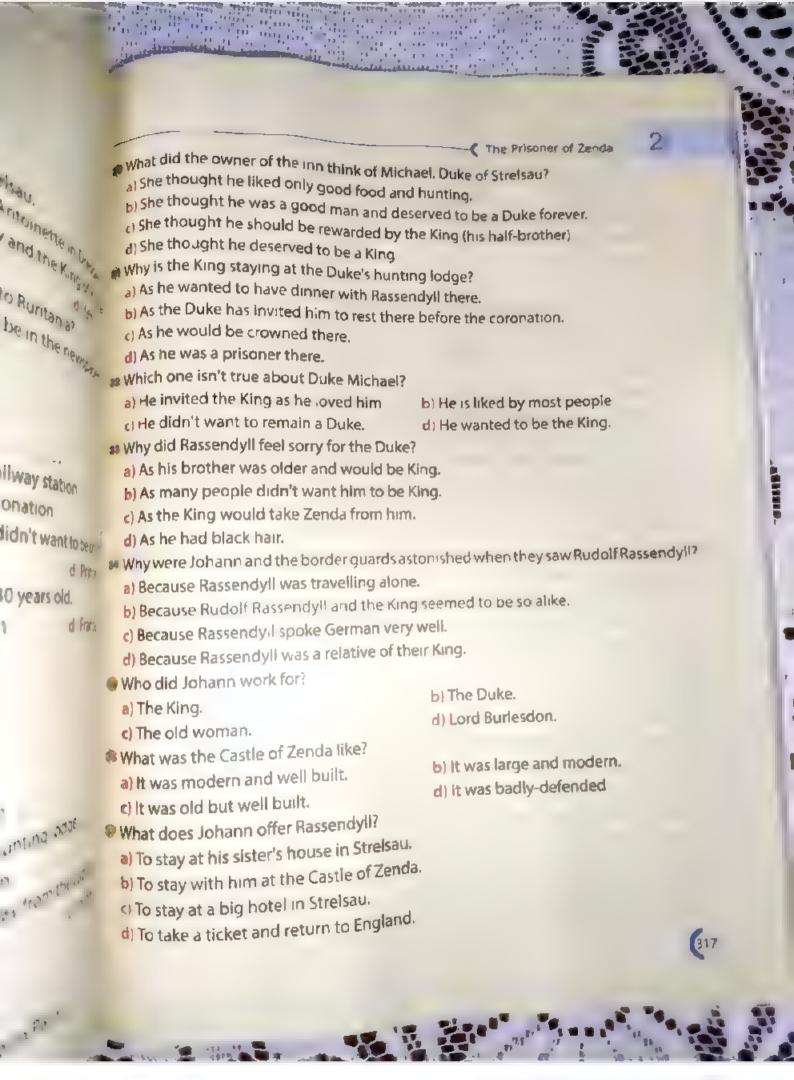


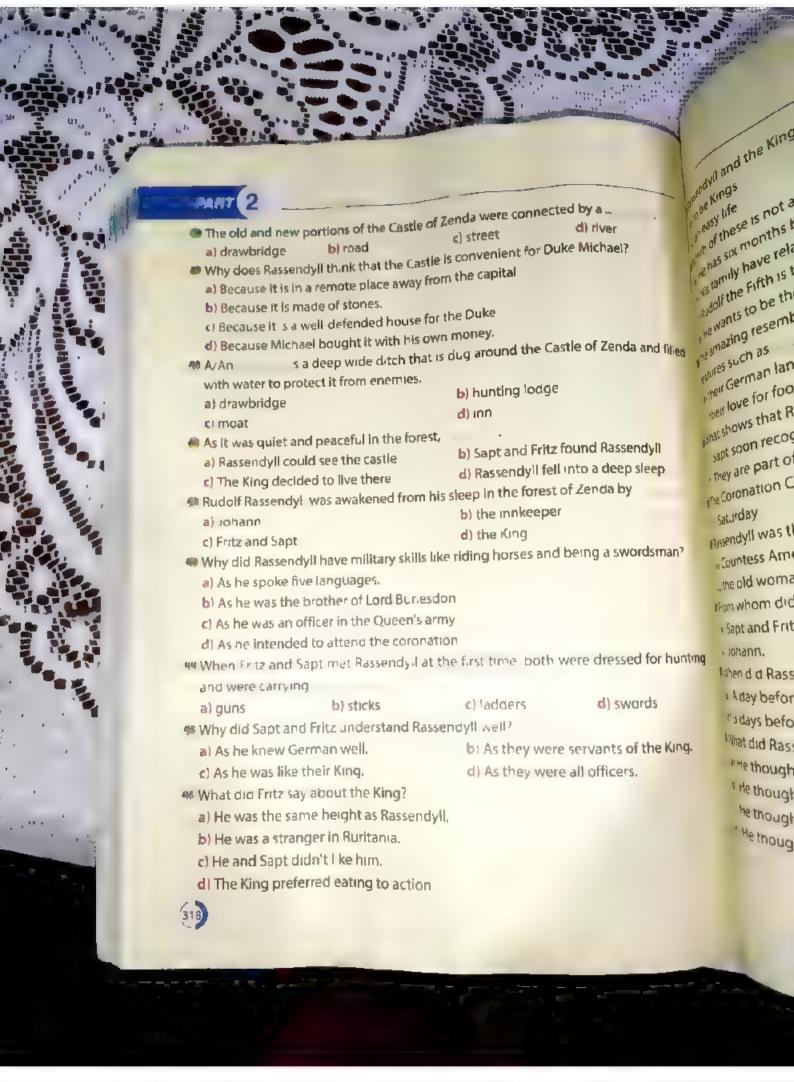
the next morning Rudolf to d the people at the hotel that he was going to continuing her the next more than to stay with his sister and her husband there She polyliaccepted his offer. it was run by an The castle and the forest spills and the gassendyll sent his luggage onto the station and set out to the forest of Zenda regretted that the crossed the hills, he reached the Castle half an hour later. aster of Zenda The Castle was very old but well built, with a moat at around it. Behind it was a modern mansion, which was used by the Duke of Stressau as his country home the King The There was a drawbridge joining them Rassendyll noticed that the drawbridge but the King was the only way to the Castle. There was a wide road to the mans on. After passing the hill and the Castle, Rassendyll entered the forest and walked in the forest or more in its cool shade. He was fascinated by the lovely place. He gedded to rest by lying against one of the enormous trees. It was so quiet and aid that the neaceful in the forest that he soon fell into a deep sieep. ce's servant مقابلة الملك ورجاله Meeting the King and his men dy told him Rassendyll was dreaming about living in the Castle of Zenda when he was coronation awakened by the voice of two men talking about him. Both carried guns and were d lady was gressed for hunting. One of them was short but looked very tough with light blue eves, and he looked like a soldier. The other was younger, thin and of medium ay to walk height, and he looked like a gentleman. The younger man told Rassendyll who they were. The older man was Colonel Sapt and the younger was called Fritz von Tarlenheim, they both worked for the ling of Runtania. Rudolf told them that he was Rudolf Rassendyll, a traveller from troduced England and a former officer in the Queen's army. He also said his brother was the new Lord Burlesdon. en They told him that he and the new King were so alike that they could be twins. ame to Sapt remarked that they could be different personalities As they were talking, a young man then came out from behind a tree in the forest and stood in front of them at was the King who looked at Rudolf in amazement. 15 They looked so alike that the King of Ruritania might have been Rudolf Rassendyll, and Rudoif Rassendyll might have been him, the King of Runtania. ly asked 313 الممسوحة ضولب بـ CamScanner

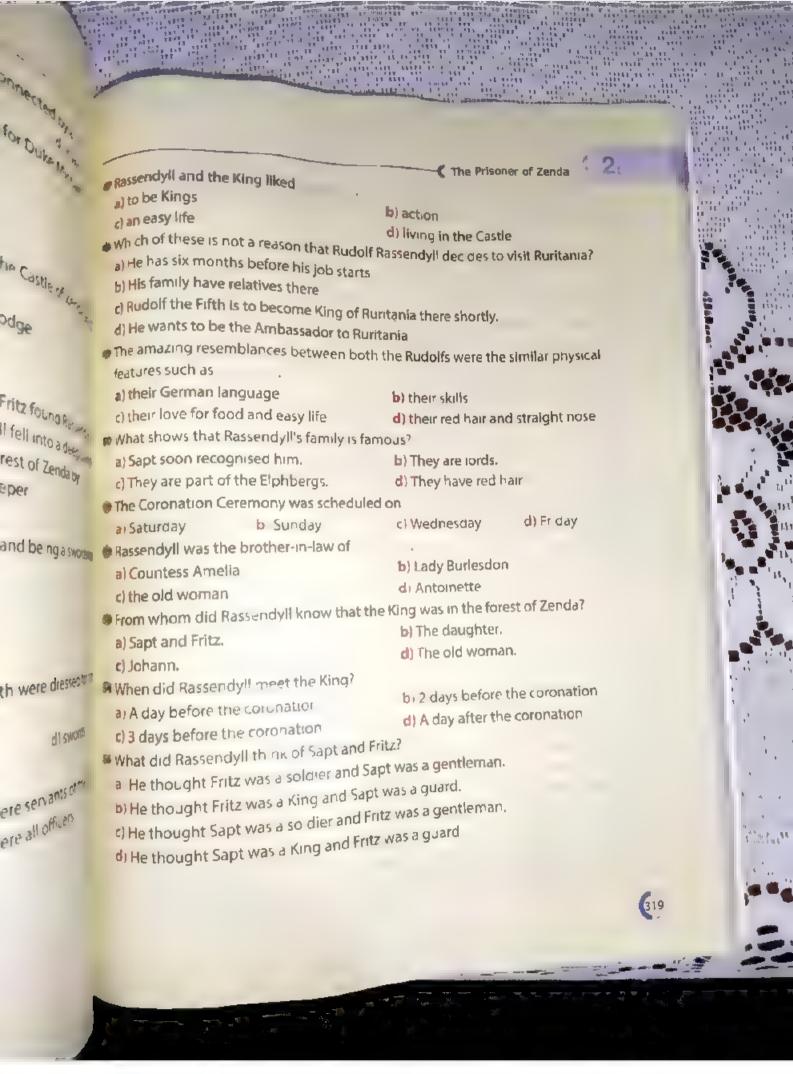


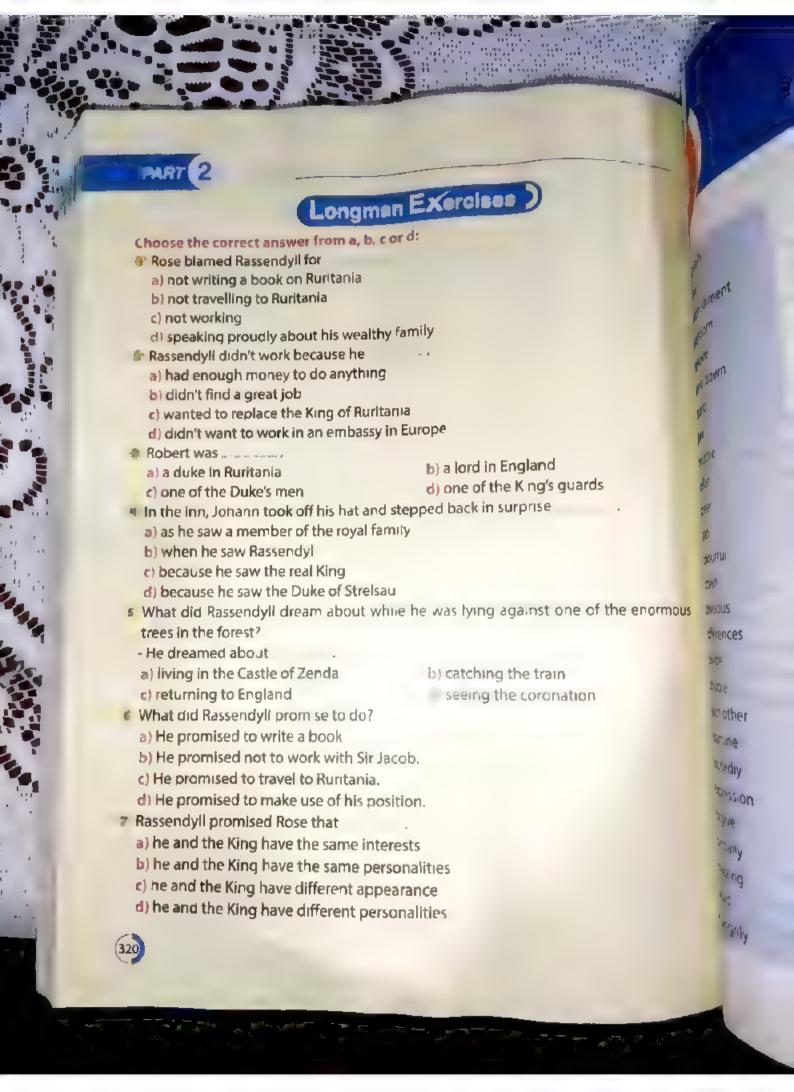












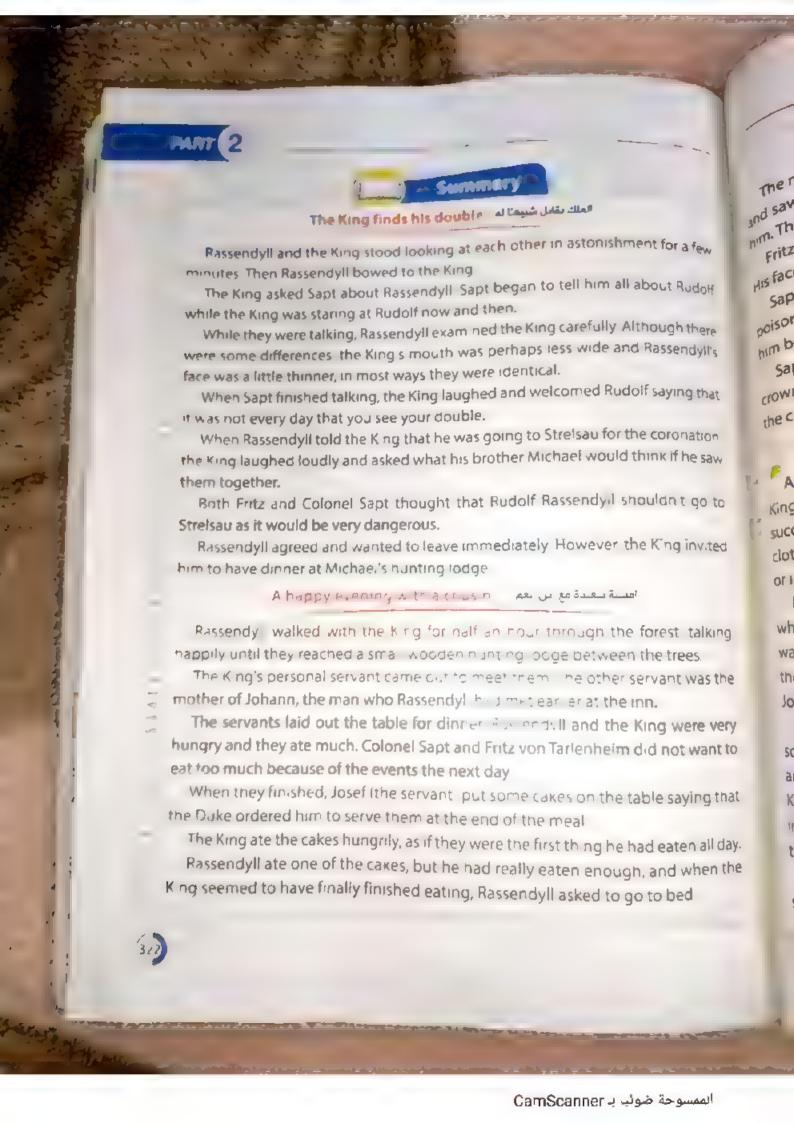
Chapter (2)

(Important Vocabulary

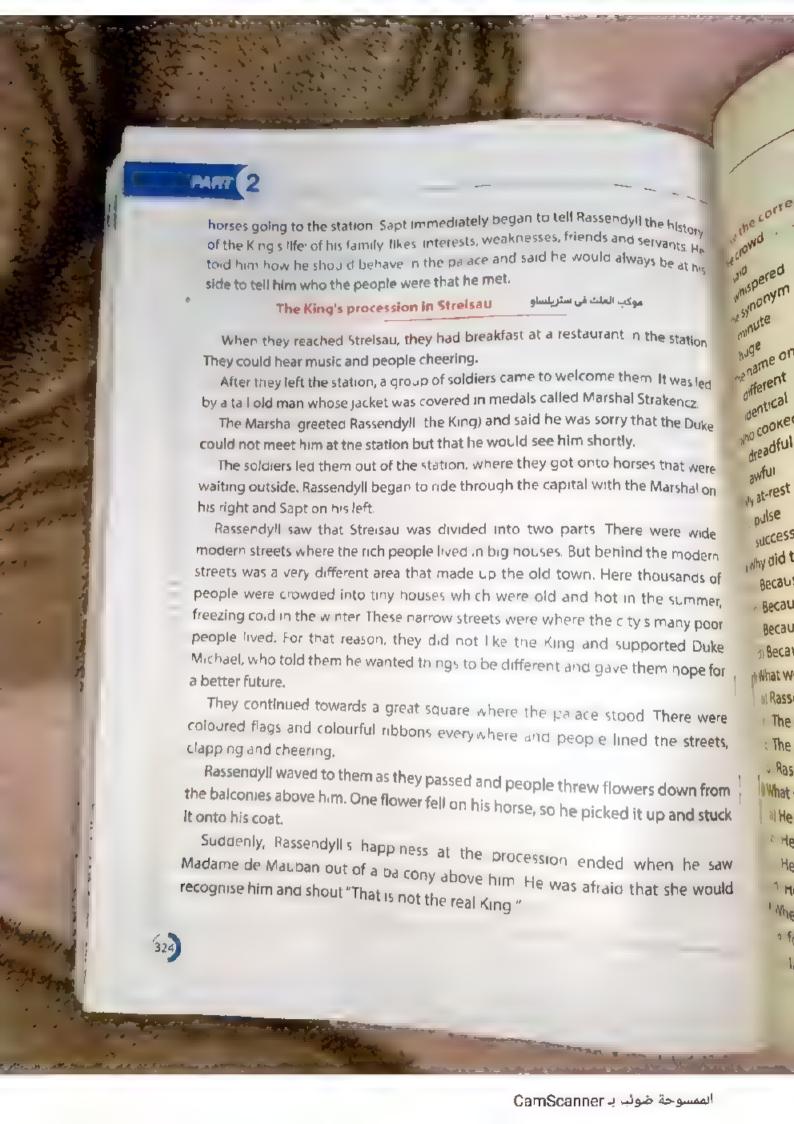
actually	بالمعل	identical	متطابق
allve	على قيد الحياة	instruct	بوحه
astonishment	دهشه	interests	اهتمامات
bedroom	حجرة انتوم	line	يصطف
behave	بتصرف	łock	يحس
bend down	ينحنى	Marshal	مارشال/المربق (رتبة عسكرية)
board	يركب على مثن	meanwhile	می شده الاثیر،
pow	ينحنى	officials	موصمون
breathe	يتبعس	po soned	مسموم
ceilar	الميوء ليسروم	preparation	أعداد بجهير
cheer	بمتم	procession	موكب
clap	يصفق	pulse	ىبص
colourful	عني بالألوان تابض بالمياة	recognise	يتعرف علي
crown	يتوج	ribbon	رناط/شربط
delicious	عين	safe	امس
afferences	حتلاهات	senseless	بلا وعي
divide	وسق	shortly	عدعترة قصبرة
double	شبيه مديل	sp rit	ce2
each other	تعصيفم التعمن	sp ash	بشب
examine	يعجص	square	ميدان
excitedly	مفرح	support	تويد بسايد
expression	تعبير	tiny	صغير
forgive	يسامح	unfit	عير هلانم
formally	1º 000	urge	شق
freezing	متحمد	wave	شىر بى
head	ىئدە الي	weaknesses	ماصر صغم
hungrily	بجوع	whole	الله المصيغ

guards

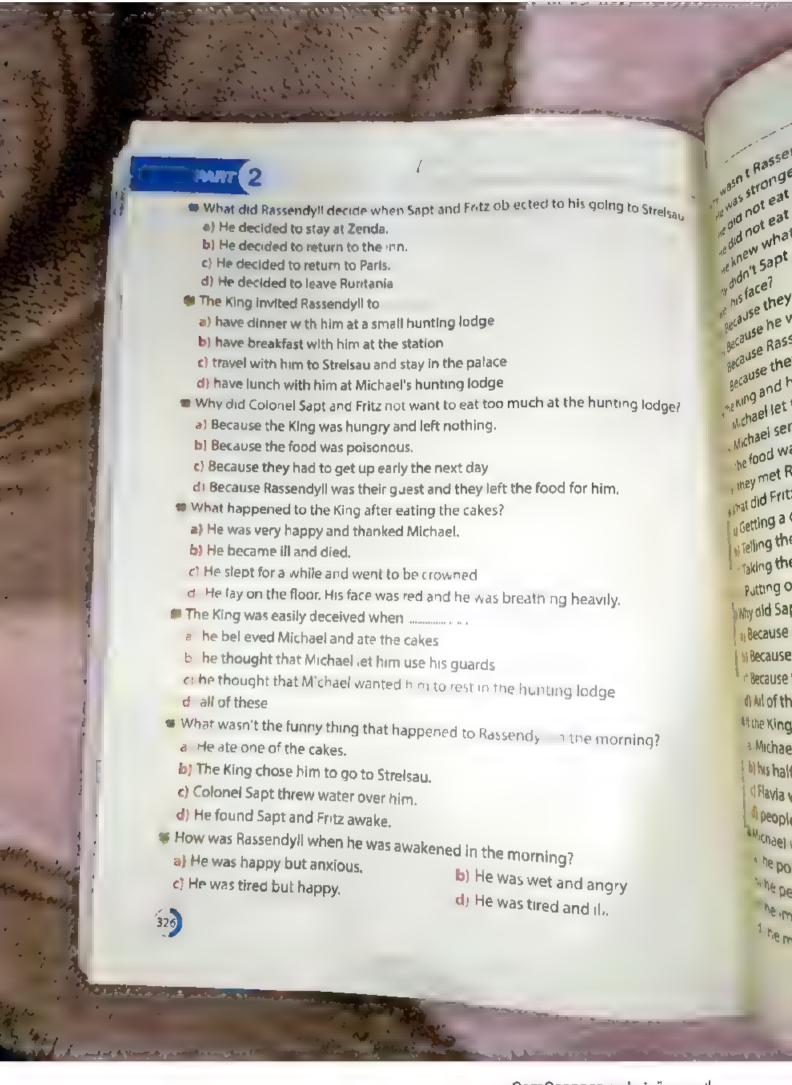
e of the earn



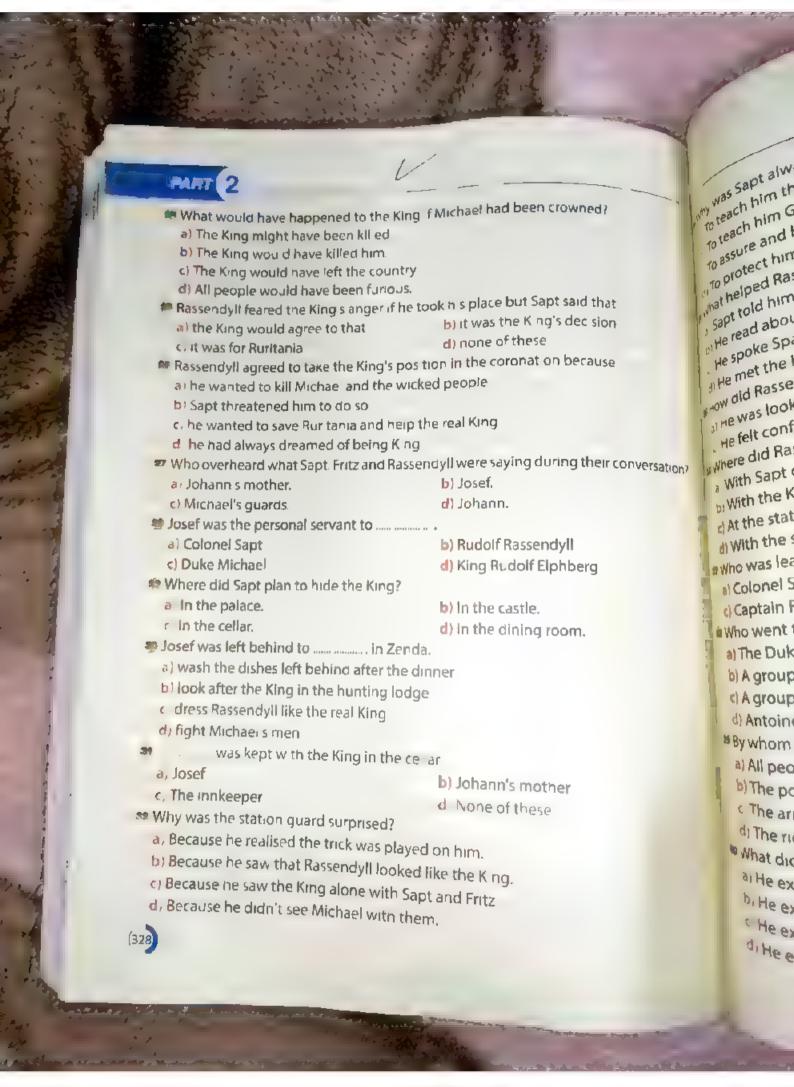
The Prisoner of Zenda dstonishment for a few The King in great trouble العلك بواجه متاعب كبيرة GI WIN EL GOOM BYDON the next morning Rassendyll woke up suddenly covered in water. He looked up and saw Colonel Sapt standing in front of him, with Fritz von Tarlenheim next to nim. They said that nothing else would wake him up and it was five o clock. arefully Anthongation Fritz took his arm and led him to the next room. The King was lying on the floor. Wide and Rasierras His face was red and he was breathing heavily. They couldn't wake him up. Sapt said that they were in great trouble. They thought that the cakes were led A Jour Saying nev poisoned and no doctor, if they found one many kilometres away, would make him better that day. Sapt thought that Duke Michael did that so that his brother couldn't be for the corp tensor crowned. If Rudolf the Fifth didn t become King that day, Duke Michael would take MOLIO THANK H Shi was the crown. خطة الكولونيل سابت Colonel Sapt's plan Jyl! showar'i go y As they sat in silence, Sapt suggested that Rudolf Rassendyll would take the King's place and go to Strelsau to be crowned as the King. Fritz said that it would be er, the king nuter successful because Rudolf's German was perfect. And if he was dressed in different gothes no one would know. This was the only solution as the King would be dead or in prison if Duke Michael became the King. Rassendyll thought for a few minutes. When he agreed, Sapt explained the whole plan. They would hide the King in the cellar and go to Streisau by train, not the forest, taking waiting for the Duke's guards. When the guards came, Josef would tell them that en the trees the house was empty. Johann's mother would be locked in the cellar with the King. er servant was the losef would let her out later, after Michael's guards had gone. The rest of the plan was as follows: they would spend the night in the palace. As einn. e King were ver soon as they were alone in the King's bedroom, Rassendyll and Sapt would leave n gid not want to and come back to the hunting lodge on their horses. Fritz could stay and guard the King's bedroom in the parace. The King would then return to the palace with Sapt table saying that in the dark. Meanwhile, Rassendyli would ride as fast as he could to the border and try to leave the country before it was light. nad eatenal'day Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll left the hunting lodge an hour earlier to avoid being h, and when the seen by Duke Michael's guards. Soon they were now all in uniforms and set off on o to bed 323)



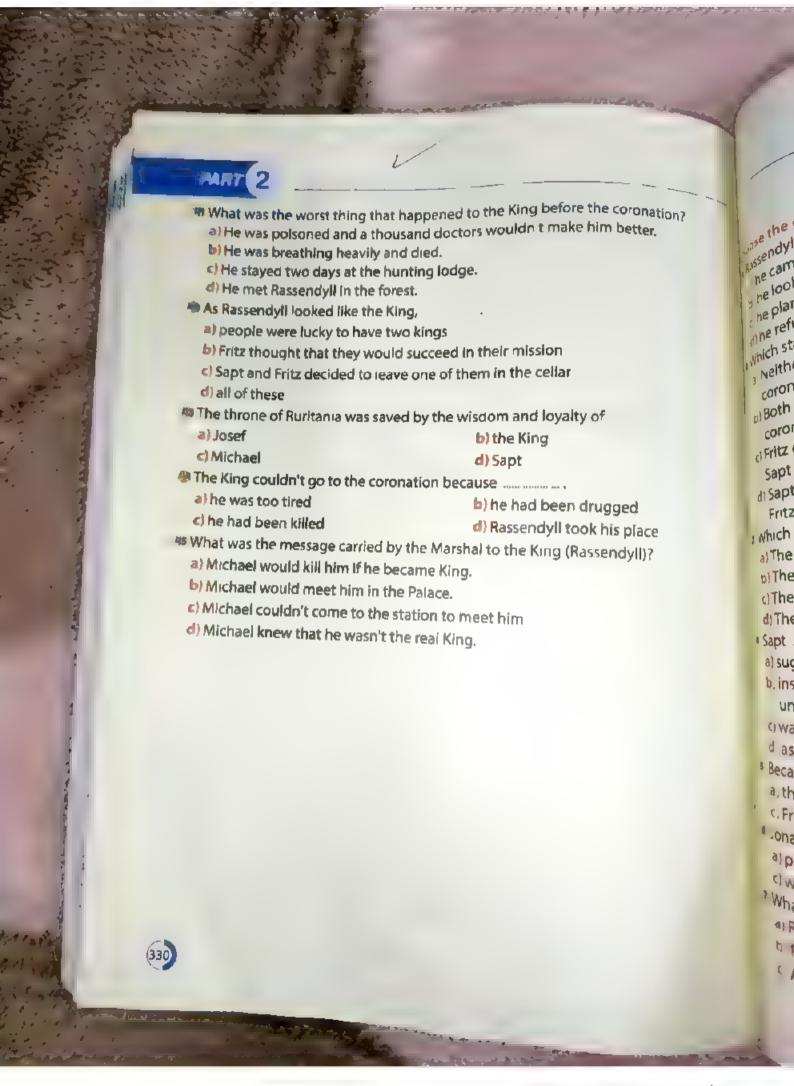
(The Prisoner of Zenda General Exercises pose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: The crowd loudly as the goalkeeper made a brilliant save. BELLE TO WELL THE FE a) sald b) cheered whispered dors Called Marks 2 2 d) uttered The synonym of the word "tiny" is a) minute 2914 JE M92 20,1 July b) enormous c) huge d) great d see him state The name on the ticket should be with the one in the passport a different hey got on chone b) twice didentical d) unlike he capital his terision Who cooked this? It's absolutely It has a very pleasant taste and smell b) terrible a) dreadful d) delicious clawful MO DSuz UPPL No rate is usually about 80 beats per minute. My at-rest uses But bernothers b) death a) pulse d) anger c) success ld town Here training Why did the two Rudolfs stand looking at each other in aston.shment? a) Because they were relatives. od and hor in he b) Because they both had the similar physical features where the city, har w c) Because they were from upper-class families. di Because they were walking in the forest near Zenda King and supported. 7 What were the slight differences between Rassendyll and the King? nt and gavether took ar Rassendyll was three cent metres tailer than the King b) The King's face was less thin and Rassendyll's mouth was wider c The King's mouth was less wide and Rassendy is face was a little thinner Dalace Stood Types: d) Rassendyll's skills were fewer and the King's family was larger. people ined the ities What showed that the King depended on Sapt and Fritz on making his decisions? hrew flowers and a) He asked them about Rassendyll's family b) He asked Sapt about his opinion of Mr Rassendyll's going to Stre sau e picked it up y'c f he asked them what kind of food he should have. d) He asked Fritz about his opinion of Mr Rassendyll's going to Strelsau. enated when " it When Rudolf Rassendyll first met the King, the King afraid that when it b) gave him a gift d, made friends with him a) fought him a laughed at him 325



The Prisoner of Zenda wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was? He was stronger than the King He did not eat the same food as the King. He did not eat as many cakes as the King. He knew what was planned for the King. Why didn't Sapt and Fritz wake Rassendyll up normally instead of throwing water over his face? Because they wanted to wake him up quickly as they didn't find the King. the harman Because he was partially poisoned as he ate only one cake. Because Rassendyll told them to do so. an Because they didn't like him and wanted him to leave. The King and his men were lucky because al Michael let them stay in the hunting lodge hi Michael sent them his guards for her the food was delicious and the cakes were tasty they met Rassendyll in the forest before the coronation What did Fritz suggest doing to solve the difficult situation the King was in? a) Getting a doctor for the King. hi Telling the people that the King was ill. d Taking the King unconscious to Streisau. A Putting off the time of the coronation. שהיהפחת Why did Sapt object to telling the people in Strelsau that the King was ill? a) Because the whole country would come to visit him. b) Because people knew that he was always ill. c) Because there were great preparations and the Duke would take the chance to be a King. d) All of these. 00039 ##the King wasn't crowned on the appointed day, a) Michael would be sad b) his half-brother would take the throne he moming c) Flavia would kill herself d) people would wait for him the next day Michael was very wicked as ,.... a) he poisoned his half-brother to be King b) he persuaded Rassendyll to be King the imprisoned Sapt and Fritz d) he made Fritz kill the King 327



Seen Gowney (The Prisoner of Zenda was Sapt always at Rassendyll s side? UI Sapt sace that to teach him the history of Ruritania. e K ud 2 decision to teach him German. of To assure and help him play the role To protect him from the King nation because What helped Rassendyll to Impersonate the King perfectly? al Sapt told him the history of the King's life. bille read about that in different books. el He spoke Spanish and Italian. di He met the King in the forest and had dinner with him. a How did Rassendyli feel about pretending to be the King? 9 duning their converse He was looking forward to it. b) He felt nervous. e) He felt confident. d) He loved it. where did Rassendyll have his breakfast on the coronation day? al With Sapt on the train b) With the King at the hunting lodge. c) At the station restaurant. sendyll d) With the station guard who was surprised. f Elphberg • Who was leading the soldiers during the coronation? b) Marshal Strakencz. a) Colonel Sapt. d) Rudolf Rassendyll. c) Captain Fritz. ■ Who went to welcome the King, Sapt and Fritz at the station? q room. a) The Duke and his men. b) A group of soldiers and the Marshal ch A group of ambassadors. d) Antoinette de Mauban and two servants. By whom was the King nked and supported in Strelsau? a) All people in the capital. b) The poor who wanted things to be different. c) The army, the Marshal and the Duke. d) The rich who lived in large houses. ther What did Rassendyr expect when he saw Antoinette de Mauban? He expected her to welcome him and throw flowers on him. b) He expected her to call out, "That is not the real King!" He expected her to cry and say, "That is a good King." d) He expected her to keep the secret. 329



17



Important V

ahead	
announce	
anxious	
anyway	
appreciate	
briefly	
candle	
celebrate	
cheek	
close to	
coach	
con	
comment	
compare	
despite	
details	
evil	
except	
fasten	
fight	
fork	
further	
gate	
greet	
handkerchief	
kidnap 🕜	
lift	

in por ter
ا للأمام
يعلن/يديع
قلق/مشتاق
عنى أية حال
يقدر
باختصار
شمعة
ٔ یعتمی
لنداوحنة
مّريت من
عربة
عملة معدسة
يعلق
بقارن
تابرعم من
تماصيل
شربر
عيما عد
الربط
حارب يشتبك
ممثرق طرق
کثر مرید
ىوالىة
بخيى
محديل
يحطف
يرمع

مخلص/ومي

ocabulary
evertheless
aintings
anel
passageway
permit
point at
popular
praise
pretend
princess
puzzle
relief
relieve
route
safe
seat
serious
shoot
signature
skin
strike
strong-look.ng
thinner
torn
trap
trust
whisper
whoever

abulary		
ertheless	ا ومع دنك	
tings	رسومات اعبور ريتية	
el	الوحة	
sageway	jan	
mit	يسمح/سماح	
nt at	يصوب بحو	
oular	مصوب	
ise	Savi	
tend	يتظاهر	
ncess	اميرة	
zzle	ا تعر ا	
ef	راحة	
eve	پرتاح	
ate	طريق	
e	آمن	
at .	مقعد	
rious	جاد/خطير	
oot	يطبق الرصاص	
gnature	توقيع	
ın	أجدابشرة	
rike	ا تدق (الساعة)	
rong-looking	فوي المظمر	
inner	أكثر نحافة	
orn	مفري	
ар	مصيدة امخ	
ust	يثق هي	
hisper	يهمس	
hoever	الما كان	

expect thoug He

apoo

Mars

ride old Kin

> of SO

loyal

The Prisoner of Zenda Summary • Summary • Riding through the old town

Rudolf Rassendyli (dressed as the King) continued his ride through the street expecting a cry from Antoinette de Mauban. When he heard no one calling, he thought she had not recognised him

He heard Marshal Strakencz give an order to his men and they suddenly entered a poor part of the town where the people were loyal to Duke Michael

As this was a change of the route, Rassendyll (the King) thought this was the Marshal's plan to test him.

Suddenly, Rassendyll gave a strange order to the Marshal to tell his soldiers to note ahead of him and told him to wait there until he had continued through the old town alone. He said he wanted the people who lived there to see that their King trusted them.

This behaviour worried Colone Sapt who shook his head but Rudolf insisted on his order and the Marshal did what Rassendyli (the King) asked him.

When he was alone, Rassendyll the King) rode on his own through the streets of the old town. The narrow streets were fined with hundreds of people. Although some people smiled and cheered, others were quiet and looked at him angrily. He even saw many paintings of the Duke in their windows and he knew what they thought of the King.

The coronation ceremony

24.2

100

220

30

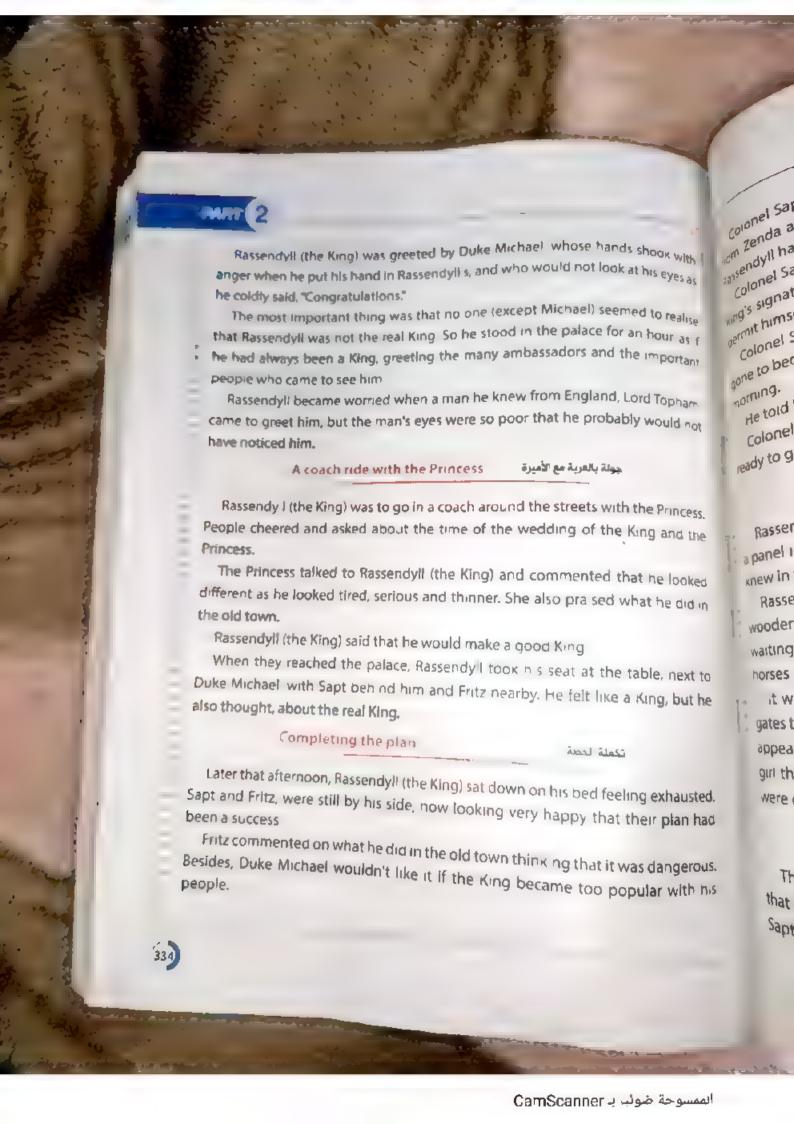
N. Sand

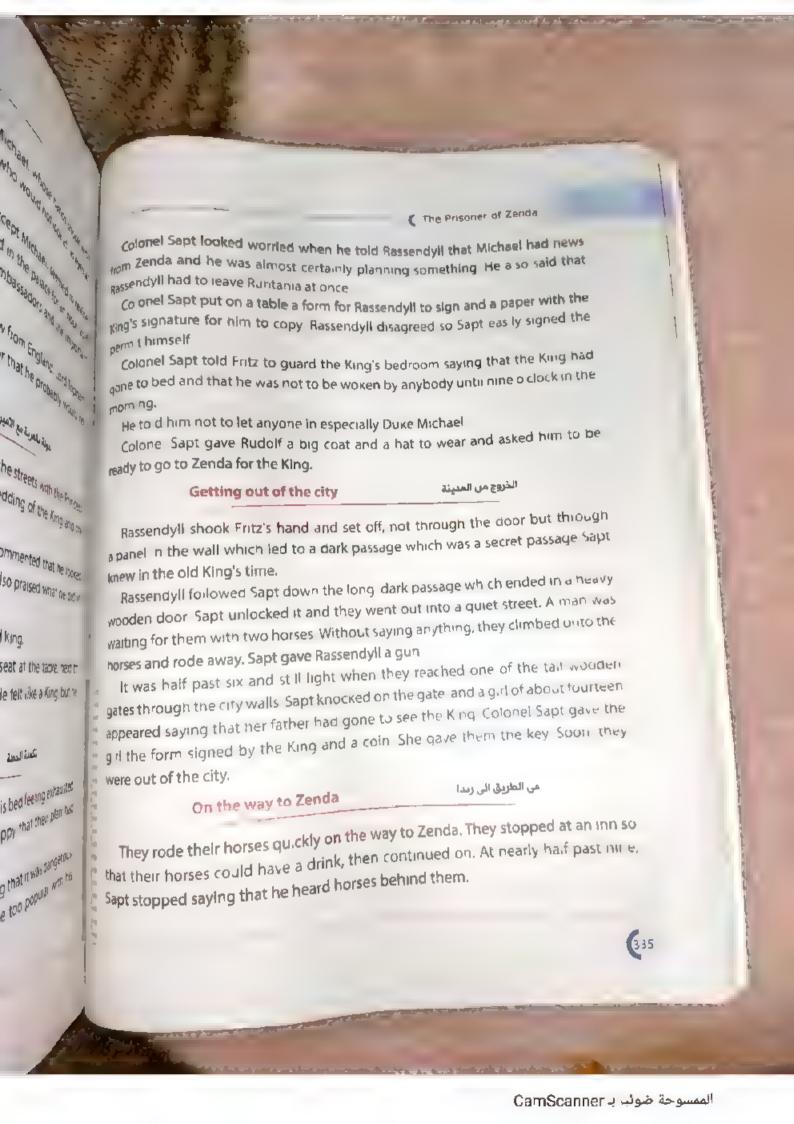
مراسم لتتويج

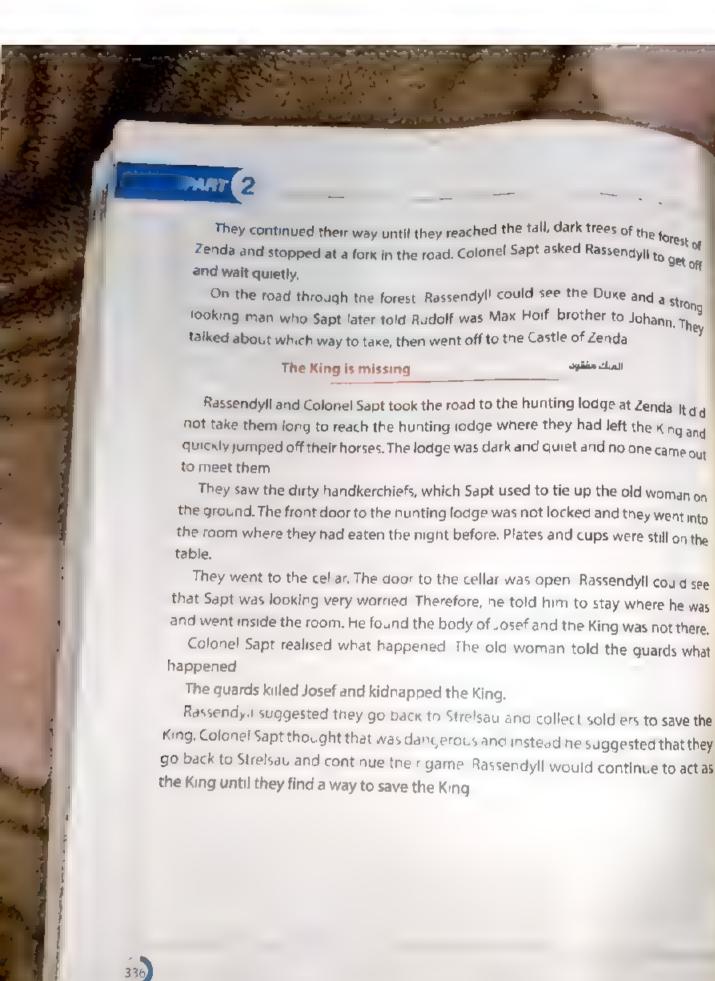
Finally they reached outside the palace safely for the coronation. Rassendyll (the King) was led inside a beautiful building by a group of soldiers. There were a lot of people inside. He saw a beautiful young woman with red hair, who he knew was Princess Flavia, and a man with red cheeks, dark eyes and dark hair who he knew was Michael When he saw Rassendyll the King), his face became white.

Rassendyll (the King) said that he remembered very little of the coronation the golden crown being placed on his head, the promises he was asked to read out and the beautiful music that played when someone announced that Rudolf the Fifth was now King of Ruritania.

333)

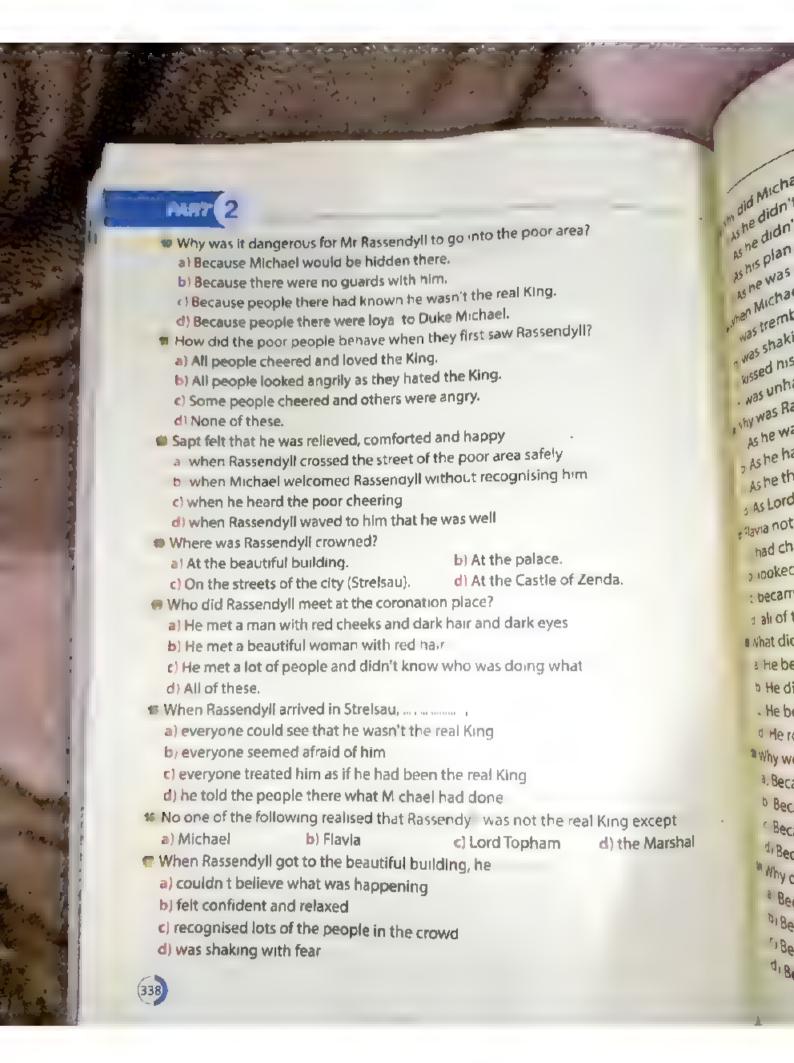




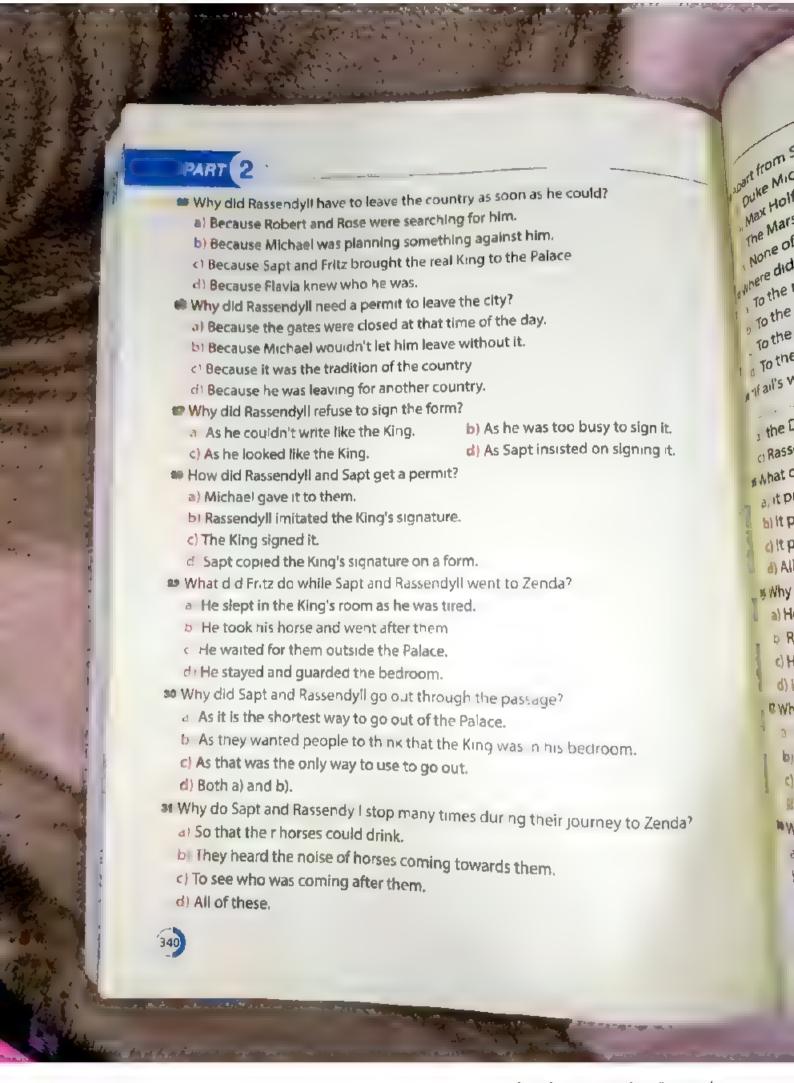


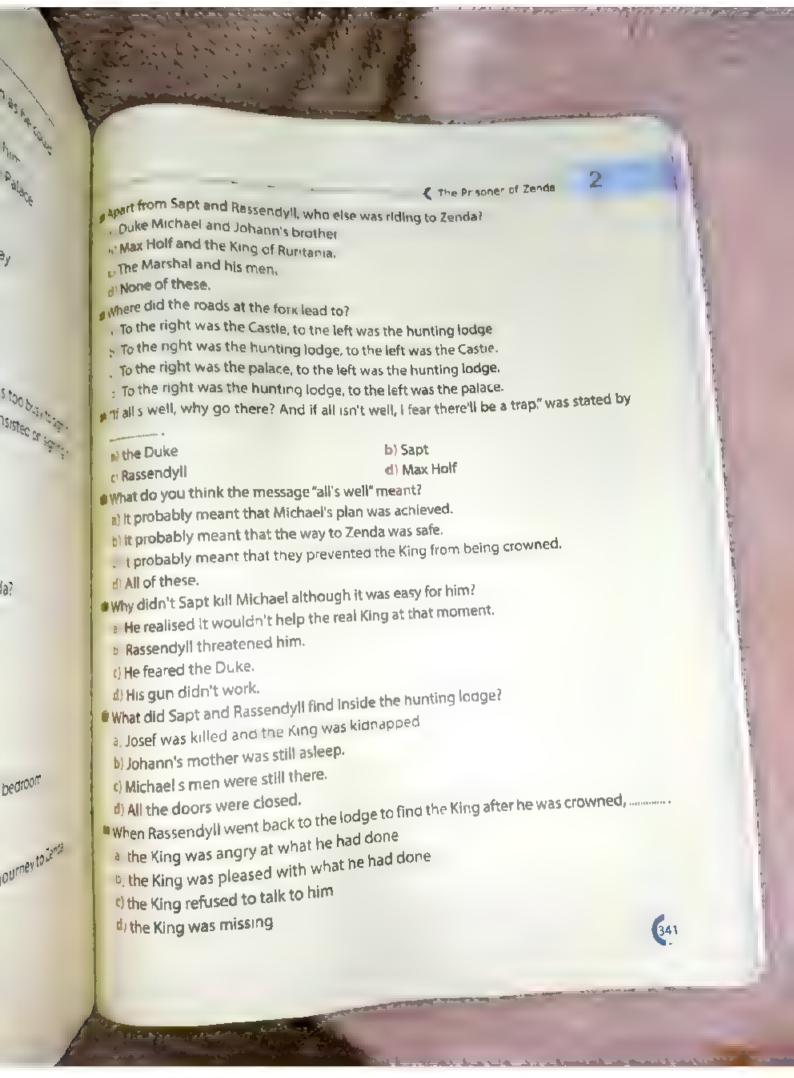
prethe con avoolf Elpho killed here must ! stones i didn't take , joke 1 Rassendyll faise I You have t apersona , What did she tol , she po Herex d She sn , What did a He to h He to .. He to di He to I in order decided ar ride r) give () alloy 4 visit Why w 1 Bec · Bec

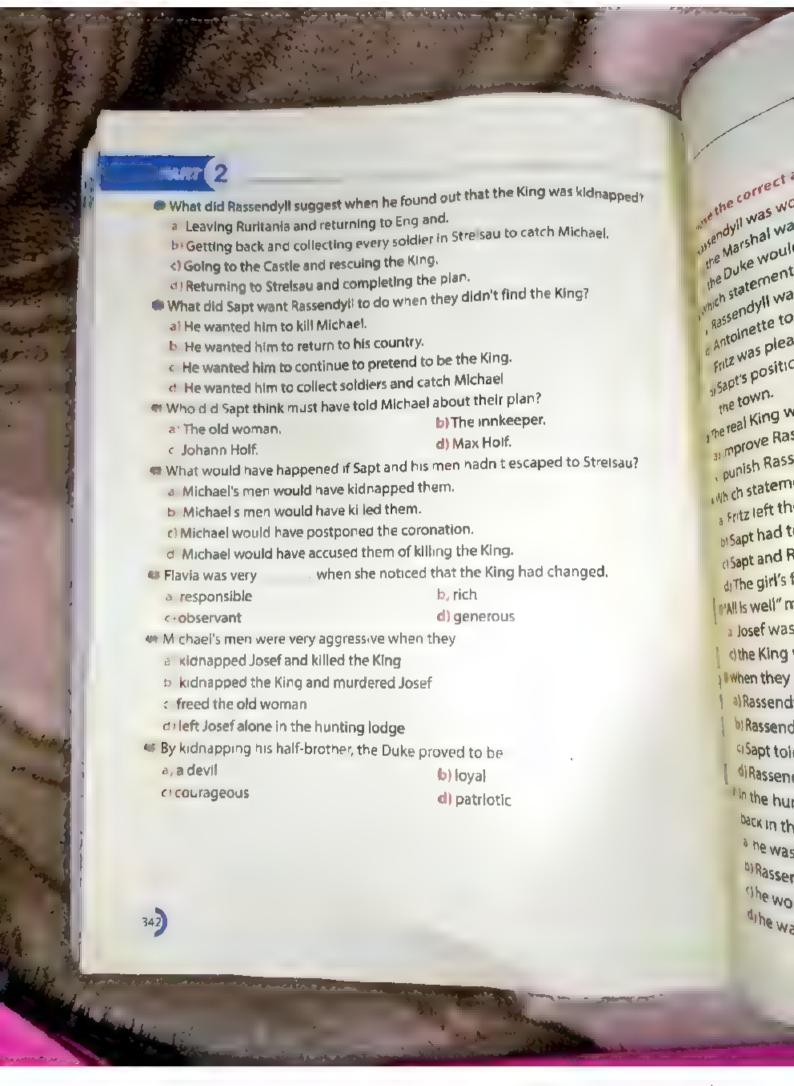
" Bec

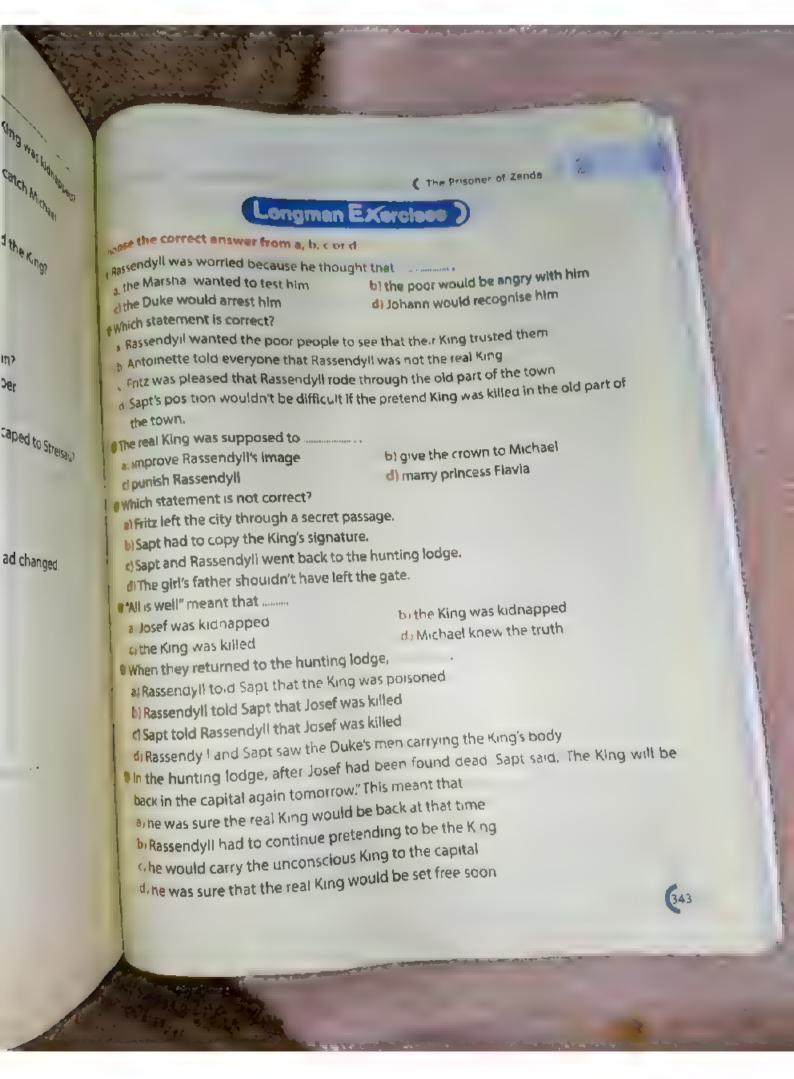


dreal (The Prisoner of Zenda why did Michael's face turn white when he saw the King? As he didn't expect a King to come until that moment. As he didn't recognise Rassendyll's character and thought of him as King. Idyli) As his plan of poisoning his brother wasn't a success As he was busy preparing for the coronation all day. When Michael came to greet the King, he al was trembling with excitement biwas shaking with fear rikissed his dear brother warmly a was unhappy and welcomed him coldly Why was Rassendyll worr ed when he saw Lord Topham? a) As he was a friend of him and would tell the people. b As he had sharp eyes and would recognise him. As he thought he would recognise him a As Lord Topham didn't like the King. • Plavia noticed that the King al had changed and looked different f Zenda. b) looked happier and less serious than before cl became more interested in eating and hunting d) all of these • What did the King do and surprised the Princess? a) He became thinner and t red. at. b) He didn't know her at the coronation. d He became serious and shouted at her. d) He rode alone through the old town *Why were Sapt and Fritz happy at the end of the coronation? a) Because Michael didn't realise that Rassendyll was not the real King b) Because Rassendyll was the King forever. c) Because their plan was a success. d. Because they left the real King in the hunting lodge. Why did Fritz not approve of what Rassendyll had done through the coronation? ea King except d) the Marshall Because the Marshal might kill him. b. Because Michael wouldn't like Rassendyll's popularity Because the real King would be angry. d) Because if Rassendyll became popular, he would marry the Princess. (339)











Important Vocabulary

accent admit as well attract bandage belong to besides. bow breathless bullet capture character complicated convince distant documents doubts during duties

foreigners gap guest guilt head off honest **imprison**

fighter

finger

لمجة معترف ہے ايصنا يجذب عصابة/ضمادة بخص/ينتمي إلي مالإضباعة الى ذلك ينمني الاهيث أمنقطع النعس وصاصلة ياسر

شخصية وهقد يقنع باليد مستند ت شكوك اثباء/خلال

واحبات مقاتل بمحارب امتيع اليد

> اجانب محوة صيف

دلت خطا يتوجه إلى مخلص

يسجن

Introduce Jump up knock later nervously once more otherwise pain permission

protest public push reason

risk rules

serious

show up spade

splendia stalemate

steps

straight hair

subject

unfortunately

waste waving

whatever

within

يقدم شحصت ينعض ليقفر واقتنا يوقع ايطرق أعلى باب) فيما بعد الاحتنا

بعصبية (بتوتر) مرة أخرى

ألم

Colone pretendin

Rasse

Duke kn

Strelsau

King. B

guilt.

Colo

Ras

said th

capita

At

C

seco

froi

Mi

hie

ki

يحتج ايعترص عرمة البلس

يدمع

مخاطرة أيخاطر

غواغد

حطير بقمر

جاروف امحرفة

فلذرا فنطثباز ورطة اطريق مسدود

غطوات

شعر مستقيم

عوضوع لسوء الحظ

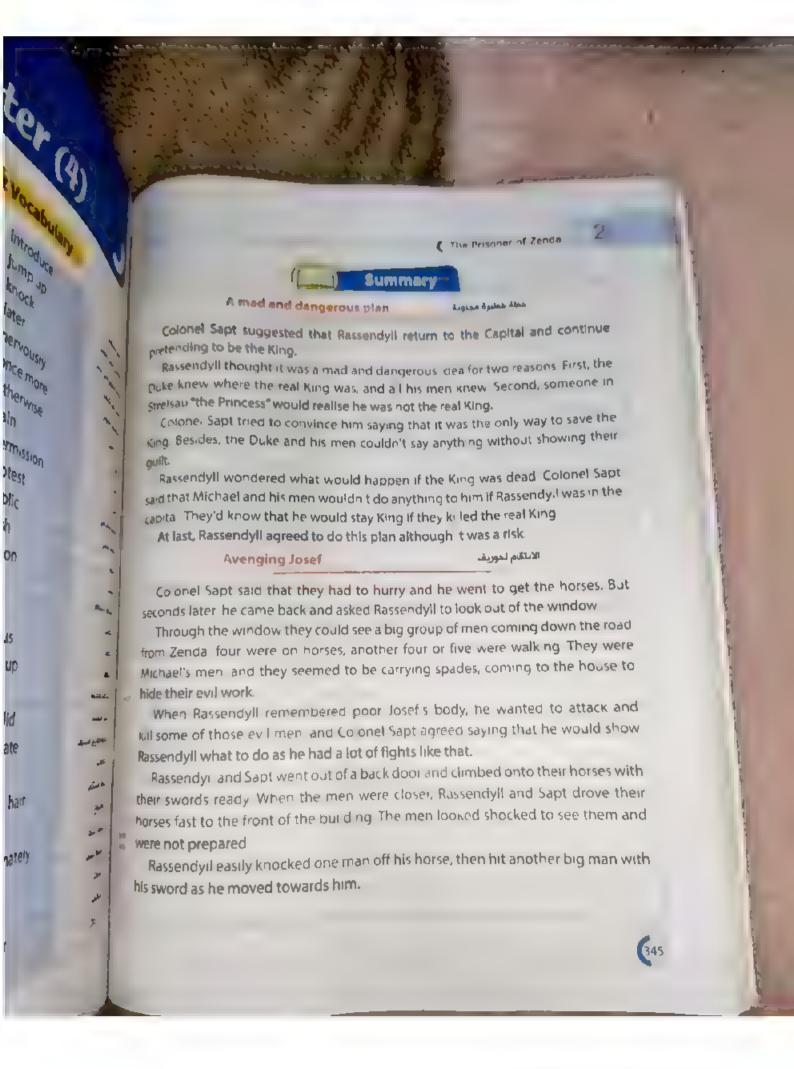
يضيع/يسرف

ملوكا

مغما

، في ملال







When Rassendyll saw that he was surrounded by men, he turned his horse and escaped through a gap between the men. The men fired some shots and Rassendyll was hurt in his finger.

Colonel Sapt asked Rassendy I If they saw who he was, Rassendyli sald one of the men said "it's the King" before he pushed him off his horse

Getting back to the capital

العودة للعاميمة

They continued their way back to the capital. After a time, they stopped so that Sapt could put a bandage on Rassendyll's finger. Then, they stopped at a farm where a farmer let them rest. Rassendyll covered his face, saying to the farmer that he had a bad tooth before they asked for food

They reached the city at about nine o'clock and at this time of day, the city gates were open, so they went back through the gate that they had left from

They returned through the same passage they had used for leaving the palace They found Freyler (Sapt's servant) waiting for them. He asked about Rassengyli (the King)'s injury, Sapt told him that the King caught his finger in a door.

When they got to the King's room, Fritz jumped up and bowed in front of Rassendyll believing he was the King Colone Sapt laughed and said that even Fritz couldn't recognise him

Suddenly they heard a loud knock on the door. Sapt asked Rassendyll to go into the bedroom, take his hat and boots off, climb into bed and cover nimself up so people would think he was asleep

A minute later Sapt came into the bedroom and smiles. He introduced Rassendyl to a polite young gentleman who came and told Rassendyll that he was a servant of Princess Flavia, who had sent him to find out how the King was feeling after the coronation.

After the gentleman had left, Rassendyll told Fritz that the King was held a prisoner by Duke Michael.

Acting like a real King

التصرف كملك جقيقي

The next day, Sapt to d Rassendyll all about the King's duties. He stayed with him as he had to meet many important people during the day.

Passendyll W westion which Withave been Rassendyll a o many impol

After many nore. Fritz to colonel 52 alive if the K When Ra special sold loyal to him Fritz told

> Rassen oopular a the poor ifafight Rasse poor gir

Gautet, Bet

the peo Ona room f Princes

Ras the Pr realise

Ra talker ינטונן.

what

346

The Prisoner of Zenda

Rassendyll was worried when he met the French ambassador who asked him a question which he could not answer, but later Sapt told him the real King would not have been able to answer, either.

Rassendyll also had to tell everyone that he could not write because of his finger, many important documents were not completed.

The famous Six Men

Mary Street Street or Street

THE HOLY STONES K. P.

they stopped as the

2 24.03 EU 1ARS

time of day here as

ed for leaving the see-

e asked about the

and bowed in the

ghed and salong to

sked Rassendy to:

and cover himseld.

He introduced least

dyll that he waser

King was feeting the

that the King ware:

ng s duties. He street

لنعزف كعلك مقنة

the day

finger in a day

had eftiron

الرجال الستة المشعورون

After many hours of meetings, Rassendyll was finally alone with his friends once more. Fritz told them that half of Michael's Six Men were in Strelsau with the Duke Colone. Sapt believed that it was a good sign because that meant the King was alive If the King had been dead, all the Six Men would have been with the Duke. When Rassendyll asked who those Six Men were, Fritz said that they were six special soldiers who Michael kept in his house at all times. They were completely joya, to him. Three were Ruritanians; one was Belgian, one French and one English Fritz told Sapt that the three men in the capital were the three foreigners: De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard.

Visiting Princess Flavia

ريارة الأميرة ملافيا

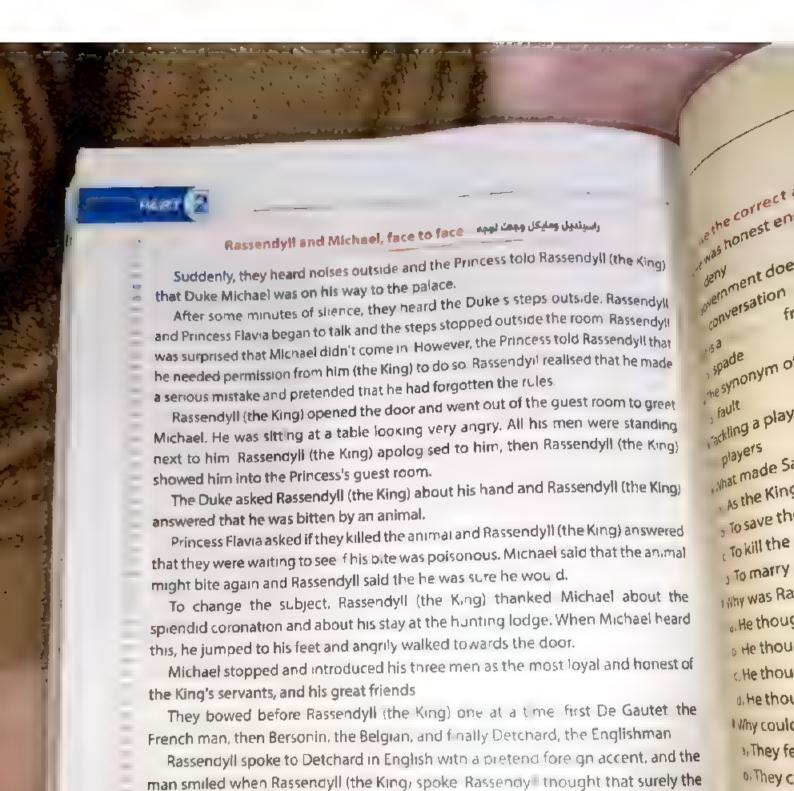
Rassendy I decided to have his own plan. His plan was to make himself as popular as he could, and say nothing bad about Michael. In that way, he could stop the poorer people of Streisau from thinking badly about the King. That would help fa fight happened between him and the Duke

Rassendyll began to visit the park and the old town, he bought flowers from a poor girl giving her a gold coin. As he knew that Princess Flavia was popular with the people, he decided to visit her to get her support

On arriving at the Princess's palace, Rassendy II (the King) was shown into a guest room full of enormous mirrors, paintings and beautiful furniture, and soon the Princess arrived with her servants.

Rassendyll had to be very careful when he talked to the Princess. He needed the Princess to trust him, but he did not want to say too much to her, or she would realise he was not the real King.

Rassendyll tried to be more friendly to the Princess when they talked. They talked about Duke Michael. Rassendyll said he would like to keep his brother near hm. The Princess asked cleverly 'f he would like to keep the Duke near to know What he was doing.



. As the King , To save the c To kill the , To marry 1 Nhy was Ra .He thoug n He thou

players

.He thou di He thou

> Why could 3. They fe

> > o. They c oFlavia di His ha

* What we

4 Peop

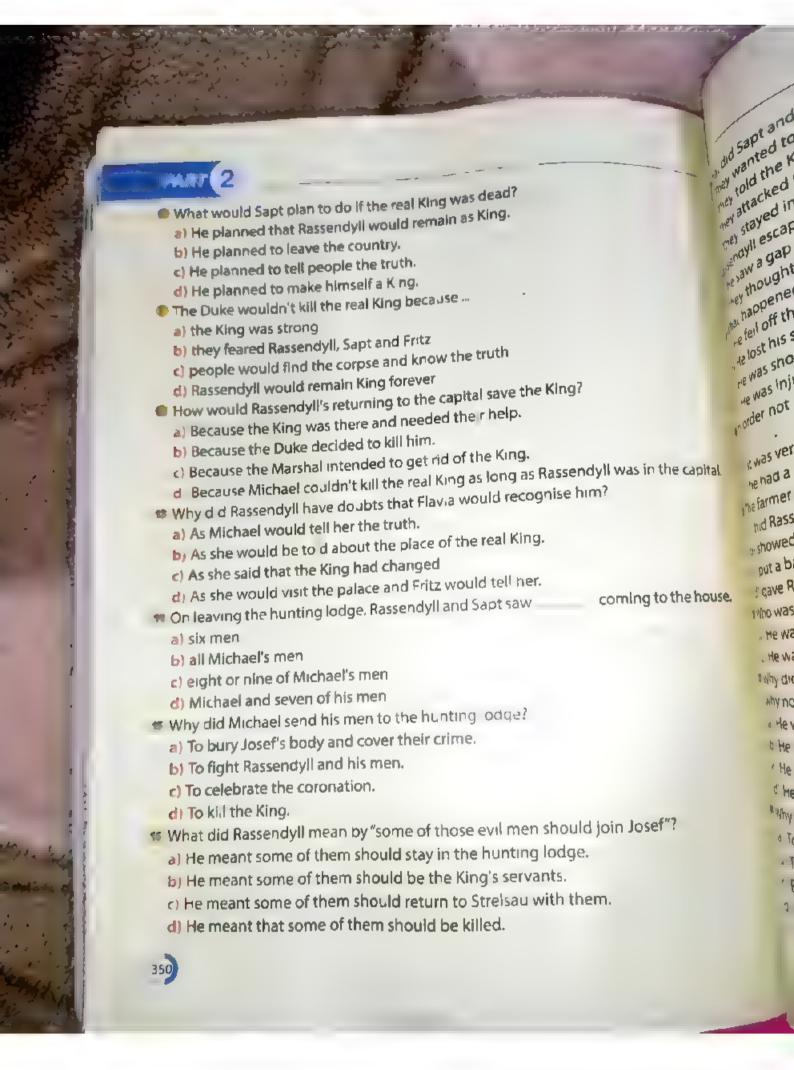
" Sapt The

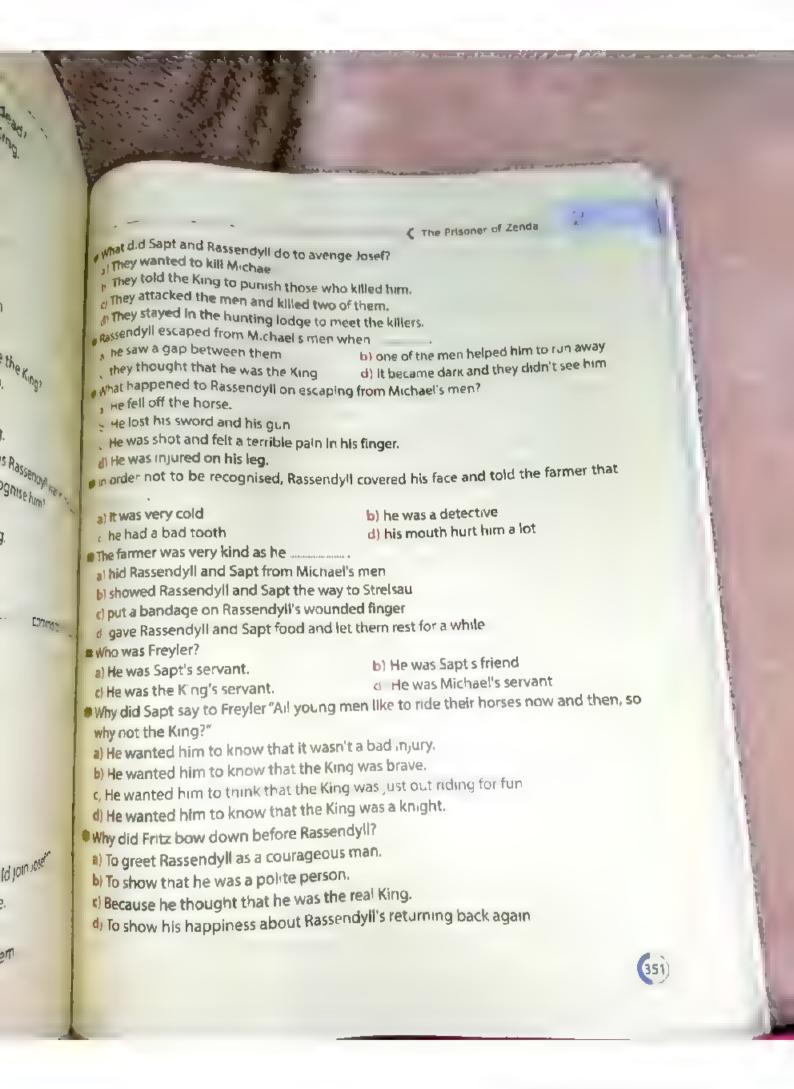
1 The

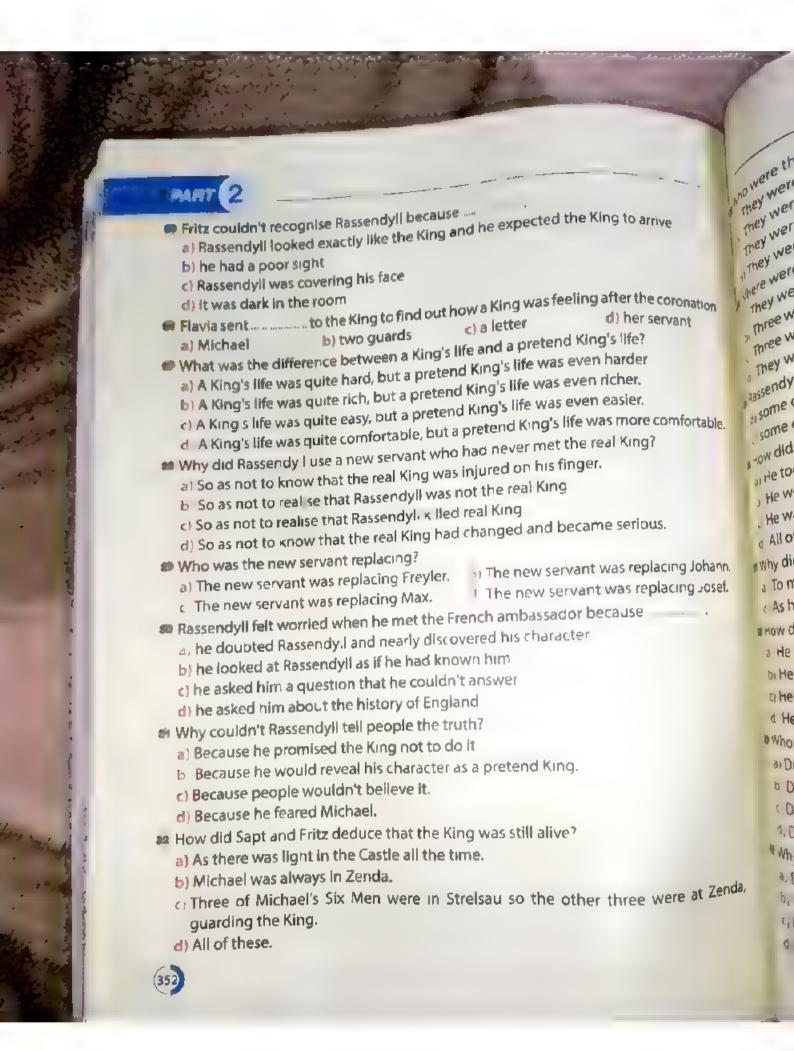
-

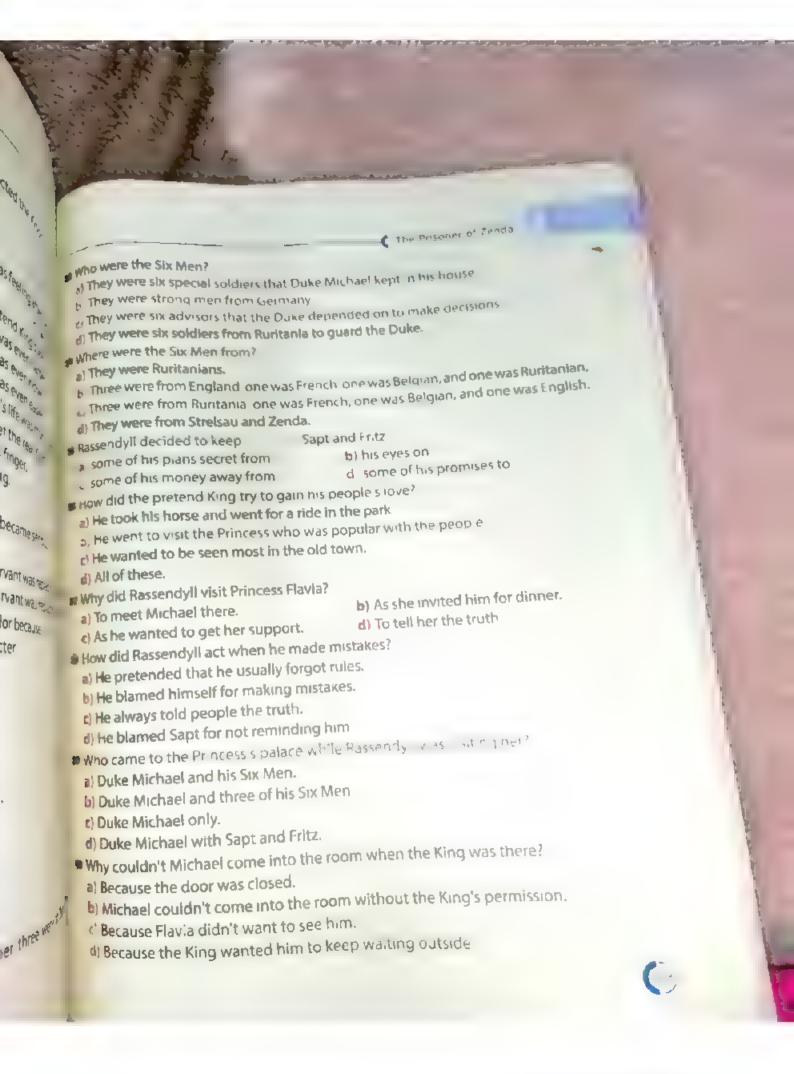
S.x Men all knew the secret.

The Prisoner of Zenda General Exercises) Or Sale Street NE POST SEE noose the correct answer from a, b, cor d: He was honest enough to his mistake in the end. d) admit b) make c) reject government doesn't know who exploded the building, it's still a d) speech , conversation c) stalemate b) subject With the same from a gun that killed the boy in the demonstration. d) bullet c) marbie a spade The synonym of the word "guilt" is d) blamelessness c) virtue b) innocence al fault Packling a player without the ball is against the d) pitch c) referee b) rules what made Sapt insist on Rassendyn's returning to Streisau? a As the King was still alive and wanted to meet him. ne king answer 5 To save the crown and rescue the King. id that me are d To kill the Duke and avenge Josef. d) To marry the Princess and live in the palace. chael about -• Why was Rassendyll afraid to return to the capital? en Michael ea) He thought Michael would tell the people the truth. b) He thought he would be kidnapped by Michael's men. c) He thought the Princess would realise his character. ral and hores: d) He thought the King would be in the palace and would punish him. Why couldn't Michael and his menited the truth? De Saute 7 al They feared Rassendyll and the King. Englishman by They couldn't say anything without admitting kidnapping the King and killing Josef. accent arcin t that size of c) Flavia wouldn't believe them di His half-brother would be angry What would happen if they didn't have a King in Strelsau? a People would choose Sapt to be King. b) Sapt and Fritz would look for another King. The city would belong to Michael within twenty-four hours. d) There would be a civil war in the city. 349









MART

- What mistake did Rassendyll make?
 - a) He forgot the Duke's name.
 - b) He told the Princess the truth.
 - c) He didn't give Michael permission to enter the room.
- d) He visited the Princess without permission. What did Rassendy I (the King) tell Michael and F avia about his wound?
 - a) He told them that his finger was caught in a door.
 - b) He said one of Michael's men shot him.
 - c) He told them that he was bitten by an animal.
 - d) He said he was born with it.
- Which three of the Six Men did Michael introduce to the King?
 - a) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Max, Johann and Rupert.
 - b) He introduced the three foreigners: Bersonin, De Gautet and Detchard
 - c) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Rupert, Crafestein and Detchard.
 - d) He introduced the three Ruritanians: Rupert Crafestein and Leungram.
- Why does Duke Michael want Rassendyll to meet his special soldiers?
 - b) He wants to frighten Rassendyll. a) He wants to be friendly.

 - c) He wants them to work for Rassendyll. d) He wants Rassendyll to give them a job.

we the cor

ne King had

strelsau

the forest

der the rea

contin

, 10 go ba

not to te

not to t

1900olf Ra

the Kin

, he cou

people

· Flavia

Hichael

. Flavi

3 Sapt

a peo

: Frit

11 ther

- Fry

: 29

1 1

1)ne

1

- How did Rassendyll know that the Six Men also knew his secret?
 - a) They told him that.
 - b) Michael said that to him.
 - c) From the way Detchard (the Englishman) smiled at him
 - d) When Bersonin smiled at him.
- Flavia was the only one to notice that
 - a) Rassendyll wasn't the real King
- Rassendyli s finger was hurt

c) The King had changed

- d Rassendyll made a mistake.
- 47 Sapt's second plan was more dangerous than the first one as
 - a) it was made in the hunting lodge
 - b) Rassendyli would carry it out
 - c) they aidn't know how long Rassendyll would stay as a pretend King
 - d) it would be in Strelsau
- m Sapt had such a strong influence on Rassendyll's actions that
 - a) Rassendyll decided to return to England secretly
 - b) He made Rassendyll visit the Princess
 - c) He persuaded him to return to Strelsau to be King
 - d) He made Rassendyll appear in the old town more often



The Prisoner of Zenda Longman Exercises answer from a b cord the King had been kidnapped from ... b) the castle of Zenda Strelsau othe forest d) the hunting lodge After the real King had been kidnapped, Sapt asked Rudolf Rassendyll a to continue pretending to be the King al to go back to England a not to tell anyone that he wasn't the real King Chard dinot to try to rescue the King Rudolf Rassendyll thought that Sapt's plan was too dangerous as at the King wouldn't accept it h. he couldn't speak German well BEATS! d people might realise that he was not the real King an Flavia knew that he wasn't the real King Michael would not say that Rassendyll wasn't the real King because if he did, a) Flavia would be angry b) Sapt would tell the chief of the police d people would ask him where the real King was d fritz would tell the people the truth if there was not a King in Strelsau, a) Fritz would be in charge of the capital b) Sapt would support Michael c) Rassendyll would go back to England d) the city would belong to Michael within 24 hours One of Michael's men shot Rudolf Rassendyll and a, he felt a terrible pain in his finger b) hurt his shoulder d) grabbed his gun c) broke his leg According to Sapt, when would Rudolf Rassendyll stay King for life? Rassendyll would stay King forever if a he married Flavia b) the real King was killed Michael asked him to do so d) he returned to England

lan

Chapter (5)

J

Important Vocabulary

accept	يقبل	leafy
ambitions	ظموحات	messenger
argument	اجدال	murder
authority	سلطة	notice
avenue	طريق (غالبنا ذو شجر)	occasional
ball	حفل راقص	popularity
Chief of Police	ِ رئيس الشرطة	protect
cover up	يعطى عثى	punish
criminals	مجرموں	reluctantly
fair	عادل	rescue
footsteps	خطوات أقدام	ruler
forever	للاحد	society
French window	نافذة فرنسية (باب رجاجي)	steps
generous	كريم	suppose
growing	متزايد	trap
imprison	پسين	
iron	حدید/حدیدی	truth

مورق يدو اوراق رسول امتعوث بقتل بجريمة قتل شعرة/شعبية يعلقب على كرم ابمعارصة مجتمع نرجات سلم يعترض

بُوقع من شيرك

The Prisoner of Zenda



Princess Flavia warns the King

الاعبرة فلافيا تحدر الملك

Rassendyl! (the King) said goodbye to Michael and his men. He wasn't sorry to do that.

He was sad to say goodbye to Princess Flavia. He even thought about tealing her the truth.

Before Rassendyll (the King) left, Princess Flavia asked him to be careful of something she didn't want to say She also said that he was important for the people of Ruritania.

Rassendyll remembered what Rose had said about his brother Robert back in England and about Robert's responsibilities. He suddenly realised how many responsibilities he had in Ruritania.

Colone! Sapt's important news

أحبار العقيد سابت المامة

Over the next few weeks, no one seemed to notice Rassendyll was not the real King of Ruritania.

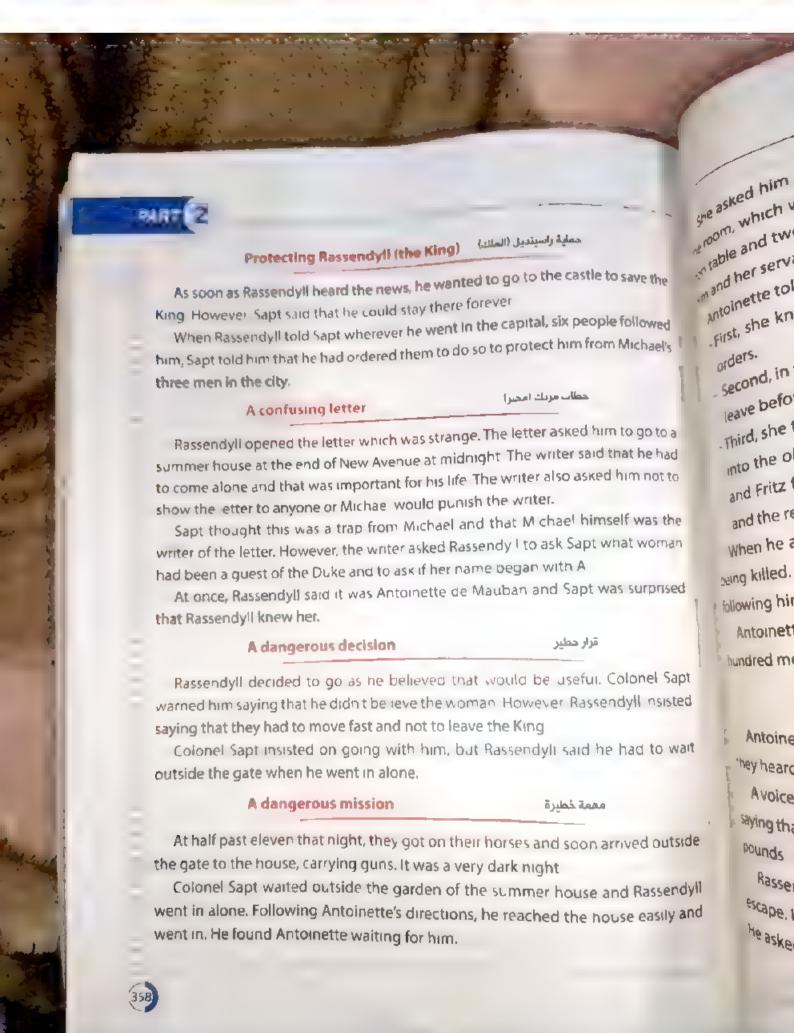
Rassendyll learnt a lot about how a country was run, but he made mistakes, sometimes big ones. He became very good at pletending he had roigotten rules or people that he had met.

Rassendyll hoped his growing popularity with the people of Runtania would help them to forgive his occasional bad decisions

One day Colonel Sapt came to Rassendyll with a letter from a woman and also he had important news.

Colonel Sapt gave the letter to Rassendy Land told him the news. He said that he knew that the real King was in the Castle of Zenda. He asked where the rest of the Six Men, Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert Hentzau, were and found out that they were all there at the castle.

Colonel Sapt also said that people said the drawbridge was always nearly kept up. No one came into the building without the permiss on of Rupert or Michael



Rasser

The Prisoner of Zenda

she asked him to shut the door. He did as she asked and then looked around the room, which was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small por table and two chairs. In the soft light, he could just see Antoinette in front of him and her servant behind.

Antoinette told him very important information:

C take the

CHOVIED

Michon.

gatos

he ned

notto

25 The

oman n

) Ked

Sapt

sted

wart

de

- . First, she knew he was not the King and she wrote that letter at the Duke's
- Second, in twenty minutes, three men would be there to kill him, so he had to leave before they arrived.
- Third, she told him the Duke's plan, which was to kill him and to take his body into the old town. It would be found and Michael would arrest Colonel Sapt and Fritz for murdering the King. Then a messenger would be sent to Zenda and the real King would be murdered too. The Duke would then become King.
- When he asked her why she helped him, she said she didn't like to see people being killed. That's why he shouldn't be alone anywhere as the three men were following him and his guards.

Antoinette also told him that there was a ladder for him against a wall about a hundred metres from the house to use it to escape.

Rasser dyll escapes death

راسيندين ينجو من الموت

Antoinette was about to tell him the exact place of the King in the castle when they heard the three men outside.

Avoice, which Rassendyll thought was Detchard's spoke in English from outside saying that they offered him a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.

Rassendyll pretended to accept the offer and started to prepare the plan to escape. He picked up the iron table and held it by the legs so it was in front of him. He asked them to open the door, as he couldn't. As soon as Detchard opened the

359



door, Rassendyll ran at him as fast as he could holding the table in front of him. He used the table to protect himself then he fired some shots. Luckily, he managed to escape through the ladder which Antoinette had to d him about

He found Sapt trying to get into the garden. They jumped on their horses and rode quickly back to the palace.

The ball

الحقل الراقص

The next day, Sapt read Rassendyll (the King) the latest report from the Chief of Police. The Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda, followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm. Rassendyll's shot, which he fired behind him while running, had been a good one.

The second report talked about the King's marriage. People said that if the King did not marry Princess Fiavia soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau.

Rassendyll (the King) was surprised when Fritz said he had prepared a ball in which Sapt thought Rassendyll had to ask the Princess to marry him

At the ball Rassendyll (the King) sat after eating with the Princess and some other guests in a small room by the palace gardens. The servants brought them coffee and they had time to talk.

The Princess said good words about the few weeks he had been King. Rassendy I again remembered Rose talking about responsibilities.

Rassendyll (the King) made a mistake when he said that when he was younger, he didn't think he needed to worry about society. He thought that was someone else's job. The Princess was surprised

Strangely, instead of saying something to cover up his mistake, Rassendyli wanted to tell the Princess the truth. Before he could complete his words, he looked up and jumped with fright, because Sapt's face suddenly appeared at the French window. Sapt came and told him that someone wanted to see him

They returned to the ball, but the Princess went quickly away with her servants.

360

الممسوحة ضوليا بـ CamScanner

preparing the next more at Althous

pefore going

pefore going

perore going

pe

When Ras Whan Ras Mauban.

Rassend'

ne Duke's Rassen

He wa ressage authority

o allow

of Quert;

the th

The Prisoner of Zenda preparing for a new dangerous mission الإعداد تمهمة جديدة حطبرة The next morning, Sapt and Rassendy, I sat in his room thinking about what to do next. Although Rassendyll was the King, and could even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed. Sapt trusted he wouldn't do that because he was a good man. Before going to rescue the King, Rassendyll decided to visit Princess Flavia. He wanted at least to warn her that the situation in Buritania was not as good as she he leved it to be. Princess Flavia told Rassendyll (the King) that she had received two letters. One was from Michael, who had invited her to visit Zenda and another letter warning her and asking her not to go anywhere without many guards. When Rassendyll (the King) read the other letter, he knew it was from Antoinette de Mauban. He agreed to that letter and said he would order guards to watch her. не asked her to pretend to be ill and apologise for not going to Zenda. Rassendyll visited Marshal Strakencz and asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. He told him he was worried about the Duke's ambitions. Rassendyil gave Marshal Strakencz these last instructions: He was leaving Strelsau for a few days. Every evening, he would send him a

if Nith He

naged to

Izes and

Chief of

بار بن ال

endyll's

JE KIDD

ed कि

ball in

30mg

them

endyli

pger.

6045

novi

OKED

entr

nts.

message. If the Marsha didn't get a message for three days he would have the authority to say that he was the head of Strelsau. He should, then, ask the Duke to allow him to see the King If he didn't allow him to see the King in twenty-four hours, he would have to say that the King is dead. Then he should tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler would be When Rassendyll asked him if he knew Who the new ruler would be, the Marsha. said that Princess Flavia would be the new ruler.



General Exercises

for stealing from the shop.

to search this building looking for drugs

of an old man in his house.

b) rewarded

d) awarded

b) iron

d) glass

d) willingly

b) happiness

d) authority

b) murder

d) avoidance

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Two of the young friends have been
 - a) inspected
 - c) imprisoned
- The animal was kept in a small room with a window with escape.
 - a) soft
- We _____ agreed to go with our parents to the theatre. We don't like plays. b) readily
 - a) reluctantly
 - c) happily
- The police officers have the
 - a) will
 - c) sorrow
- 5 The police are investigating the
 - a) search
 - c) disappearance
- As Rassendyll behaved well as a King,
 - a) he was given the name "Rudolf E phberg"
 - b) no one noticed that he was a pretend King
 - c) Michael couldn't accuse him in public
 - d) Sapt decided to appoint him as King forever
- 7 What might help the people in Ruritan a forgive Rassendy is occasional bad decisions?
 - a) He was becoming more popular with them
 - b) He resemb ed the King.
 - c) He threatened them.
 - d) He spoke German well.
- Rupert had such an important role like the Duke that
 - a) he wanted to be King
 - b) he wanted to kill Michael to be a Duke
 - c) he was responsible for the drawbridge
 - d) he poisoned the real King to stop him from being a King

ar drawbridge MW 45 SUFE whing could "that could agert used t of did Sapt th

bit it was fr that it was V not Michae mat it seen ything that neeting S

bars on it to prevent

*avelling sking mu having or that show , choosin : HIS INSIS

Keeping 1 Not be Ishat did · Sapt T

: Sapt : Sapt 1 5301 1 9 DIO

: 530 : 50 10

The Prisoner of Zenda as the drawbridge was always kept up. sapt was sure that the King was still alive 5 240b hithe King couldn't escape Michael couldn't visit the King in the old castle Rupert used the moat to go to the mansion MS ON ILL OF THE what did Sapt think about the letter? That it was from the real King in Zenda. h That it was written in English. That Michael wrote it That it seemed to be from a man. like plays. The thing that Rassendyll hadn't expected to do before was meeting Sapt and Fritz in the forest of Zenda h travelling to Ruritania and meeting Michael's Six Men c taking much responsibility and having no time to waste or drugs a naving much money and becoming rich what showed that Rassendyll was an honourable man? a) Choosing a new servant replacing Josef. b) His insistence on going to Zenda and saving the King. c) Keeping some secrets from Sapt and Fritz. d) Not being afraid of Michael's Six Men. What did Sapt mean when he said "You II probably stay there forever if you do"? a Sapt meant that Rassengyll would either be imprisoned or killed in Zenda b) Sapt meant that Rassendyll would be King in Zenda. c Sapt meant that the King would choose him to stay in Zenda. di Sapt meant that Rassendyll would prefer to stay in Zenda To protect Rassendyil from Michael's men, a) Sapt had Fritz follow Rassendyll everywhere ddecisions b) Sapt gave a letter to Rassendyll to read c) Sapt had Six Men follow Rassendyll everywhere d) Sapt decided to guard Rassendyll himself Who did Rassendyll and Sapt suspect really wrote that letter? b) The Duke al Michael's brother d) Flavia. c) Antoinette Where would Rassendyll and the writer of the letter meet? b) At the castle. At the summer house. d) At the hunting lodge. c) At Zenda. 363)

wom was Rast eGautet, Bers Bersonin PART Supert, De Gal When did Rassendyll threaten Sapt to go back to England? a) When Sapt objected to his going to Zenda to rescue the King. b) When Sapt asked h m to return to Strelsau to be a King. c) When Sapt asked him to sign the form to get out of the city. d) When Sapt objected to his going to the summer house. Where was Antoinette de Mauban staying at the time of writing the letter? a) At the castle with the King. b) At the mansion with the Duke. c) At a place Sapt and Rassendyli didn't know in Streisau. d) At the summer house. Why dld Rassendyll insist on meeting Antoinette? a) He hoped to get information to save the King quickly. b) He hoped to meet Michael and kil him. c) He wanted to give her another letter to Michael. d) He wanted to see the summer house. Where did Sapt wast for Rassendyll when the latter went to meet Antoinette? b) Inside the summer house. a) At the palace. d) Beside the statue of the horse. c) Outside the gate to the house. ♣ Anto nette toid Rassendyl that in twenty minutes three men will be there to b) reward him a) kidnap him d) bury him c) kill him n Michael's clever plan, what would happen to Colonei Sapt and Captain Fritz? a) They would be left alone in the palace. b) They wou d be arrested for murdering the King. c) They would be sent to kill the King in the castle d) They would be kined by Rassendyll. 23 Why did Antoinette offer to help Rassendyl? a) As she wanted to punish Duke Michael. b) As she wanted Rassendyll to be the King of Ruritania. c) As she didn't like to see people being killed. d) As she wanted to be a Queen. How did Antoinette de Mauban he p Rassendyll to escape? a) She gave him the key of the gate. b) She told him about the place of the statue of a horse. c) She offered nim 50 000 pounds and a safe journey to the border.

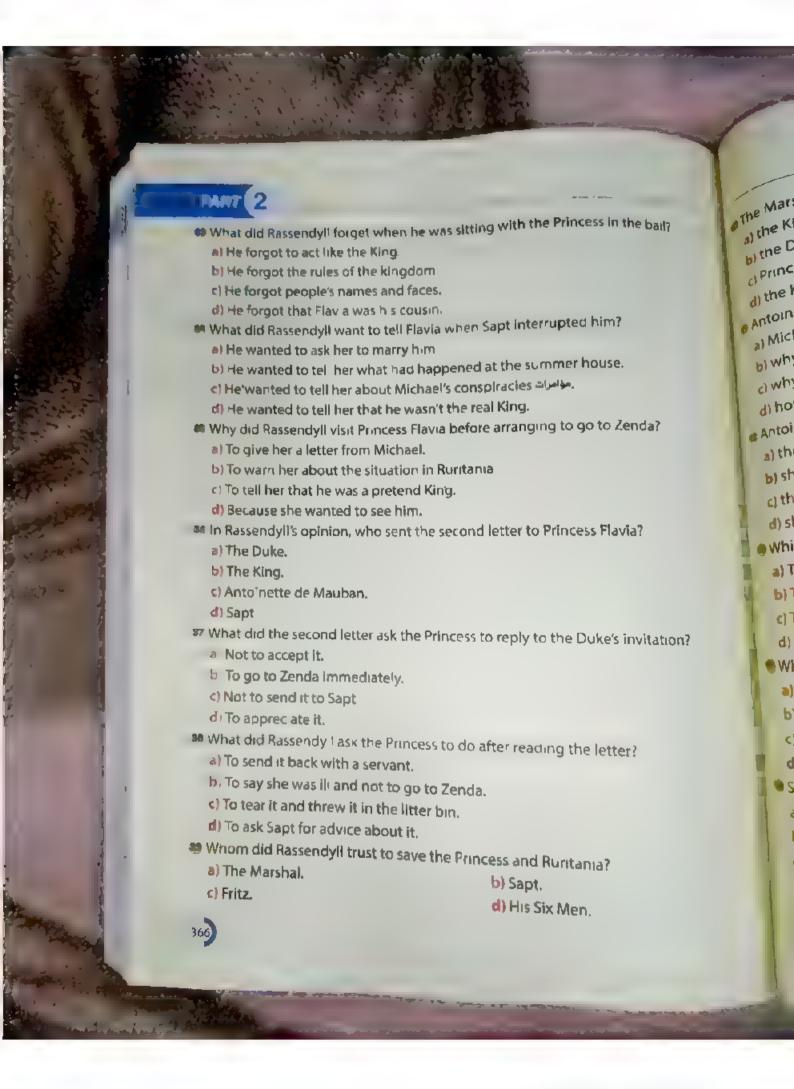
d) She told him about the ladder which he could climb and escape.

ne Gautet Be mesumer h one million p one million F 50 000 piece 50 000 pour W Would Ar she would , she would She would she would Michael's me INSSWORD , the iron to in the sum Detchare De Gaut according · As the I b As the + As the d As the I why did a. As the b As th ", As th 1 Asth thiny di

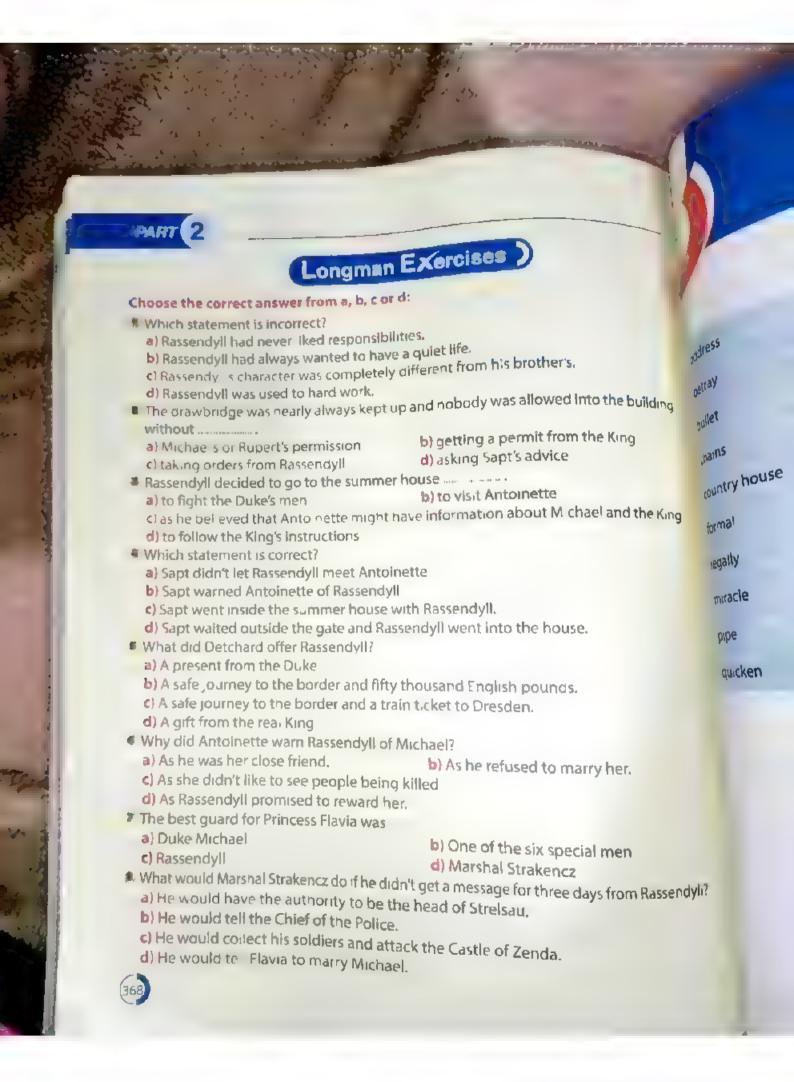
· Ass

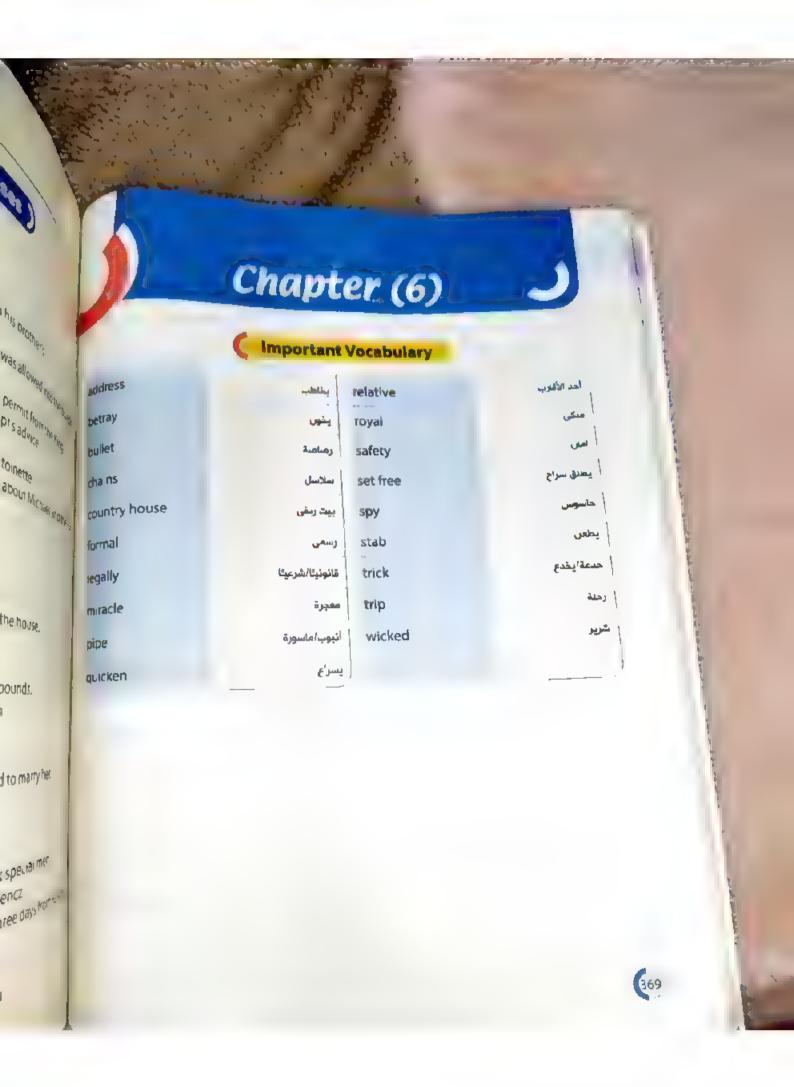
- A51

The Prisoner of Zenda whom was Rassendyll trapped in the summer house? De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard Max, Bersonin and Detchard, the letters Rupert, De Gautet and Detchard. De Gautet, Bersonin and Rupert. one million pieces of gold blone million pounds a 50 000 pieces of gold d 50 000 pounds HOW would Antoinette de Mauban lie to Michael's men? , She would tell them that Rassendyll left Ruritania hi She would tell them that Rassendyll was ill. a She would tell them that Rassendyll never came Al She would tell them that Rassendyll eft before their arrival. Pitomette? whichael's men fired their guns but Rassendyll defended himself with Olise b) the adder a his sword the horse d) the door of the iron table At the summer house, Rudolf Rassendyll injured ... there to b) M chael a Detchard d) Bersonin c De Gautet * According to the report, why were the people of the capital unhappy? aptain Fraz' a) As the King was always abroad. b) As the King took no steps about his marriage d As the King didn't like his nalf-brother. di As the King I kes eating to solving their problems *Why did Sapt and Fritz prepare a ball for the Princess? As the Princess wanted to meet the King and talk to him. As the Princess wanted to tell the King that he had changed cl As they wanted the Princess to ask Rassendyl for marr age. d As they wanted Rassendy I to ask the Princess to marry him Why didn't Rassendyll want to ask the Princess for marriage? a As she wasn't beautiful. b As he didn't have enough money for marriage. t) As it wouldn't be fair to the Princess. di As the Duke would be angry.



eliciat in ignification as wast's would be the head of Stressor the Cing left for Zenda and stated more than two dars . The Duke dignitial ion the Warshallto see the king in 24 hours ייי טפיני בי שפינים פינים בי גם מסים ל . The King sent him a message even day Anomette de Maubanite siRaksendk , withae's bian to become kind an the ites Michael who she was the summer house : now to escape from Rumtania and nette de Mauban was no longer staying with Michael as his guest because , men were now married • she wanted to leave Ruritania they had had a big argument 5:35 : she was trying to catch Rassendyll ant to tel. Sapt about? The story of Michael's plan to get rid of them. : The stork of the offer that Wichaels men wanted him to accept. : The story of the table which protected him from the enemies. t & oftresh THE PROPERTY. ● Afzi did Anto hetre de Malipanite (Rassendy) in her letter? a Ste told nim the way to the summer house s Shero gram Winner is plan to kill the King. o She told him to save the King. 6' She told him Michael's plan to kill him. First thed to help Rassendyll in the summer house by wating outside the door of the summer house until Rassendy I got out through at Michael's three men and trying to get into the gate ' rooding the table against Michae's three men preventing Michael's men from entering the summer house 367,









Preparing to save the King

الإعداد لأنقاد المرك

That ever

but went to

Rasseno

have a me

iood, he u

The gi

who had

Rasse

he wan

worked

Rass

AS

them

men

off

R

meet 1

Rassendyll (the King) told Marshal Strakencz that he had to promise to protect Princess Flavia from the Duke. As his mother was not royal, he could only legally become King if he married the Princess.

Rassendyll (the King) wrote down his orders so that people could believe the Marshal To cover up the difference in his handwriting, he said that his finger still hurt him

Rassendyll (the King), Sapt and Fritz got ready to go to Zenda. Before they went, Rassendyll (the King) went to visit Princess Flavia.

Rassendyll (the King) went to tell Flavia that he was leaving Streisau to go hunting, When she disapproved of that, he said that he was going to hunt Michael The Princess looked worried.

He asked the Princess to be Queen if he didn't come back. Although she seemed sorry, she said that she would do whatever was right for Ruritania.

Before they left for their journey, Fritz asked a relative who had a large modern country house called Tarlenheim eight kilometres from Zenda to use that house for a hunting trip. The relative agreed.

Another journey to Zenda

رحلة لحرى لزندا

The next day, Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll set off from the capital and arrived at the country house at about midday, with a large party of servants and ten brave and strong gentlemen that Rassendyll (the King) trusted

They had to d those men that Michael had tried to kill the King and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the cast e. They knew it was their job to set him free.

A message from the Duke

رسالة من الدوق

Soon, Duke Michael sent the three Ruritanians Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau to visit them with a message. Rupert Hentzau told Rassendyll that Duke Michael and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if they stayed away.

Rassendyll (the King) said he was sorry to hear that and asked Rupert about Detchard's injury. Rupert smiled and said that he would be fine.

The Prisoner of Zenda At the inn once more مي الفييق مرة أحرى That evening, Rassendyll went to Zenda with Fritz. They did not go near the castle. tut went to the inn where Rassendyll had stayed on his first night in Ruritania Rassendyll kept the coat over his face as they entered the inn and they asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back. When the owner's daughter brought the food, he uncovered his face so she could see him Total State The girl was afraid and said that she had told her mother that it was the King who had visited them before. She asked the King's forgiveness BI! Rassendyll said he would forgive her if she agreed to help them. When he said ST. he wanted to meet Johann, she said that he didn't go to the inn any more as he The worked in the castle. Rassendyll asked her to meet him and ask him to come to the country house to med meet the King. They ate the food and went back to Tarlenheim. As they got off the r horses, Sapt ran out of the house to meet them. He told Der: mem that one of their men, Bernstein, went out alone in the woods. He saw three DUSE men in the trees and one shot him. He was upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm حطة أخرى فاشلة Another unsuccessful plan The next day, Rupert visited the house alone. He told Rassendyll that the Duke ed at offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces. STATE Rassendyll refused the offer and told him to go away. Rupert gave him a cold look and asked his servant to prepare his horse. right Rassendyll followed him out of the house and just as he was about to climb on his PE. horse, he stopped and stepped nearer to Rassendyll and suddenly stabbed him in the shoulder with his knife. Rassendyl icried out, but Rupert rode off fast Rassendyil was put to bed and told to sleep. When he woke up it was dark and upert found Fritz beside him. He told him that a doctor came and examined him and said DUKE f they that his arm would be better soon. Fritz also told him that the girl had brought Johann to the house. He was

bour

downstairs ready and happy to help.

371



A very useful spy

واسوس معيد جدًا

zine corre

-onour we young sol

,word

macle

of criminal

puched

ne famous

good

what did R

To kill th

To resci

To prot

: To kill

100 what

if his I

ther

I Why CO

a As hi

s Ash

What r

d He

0 He

" He

1 He

The

die

Rassendyll went downstairs to talk to Johann. As they talked to him, he understood that Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one. He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him, and he seemed happy to tell them Michael's secrets.

Johann told them all about the castle and M chael's plans in detail.

He told them that there were two small rooms inside the castle, which they could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows, so it was always lit by candles Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains. From the window, a large stone pipe ed down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the SIx Men.

Michael's wicked plans

خطط مايكل الشريرة

He said the guards were told that, if some people attacked the first room, Detchard should go into the other room and k. I the King. The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing just an empty room.

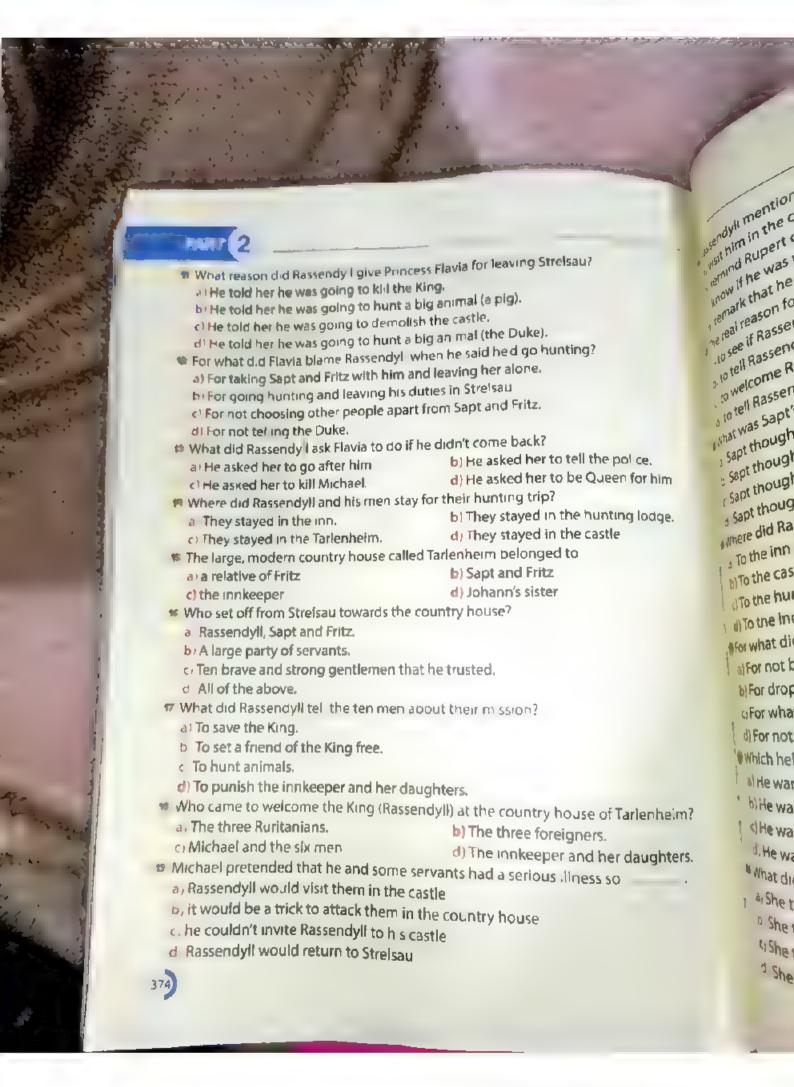
Rassendyl, asked what would happen if he attacked the castle with many men. Johann said if the castle was attacked by a large group of soldiers, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was only keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he had been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there

Jonann said that the King knew all about those plans

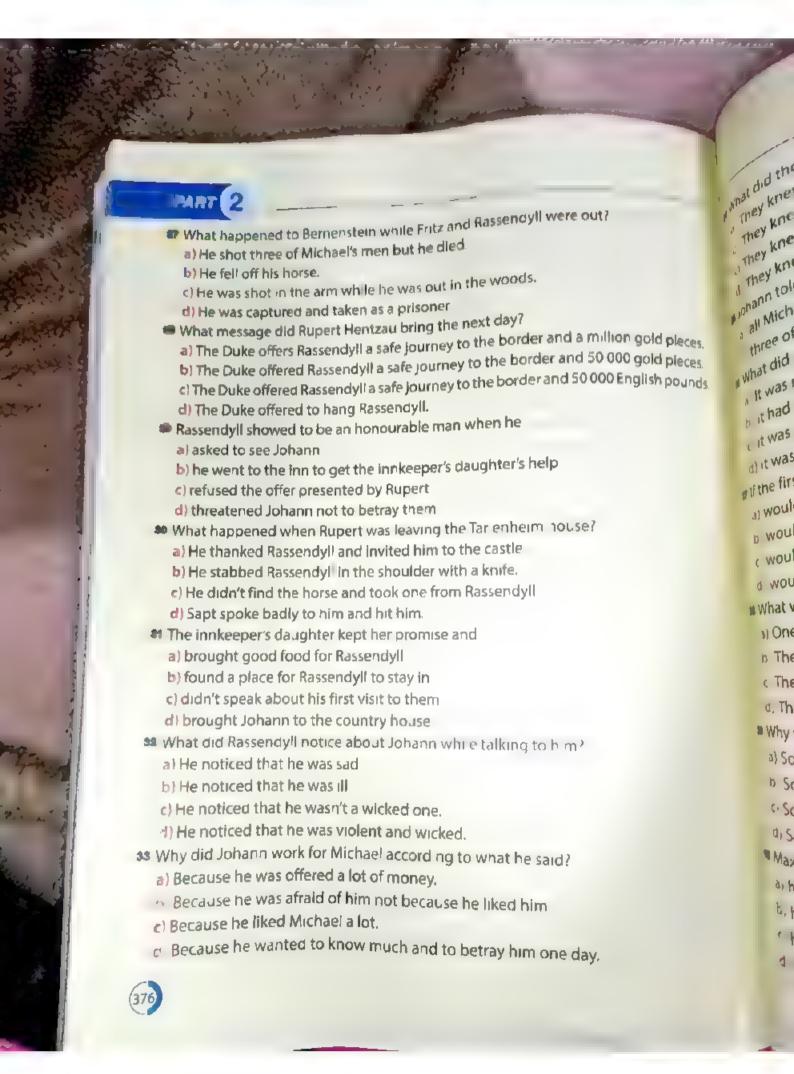
When Sapt heard this, he told Rassendyll that this time next year he would still be King. It was impossible to save the King alive Rassendyl, felt worried and afraid when he remembered that Michael would always be there ready to take his place

Rassendyll thanked Johann and asked him not to tell anyone about the name of the prisoner in the castle.

When Johann left, Rassendyll thought hard and said that there were two ways in which the King could come out of Zenda alive one was if they had a miracle, and the other was if one of the Duke's men betrayed him.



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

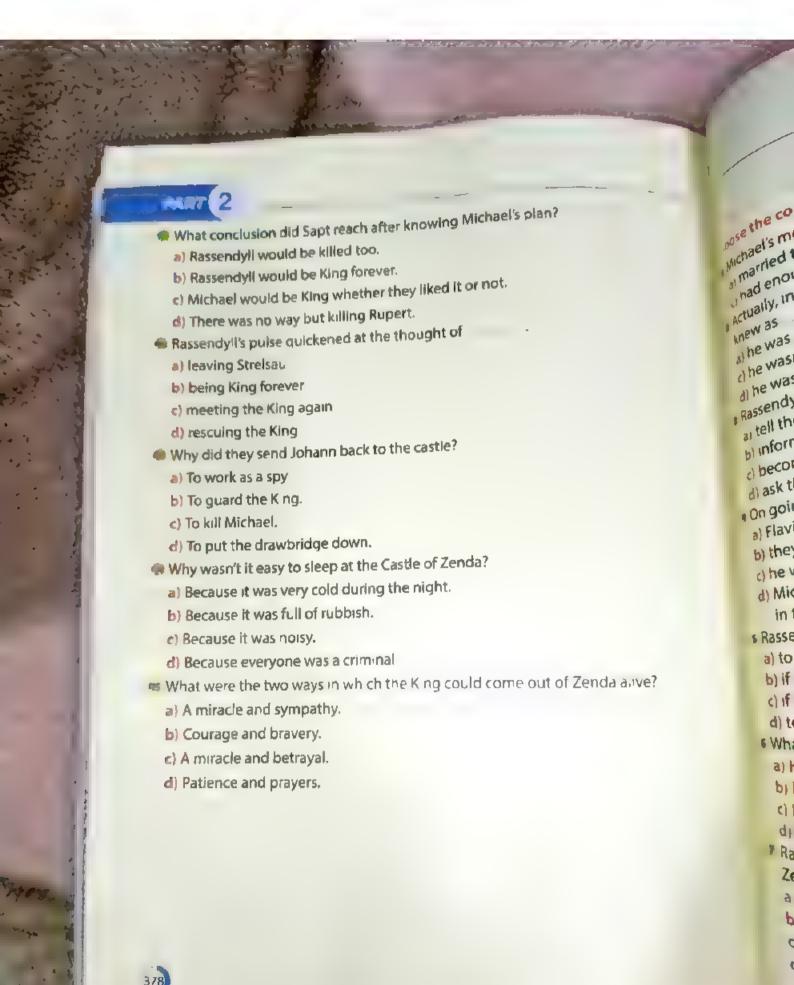


C. SC

4,5

dif

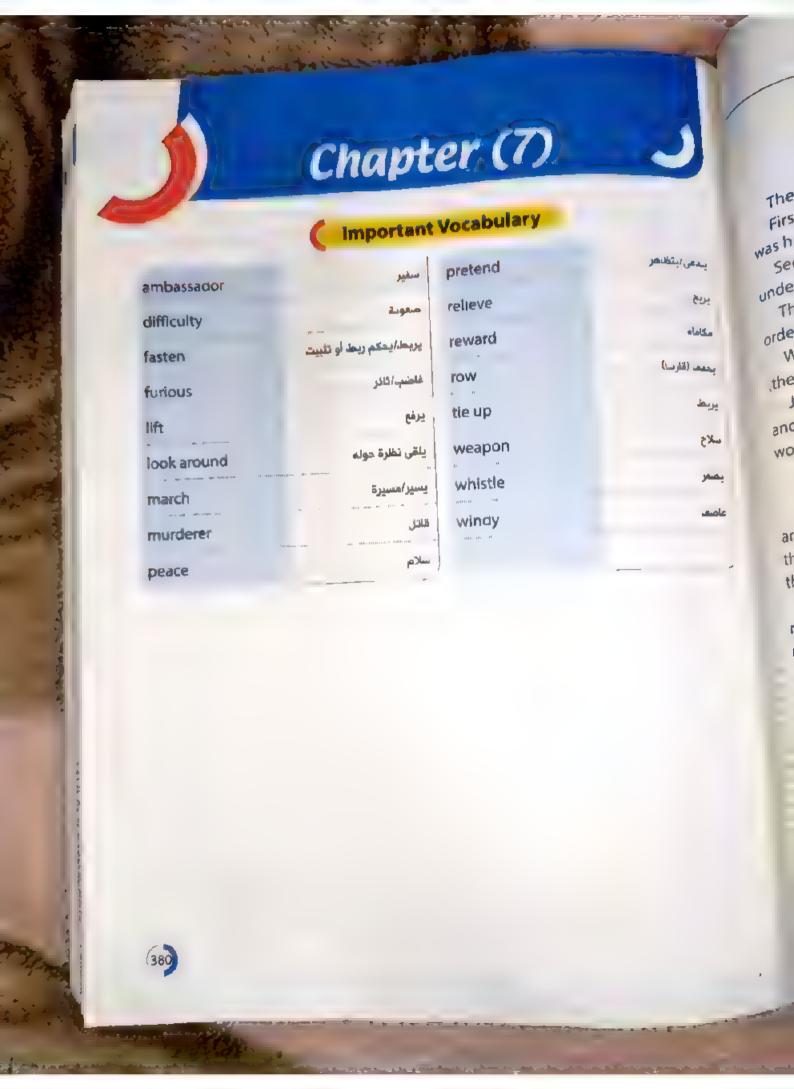
What did they know from Johann? The Prisoner of Zenda They knew the Duke's plans, They knew the number of Michael's men They knew how the drawbridge worked. 1 They knew how deep the moat was Johann told Rassendyll that the outer room was always quarded by 90% DIECES b) Rupert d three of the Six Men d) Antoinette what did Johann say about the second room inside the castle? a It was near the Duke's room. bilt had a small window, from which a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. It was lit by strong lights. all t was on the second floor. # If the first room was attacked by anyone, the King al would be killed and buried in his room would be killed and the body would then be put down the pipe ¿ would be helped by Michael's men to escape from the window d would call for help and Rassendyll would come soon What was the 2nd plan to get rid of the King if many people attacked the castle? One of Michael's men would take the King's place. b They would kill the King and leave his body in the room c) They would unchain the King and let him escape d) The guards would escape and leave the King alive Why would one of the Six Men take the King's place? a) So as to keep the room b) So as to defend himself against the attackers. 50 that no one could believe that the King was ever there. So as to tell the attackers that the King escaped. Max Holf had a great role in Michael's plan as a, he helped to put up the pipe to the prison window he helped to chain the King to his bed c) he helped to guard the drawbridge during the night d he helped to light the candles every night

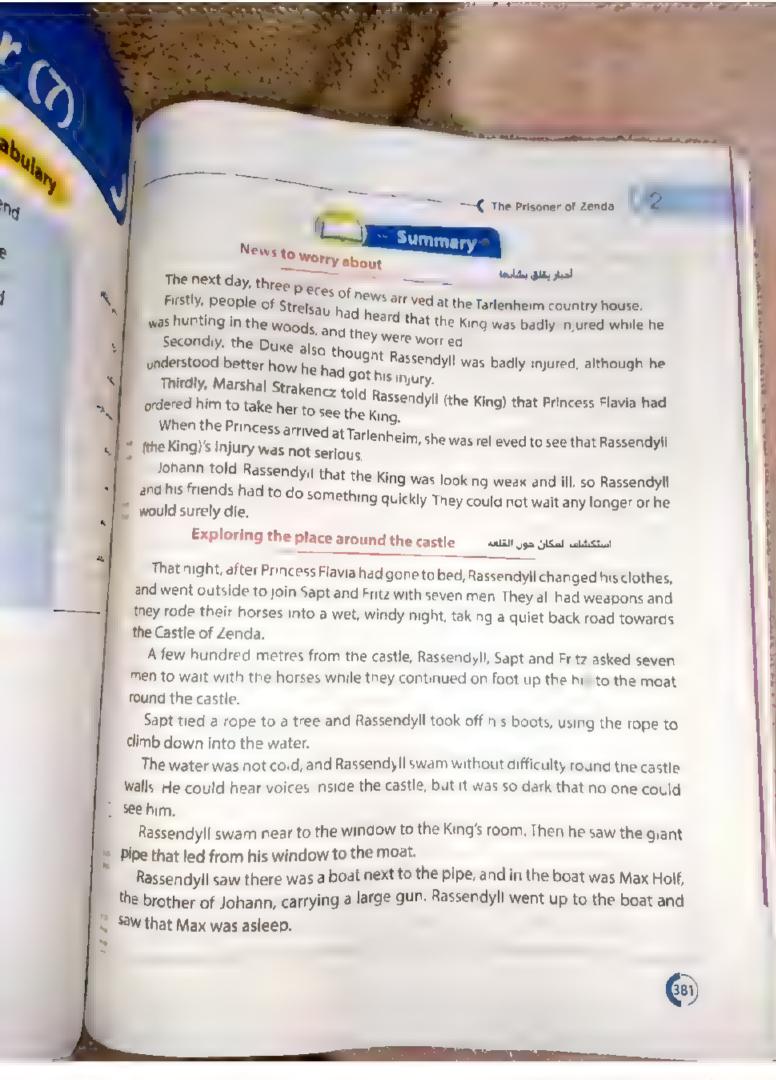


The Prisoner of Zenda .ongman Exercises) hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Michael's mother was not royal and he could only legally become King if he b) killed the real King , had enough money Actually, in Ruritania, Rassendyll's writing was different from the usual writing people d) tried to rescue the King he was bad at writing German b) his finger was wounded the wasn't the real King of he was in a hurry and wanted to leave for England Rassendyll asks Flavia to if he doesn't come back from Zenda. a tell the police b inform the British embassy in Ruritania ribecome Queen for him ask the army to attack the Castle of Zenda • On going to Zenda, Rassendyll told the men that al Flavia would be Queen for him b, they were going to rescue the real King the was going to hunt an animal di Michael had tried to kill him and that a good friend of the Kings was held prisoner in the castle I Rassendyll asked the innkeeper's daughter a) to bring Johann to meet him at the country house bif she supported Duke Michael clifshe knew he wasn't the real King d) to apologise to the real King 6 What was Rupert's offer to Rassendyll in the country house? a) He offered to kill the King for money. b He offered to help him marry Flavia. O'He offered him a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds He offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces. Rassendyll believed that there were two ways in which the King could come out of a) one was to have a miracle and the other if Spat and Fritz helped him b, one was to have a miracle and the other was if one of Michael's men betrayed him one was to have a miracle and the other was if Flavia married Michael

d) one was to have a miracle and the other if Michael's men knew the truth









Rassendyll swam slowly and sliently up to Max and stabbed him to death Rassendyli hated to do it, but he thought this was war.

Rassendyll looked carefully at the pipe. The bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and he could see I ght coming from its far end.

Then, Rassendy I heard voices: one was the King, and the other was a man with an English accent. It was Detchard.

Detchard was telling the King to sleep when the King asked him why his brother didn't kill him. Detchard answered it was not time, yet. Detchard left and Rassendyll heard the King crying quietly.

Rassendyl, climbed in the boat with Max dead at the bottom and rowed back to the rope. When he arrived next to the rope, he tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up. Then he climbed back to his friends.

Facing Rupert and his men

مولجهة روبرت ورجاله

Sapt whistled for their seven men to come and get them with the r horses, but as they got nearer, they heard several shots and loud cries.

Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz were running towards their men when a horse arrived with Rupert Hentzau on it. Rassendyll took a large stick, and ran forward towards the horse's head.

Rupert fell down, but he was too guick. He waved a sword at Rassendyll and cut the stick in half, and before they knew it he had disappeared into the night.

Rassendyil found out that Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed by their men although the fight had cost them three of the timen. They returned to the country house sad about the men and very worned about the King.

> The game is about to be discovered اللعبة على وشك الاكتشاف

The next day, Rassendyll (the King) received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau.

He told him that the British Ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda.

They had found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban, the Duke's guest.

Rassendyll (the King) told him he would look into that and told him to return in two weeks. He realised that his game had almost been discovered.

Rassendyll to a Michael and and Rupert Wo Rassendyll and that he W Later that

That day Rass o with nim. Ras

Rupert was

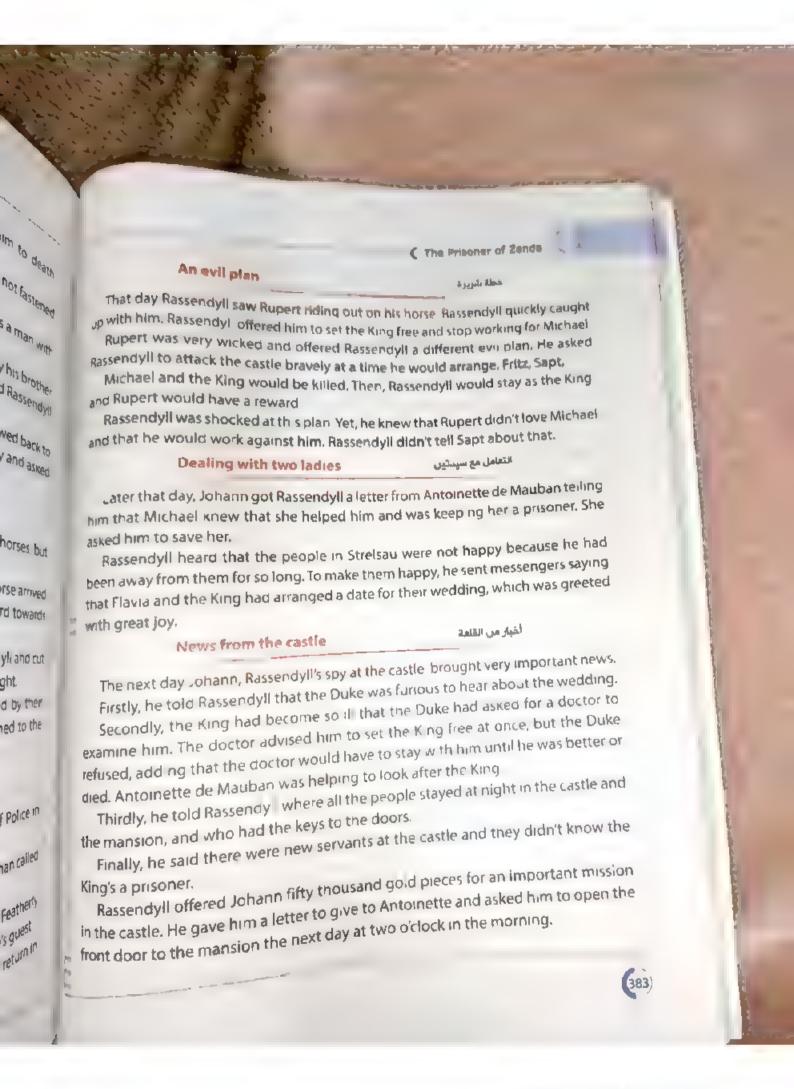
him that Mi asked him to Rassend been away that Flavia with great

> Firstly, Secor examine refused, died. Ar Thire the ma

The ne

Fina King's Ras

inthe front.





A risky plan to rescue the King

حطة حطيرة لإنقاد الملك

pe the con

was

turious

me man tri

increase

he crimin

onson.

stick heard th

reading

, he farm

ruled

What die

3 She t

o She i

: She !

d She

The pe

a the

o the

G the

d the

1 What

1116 b A

17

43

Wh

4,1

After Johann left, Rassendyll told Sapt and Fritz about his plan to rescue the King which he thought to be the only chance to do so. The plan was as follows.

Sapt would take some men to the front door of the mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up the servants if they did not want to help the King.

Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would surely come to see what was happening, and they could take him. Then there would only be two men left guarding the King, so they would need to move quickly before they hurt him.

At the same time, the house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed they were having a ball.

Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day they did not return, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

Carrying out the plan

تنفيذ الحطة

At midnight, Sapt took his men to the mansion Rassendyll rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep him warm, weapons and a rope.

Half an hour later, Rassendyll was back by the moat. He left the horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water.

Rassendyll swam back to the pipe below the window. He looked up at the mansion and saw that the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms.

Interrupting the plan

تعمليل / مقاطعة الخطة

Rassendyll saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet. They walked across and shortly after the bridge went up.

A few minutes later, Rupert returned alone. He looked around and then quetly climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across. Then he climbed some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion.

Dian ic leading the filters The Prisoner of Zenda General Exercises SELVALLE STREET OF THE hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Mother was With my elder brother for leaving our little sister alone in the SOLU INE PARE MARE MARE house. take N.W. Well there a) furious d) inventive b) pleased c) excited The man tried to need to move star v the tension by making a joke al increase b) relieve d) help c) double in a public place and was taken to The criminal was charged with carrying a with lights and mes prison. d) subject al stick b) space c) weapon heard this song on the radio and I've been it all day s and if, the next cov d) whistling a reading b) inspecting c) replying sk to see the Kinger the rope to a tree and attached the goat there . The farmer d) lessened SS Flavia back to he c) fastened b) rolled a ruled What did the Princess do when she knew that the King was injured? a She to d the Marshal to make her a Queen. رثميد الد b She insisted on seeing him She sent him a clever doctor d She sent a coach to fetch him to Strelsau ode alone a different The people of Strelsau were worried about the King and that showed that egor 6 b a they wanted to get rid of him hehorseandger b, they wanted to know the cause of his injury into the water c they loved their King and they were worried about their country e looked up at the d) they wanted to kill the Duke • What did Rassendy: I consider the strangest thing in the history of any country? Juke's and Madame a There was a war in a country and a few people know about it b) A woman was assigned to be a Queen. o The King was in prison and some people wanted to rescue him rawbridge with Je d) The King was imprisoned before his marr age What did Johann tell Rassendy about the real Kings condition? nd and then giveth a) He told him the King was 1 and weak. is Then radiated b) He told him the King was well and healthy. () He told him the King refused to eat. d) He told him the King was suffering from amnesia.

PART 2

- Who set out for Zenda secretly?
 - a) Rassendyll and Sapt with seven gentlemen.
 - b) Rassendyll and fr tz with seven gentlemen.
 - c) Sapt and Rassendyl., with Fritz and ten gentlemen.
 - d) Sapt and Rassendyll, with Fritz and seven men
- Rassendyll and the others went to the castle so that
 - a) they could demolish it
 - b) they could kill Max Holf
 - c) they could make plans to rescue the King
 - d) they could swim in the moat
- How did Rassendyll go down into the water?
 - a) He climbed down a ladder.
- b) He jumped into the water.

c) He took the stairs.

- d) He climbed down using a rope.
- What did Rassendyll find next to the pipe?
 - a) He found the King lying in bed.
 - b) He found the three foreigners guarding the King.
 - c) He found Detchard punishing the King.
 - d) He found a boat and Max Holf carrying a large gun in it.
- How did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
 - a) He stabbed him with a knife.
- b) He shot him.
- c) He hanged him with a rope
- d) He hit him with a hard stick.
- Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
 - a) Because he was Johann's brother.
 - b) Because Max was working for the enemy.
 - c) Because his mother was Michael's spy.
 - d) Because he was riding to Zenda with Michael.
- What did Rassendyll hear at the other end of the pipe?
 - a) He heard the King talking to Detchard.
 - b) He heard Michael threatening the King.
 - c) He heard Rupert shouting at the King.
 - d) He heard Michael shouting at his men.
- 7 What showed that the King was in great despair in his imprisonment?
 - a) He told Detchard he didn't want to eat.
 - b) He didn't want to meet anyone.
 - c) He asked why Michael didn't kill him.
 - d) He asked Detchard to put him in prison.



b) help of carry

Who g

d) The Rupe

CITW

c) (

b

35

unat did Rassendyll do with Max's body?

He asked Sapt, Fritz and the seven men to bury it in sand.

He tied it with chains and threw it in the moat.

He tied the rope round the body, and asked Sapt to pull it up. He left it in the boat.

the seven gentlemen went with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle to

, carry Max's body out of the water after killing him

help Rassendyll destroy the pipe and rescue the King

carry the guns and the clothes out of water

protect the horses in case the Duke's men attacked

who got killed in the fight in the woods?

Two of the Duke's Six Men and three of Rassendyll's men.

Three of the Duke's Six Men and three of Rassendyll's men.

Two of Rassendyll's men and three of the Duke's Six Men.

. Three of the Duke's Six Men and one of Rassendyll's men.

supert could escape Rassendyll's attack by

a) jumping into the moat

bi stabbing Rassendyll with his sword

d getting off his horse and running

dicutting the stick in half with his sword

a Why did the Chief of Police in Strelsau come to Zenda?

a To help Rassendyll with his fight against the Duke.

b To ask about the Princess and the Marshal.

To see the King as he heard that he was injured.

d To search for a young Englishman called Rassendyll.

Why was the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?

a) As his family reported that he had disappeared.

b) As Mr Featherly wanted to meet him.

As Sir Jacob wanted him to work for him.

d. As Rose wanted to write the book he promised to write.

* Why did Rassendyll send the Chief of Police back to Strelsau?

a) To look for Rassendyll there.

b) To tell the ambassador that Rassendyll never came to Zenda.

O He didn't want any more difficult questions.

None of these.



PART

- How did Rassendyll try to make Rupert work with him?
 - a) He said he would help him if he set the King free.
 - b) He offered him 50 000 pounds to set the King free.
 - c) He threatened to punish him.
 - d) He said he would make him a Duke.
- What showed you that Rupert hated the Duke and was ready to betray him?
 - a) Rupert said that he was ready to arrest him.
 - b) Rupert said that he always worked with him.
 - c) Rupert said he injured him before.
 - d) Rupert said he nearly killed him the night before.
- ₩ What was Rupert's plan as a condition to work with Rassendyll?
 - a He wanted to get rid of the King, Sapt, Fritz and Michael.
 - the Wanted to kill Michael and the King and would arrest Sapt and Fritz
 - c) He wanted to be King.
 - d) He wanted Rassendyll to go back to England.
- What d d Antomette ask Rassendyll to do in her second message?
 - a She asked him to kill Michael.

She asked him to arrest Rupert.

why didn't Because

Because

Because

, secaus ohann h

makin

settin

warn

hitelin

What d

a) TO O

h 101

10 2

d To

« Why

a To

b) To

dit

d 1

o Ras

She asked him to save her.

She asked him to reward her.

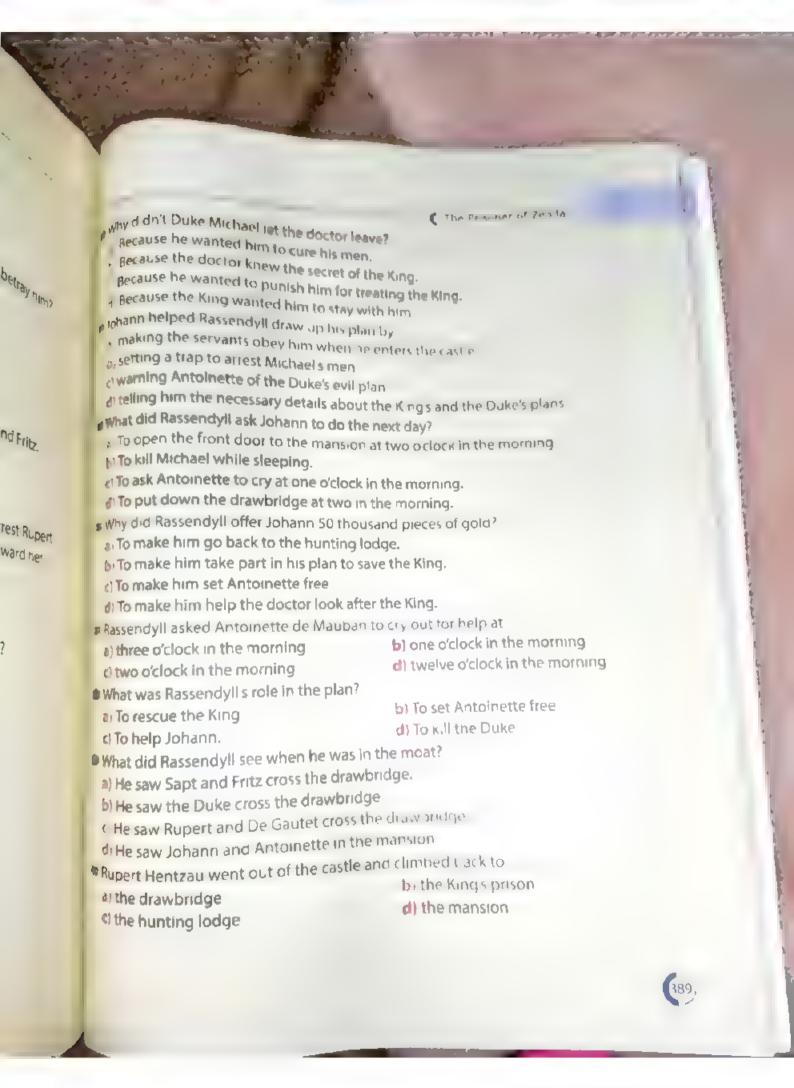
- 😂 Antoinette de Mauban was kept a prisoner 👢
 - a) in the castle

b) in the cellar

c) in the lodge

- In the mansion
- 30 Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?
 - a) As she helped Rassendyll in the summer house
 - 2. As she helped Rupert when they fought the day before.
 - c) As she looked after the King in the castle.
 - d) As she wanted to return to France.
- at Rassendyll tried to make the people in Strelsau happy by
 - a) arranging a date for the wedding
 - b) making Flavia return to Strelsau with the Marshall
 - ci deciaring that the Duke would be the next King
 - d) sending the Chief of Police again to Strelsau
- What did the doctor advise the Duke to do?
 - a) To keep the King in prison.
 - b) To stay with the King.
 - c) To move him to the mansion for recreation.
 - d) To set the King free at once.







Longman Exercises)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Rassendyll was peaceful by nature. However, he was forced to
 - a) stab Max to death

 - c) stab Rupert to death

- b) snoot Rupert with his gun
- d) shoot Max with his gun
- The Chief of the Police in Strelsau told Rassendyll that
 - a) the King was in danger
 - b) they knew he wasn't the real King
 - c) the British ambassador had reported that a young English man had disappeared
 - d) Flavia wanted him to return to the capital
- The doctor advised the Duke to ______ but he refused.
 - a) fetch the King a specialised doctor
 - c) set the King free at once
- b) buy the King the required medicine
- d) make friends with the King
- Rassendyll told messengers that
 - a) Flavia would be in charge of the capital
 - b) he would set the King free
 - c) he would go back to England
 - d) Flavia and he had arranged a date for their wedding
- Rassendy, lasked Johann to give a letter to Antoinette and to
 - a) ask the Duke to set the King free
 - b) open the front door to the mans on at 2 o clock in the morning
 - c) tell the King that his men would set him free
 - d) kill Sapt's men
- What could Rassendyll hear while examining the pipe?
 - a) He could hear the King asking for more food.
 - b) He could hear Michae speaking badly to the King.
 - c) He could hear Johann speaking to the King.
 - d) He could hear Detchard speaking to the King.
- What did Mr Featherly from Paris tell the police about Rassendyll?
 - a) He told them where Rassendyll was.
 - b) He told them he believed Rassendyll was travelling with Antoinette de Mauban.
 - c) He told them Rassendyll was in danger
 - d) He told them that Rassendyll was the pretend King.

anazement

approach chained

confident

corner

disappoint

duties

P.VS

expect

Ignore

reader

Chapter (8)

Important Vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة	leaning	(Circum)
amazement	ا مغول	moan .	يان/ستأنور
approach	يقترب هن	nonsense	لفو/كلام شرغ
chained	مقيد يسلاسل	party	462/calp2
confident	ونثق	responsibilities	مسلولیات
corner	رکن	shadow	ظ <i>ال/خي</i> ال
disappointed	despera	stage	مرملة
duties	ا واجبات	strike	يضرب
evil	اً شرير	swordsman	ا سباوغ پالسیف
	ا يتونم	tear	يمرق
expect	يناهل	whisper	إيممس
ignore	قائد	wounded	مجروح امصاب
leader	250	Wallaca .	





Rupert's evil plan

خطة رودرت الشريرة

When Rupert disappeared into the mansion Rassendyll slowly climbed out and walted by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.

It was about one o'clock in the morning when Rassendy'll heard a loud noise from the mansion.

It was Antoinette de Maudan crying for help. This was exactly what Rassendyll had asked her to say in his message to her, but it was around an hour too early before Sapt and the others reached the front door to the mans on, and before Johann had time to open it.

Then Antoinette called again. This time she said it was Rupert Hentzau who was in her room. Michael ran to her room with his servants.

Rupert said that he wanted to punish her as she was writing letters to Rassendyll. Michael said that he couldn't punish her as she was his guest.

Rassendyll could hear a noisy sword fight in the room. He saw Rupert striking his sword at Johann calling him Rassendyll's spy.

The next moment Rassendyll heard a cry and Rupert Jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away

Saving the King

بقاد الملك

A minute later, De Gautet appeared in front of Rassendyll who struck him with his sword and he fell to the ground. Quickly Rassendyll looked through his clothes for the keys: there were three

Rassendyll could enter the room where the King was being kept prisoner When he opened the first door, he found himself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room.

Rassendy , heard voices behind the second door where the King was kept. It was Detchard wondering whether they should kill the King or not Suddenly Bersonin appeared in front of Rassendyil, Rassendy struck him with his sword

Detchard closed the door fast. As he was alone in the room with the King. Rassendyll knew the King was in real danger. So he quickly unlocked the door of the second room with one of the keys he took from De Gautet.

Detchard was being held by the King's doctor. The King, weak from liness and chained in one corner, looked on in fear. The doctor was too weak to hold Detchard for long, and Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword.

petchard and petchard me king made to the king hard te king hard te king hard te king hard

when the when the hear he hear he draw drawbridge what he had once again mansion.

Ruper swam to Rasse Rupert (

and also j

Rassi he save

At the

C the Prisoner of Zenda Detchard and Rassendyll began a sword fight Detchard was a much better ewordsman than him, so he cut Rassendyll on the arm. The King moved to help Rassendyll. He reached forward and pushed the legs of chair into Detchard's body. This made him lose his balance and fall over the doctor's body. Then, he struck the King hard with his sword, but it was easy for Rassendyll to kill him as he lay on and a reason the floor 1 - 12 140 10 10 11 11 الدوق ميتنا When the King moaned, Rassendyll knew he was alive Before he could help him he heard Rupert outside the King's prison calling out for Michael to come out for a fight The drawbridge was now down once more Rupert stood in the middle of the bridge with his sword, while the door to the mansion at the other end of the drawbridge was guarded by some very frightened looking servants, as well as Johann, unhurt. Antoinette de Mauban angrily called out from behind the servant telling him ed out or me a man that he had already killed the Duke. She appeared pointing a gun at him. Rupert once again jumped quick y into the water below the bridge Sapt and his men finally arrived at the front door on the other side of the mans on. Feeling confident that the King would be safe, Rassendyll ran after Rupert who stugged of and also jumped into the water through his come مطارية آخر الرجال السنة Chasing the last of the Six Men Rupert swam faster than Rassendyll could with his wounded arm, and he quickly Kept process and swam to where the rope was tied to the tree and quickly climbed up. STEPS ATAT SC T Rassendyll followed Rupert into the forest of Zenda, until he heard another cry. Rupert found a boy riding to market, and quickly pulled him from the horse and KIPO WZSKET THE took his place. This gave Rassendyll time to catch up with him. S. Julian strand Rassendyll told him that he was the last of the Six Men. He also told him that 00m wat the 19 he saved the King Rassendyli tried to hit Rupert with his sword. He tried once and THAT HE JAL At that moment Fritz arrived on another horse carrying a gun, Rupert turned twice until he could cut is cheek. Edd To July Stilled the horse and rode away as fast as he could. Fritz d.dn't follow him. MO SANT 393. الممسوحة ضولب بـ CamScanner



Fritz got off his horse and ran up to Rassendyll as he fell to the ground. He told him that the King was safe. The boy stood watching in amazement. After a long rest, Rassendyll felt strong enough to walk back, leaning heavily on Fritz's arm.

Antoinette's story

قصة أنطوانيت

Later Rassendyll was told the story of Antoinette and the events of the castle. A few months earlier, the Duke had met Antoinette de Mauban in Paris and he asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his quest.

However, some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King. She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn Rassendyll of everything he wanted to do.

When the Duke found out that she had warned Rassendyll in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette de Mauban by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they could not leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan.

Somehow, Rupert discovered that she was helping Rassendyll, so he wanted to punish her; by chance he chose the night that they were attacking the castle.

Mission done

المحمة ثم إنجازها

It took a long time before Sapt and his men could finally enter the mansion Soon Sapt found the King lying in his prison, hurt but still alive. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion, where Antoinette helped to look after the poor King until another doctor arrived.

Sapt asked Johann and Antoinette to keep the secret. The other people were told that the King was hurt while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau.

The game is over

انتمت اللعبة

When this news reached the country house at Tarlenheim, Princess Flavia rushed with the Marshal to see the King at the castle.

When they saw her coach, Fritz and Rassendyll quickly hid behind a tree. The boy whose horse Rupert had taken followed them. He was very excited and told the Princess that the King was behind the tree.

The Princess and the Marshal stopped the coach. Sapt arrived at the place, too. The Princess was helped down from the coach. She then walked alone with Sapt to Rassendyll. She saw him and Sapt told her he wasn't the King. He took her to the castle.

That night, we that night, in the report of the street of

not so he we not so he king so he king should the tricked he

At last, border. He When ' Rose told when Ras Rose t

said they W

When photogo looked:

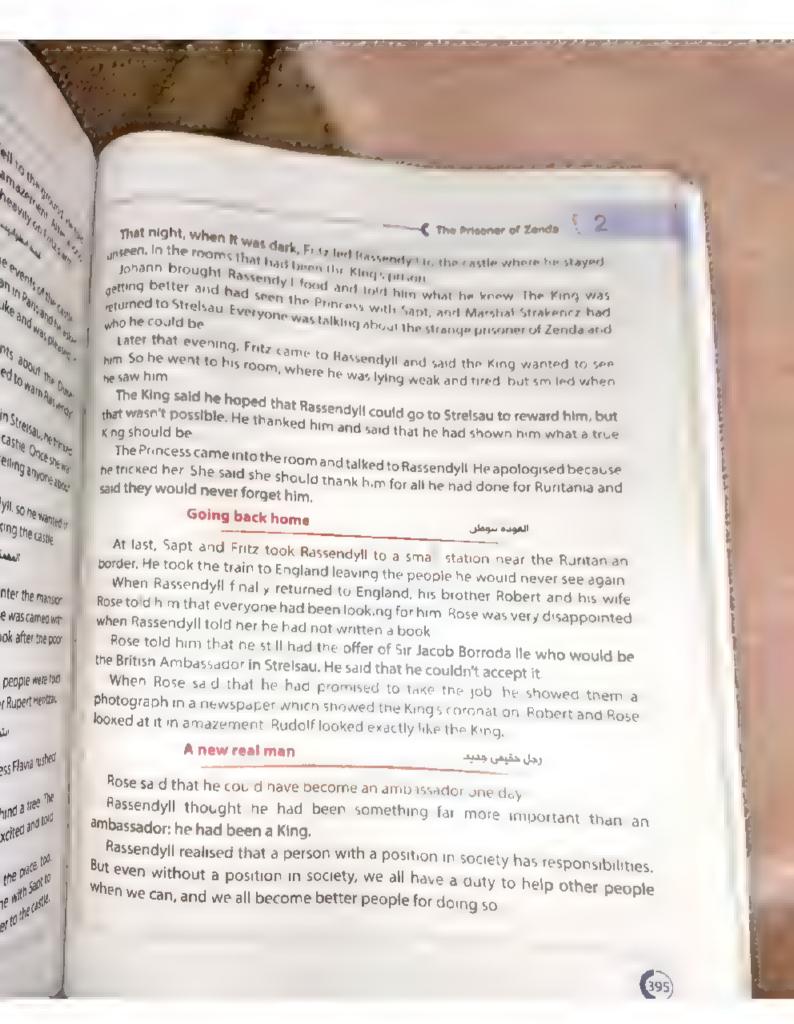
the Britis

Rose Rass

Ras But e

when

394





General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wake up the children. We are our destination.
 - a) calling
- b) driving
- c) choosing
- d) approaching

why was Ras

Because J

Because J All of the

, Rassendyll

through

through

cumbin

throug

Ruper

Johan

Detch

Detc

His S

The

De

The

s Detc

, ar

ē

Who Y

what d

, who wer

- sclentist. In the film, the hero saved the country from a/an
 - a) honourable
- b) brave
- d) glant

- If we continue to
- all problems they will only get worse. b) ignore
 - c) pray
- d) prevent

- a) protect The boy could
- а page out of his notebook and handed it to his teacher b) cry
 - c) shout
- d) smile

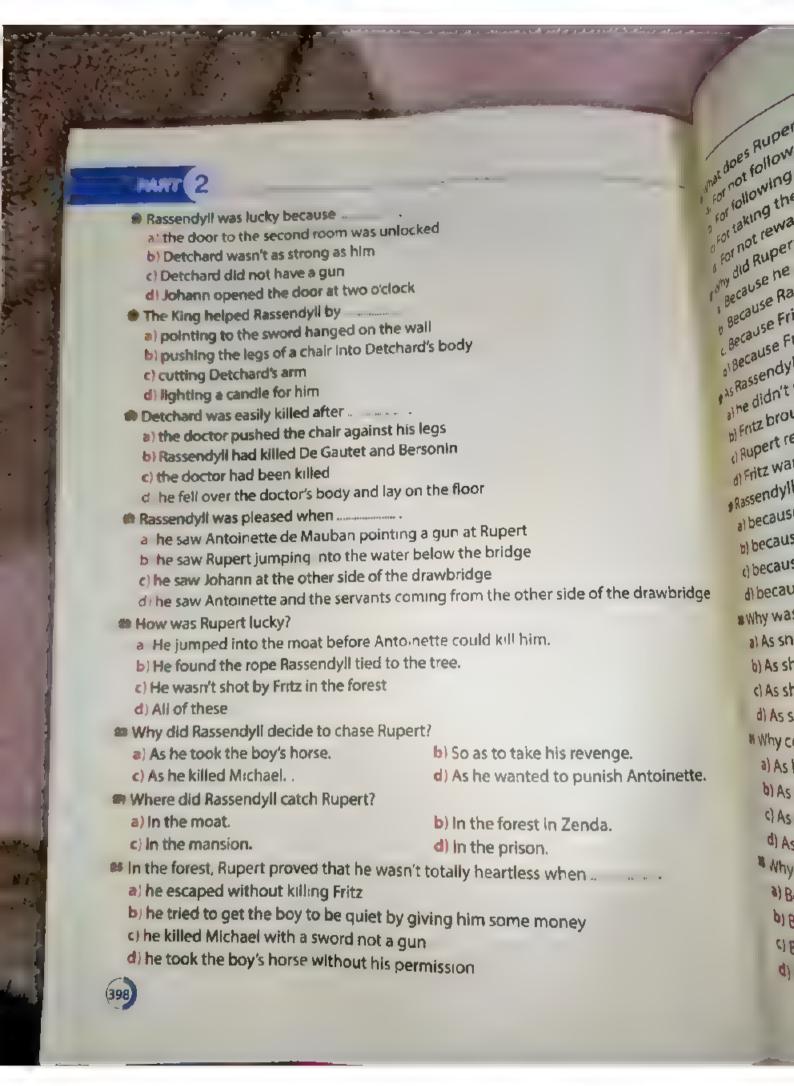
- You don't have to _____ no one can hear us.
 - al yell

a) tear

- b) whisper
- c) flaht
- d) quarrel
- Why did Antoinette give a cry at one o'clock in the morning?
 - a) Because Rupert attacked her.
 - b) Because Johann wanted to kill her.
 - c) Because Rassendyll attacked the castle.
 - d) Because Michael wanted to punish her.
- What did Michael tell Rupert when he wanted to punish Antoinette?
 - a He fold him that he was the person who needed to be punished.
 - b He told him that he was right to pun sh her as she was a spy
 - c He told him to leave her and Michael would pun shiher
 - d) None of these.
- A nat happened at the end of the argument between Michael and Rupert?
 - a) Michael killed Rupert.
 - b) Michael's men punished Rupert.
 - c) Rupert killed Michael.
 - d) Michael threw Rupert out of the window.
- Rupert wanted to punish Johann by
 - a) striking his sword at him
 - b) making him guard the King
 - c) dismissing him out of the castle
 - d) putting him in prison



The Prisoner of Zenda why was Rassendyll worried about Johann's life? Because Johann would open the door at one o'clock. Because Johann would help kill Michael. gecause Johann had a great part in Rassendyll's plan Rassendyll thought that Rupert would be caught but he escaped lant through the main door through the window and the most revent climbing down the ladder hus teacher through the pipe JIII = Who were left to protect the King in his prison? Rupert, De Gautet and Bersonin hi Johann, Antoinette and Rassendyll. Buller Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet. d Detchard, Rupert and Johann. what did Rassendyll take from De Gautet after killing him? a His sword and gun. b) Three keys. d) The key of the drawbridge. The key to the mansion. Who was killed in the first room? b) Detchard and Bersonin. a De Gautet and Bersonin. d) Bersonin. c) The doctor and Detchard. Detchard closed the door to the King's room fast ar and the King became in a real danger be and threw the King through the pipe c and became alone with the King diali of these * What did Rassendyll expect when he unlocked the door to the second room? pert? He expected to see Detchard was sleeping beside the King He expected to see the doctor was nelping the King He expected to see the King had killed Detchard and escaped He expected to see the King had already been killed. Why was Rassendyll relieved when he opened the second door? As he saw Detchard was held by the doctor. As he saw Detchard was killed by the doctor. c) As he didn't see Detchard in the room. d) As he didn't see the King in the room.



di

The Prisoner of Zenda What does Rupert blame Rassendyll for? of For not following his plan, hi For following him in the forest For taking the King's place. di For not rewarding him. Why did Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll? al Because he was in a hurry to leave the country. Because Rassendyll was stronger than him. Because Fritz came with a gun. a) Because Fritz threatened to shoot him. As Rassendyll was badly injured, a he didn't want to kill Rupert and let him go b) Fritz brought him a doctor to see him in the forest c) Rupert refused to kill him and rode away on the horse d) Fritz wanted to help him and not to go after Rupert Rassendyll asked Fritz about the King, but the boy was surprised a) because he thought that Rassendyll was the King b) because he didn't expect Rassendyll to be kind c) because he thought the King was already dead d) because he thought the King was in Strelsau Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke? a) As she told Rupert about Michael's secrets. b) As she had helped Rassendyll. c) As she was helping the King in his prison.

d) As she tried to escape from the mansion. ₩ Why couldn't Johann open the front door for Sapt and his men at the appointed time?

a) As he was helping Michael when he was fighting Rupert

b) As he was killed in the fight with Rupert.

c) As he was asleep at that time.

d) As he didn't have the key to that door.

Why did Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered?

a) Because he was very ill.

the description

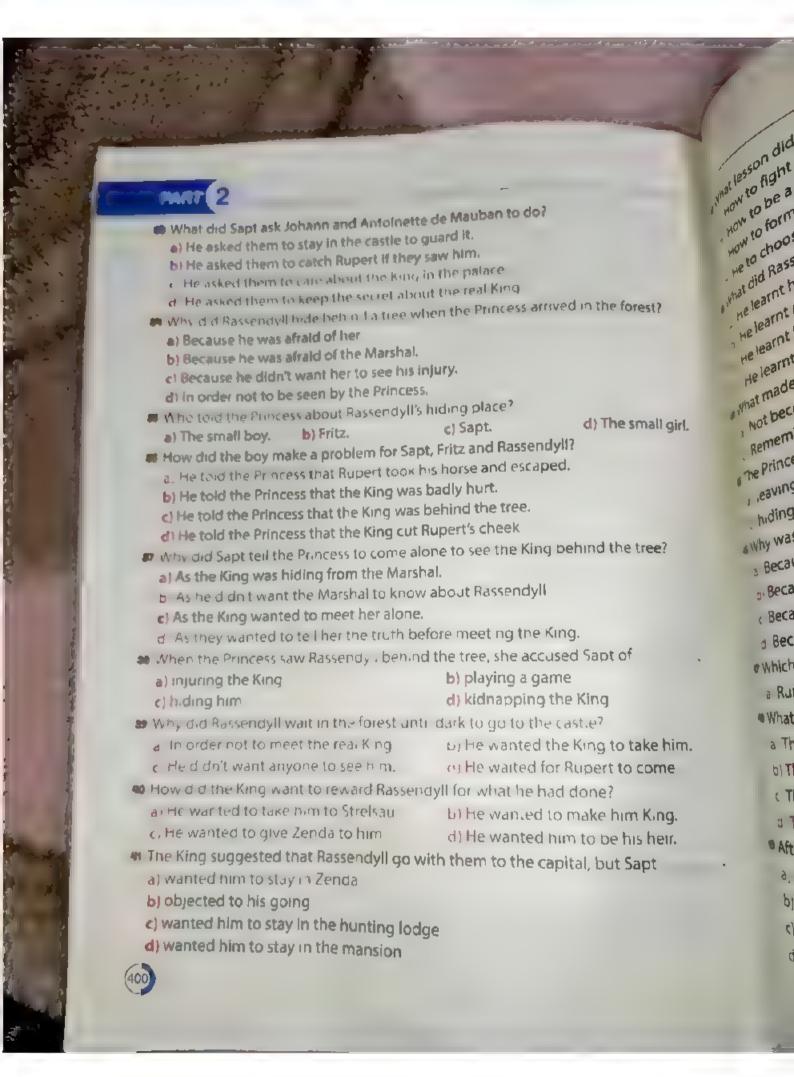
n Artones

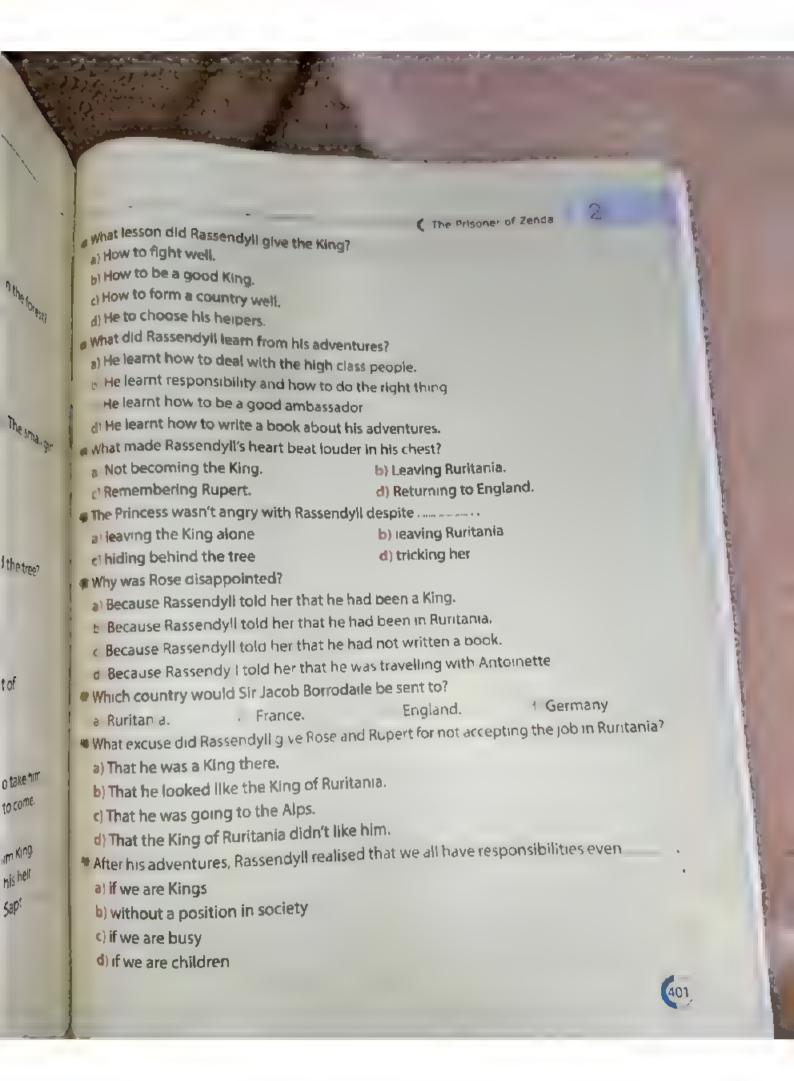
b) Because he wanted to escape without being seen.

c) Because Sapt didn't want anyone to see who the prisoner really was.

d) Because he feared Michael to recognise him.







Longman Exercises Choose the correct answer from a b, c or d: Antoinette de Mauban cried, "Help! Michael, help me!" because a) she wanted to carry out Rassendyll's plan b) she wanted to trick Michael c) Rupert tried to punish her d This was exactly what Rassendyil had asked her to do at that time Which statement is incorrect? at Rupert managed to kill Michael. b The King was weak because of his illness. Rupert was killed at the end of the story. d) Detchard killed the poor doctor with his sword. Detchard was a much better swordsman a) so he ran away from Rassendyil by so he cut Rassendyll on his leq c) but Rassendyll could cut him on the arm d) but Rassendyll could kill him with the help of the King How did the boy make a problem to Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll? a) He said the King was behind the tree. b) He told Flavia that Rassendyll wasn't the real King. c) He insisted on taking the price of the horse from them. d) He told Flavia that the King was in the Castle of Zenda. What lesson did Rassendyll teach the real King? He showed him how a real King should be He showed him what a real King should do. c) He proved that position in society meant opportunities d Both a and b. Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann? Because Johann tried to kill him. b) Because he believed that Johann was the Duke's spy. cr Because he believed that Johann was Rassendyli's spy d Because Johann attacked Michael. What did Rassendyll realise at the end of the story? a He realised that a person with a position in society has responsibilities. b. He realised that a person with a position in society should enjoy opportunities. c. He realised that every person can play the role of a King. d) He realised how Rose was not right.



الممسوحة ضولب بـ CamScanner







Reading Comprehension

تيس مطال مادة علمية معينة يمكن الامتماد عليها في التعادل مع قطعة القعم، ولكن المعارسة والتدريب المكلف والثروة اللغوية مِي أَنْصَلَ الْوَسَائِلُ لَلْتَحَكَنَ مِنْ هِذَا السَّوَّالِ وَإِجَانِيَّهِ،

solid) le de gre-

. . ينرا القطعة قراءة سريعة استكشافية ولا دتوقف عند العقردات الصعبة، ويقضل بعض الناس أن يقرأ الأستلة أولًا.

ب نقرأ الأسللة لتحديد المعلومات التي نبحث منها.

م يُقْرِأ القطعة للمرة الثانية لنبحث من إمايات الأسللة.

ر. التممل في خمم السؤال ومعرفة معنى كلمات الاستقمام.

هـ الثممل في استظلامي الإجابة؛ فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية وليس شرطً<mark>ا أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.</mark>

رِ رَاهُدُ جِزْرًا مِنَ السؤالِ وَنَكَعَلِ الْإِمِائِةَ مِنْ القَطَعَةَ.

y، عدم الانزعاج من عدم معومة المفردات والجمل الصعبة الواردة في القطعة، فالعفردات ال**صعبة واردة لا** مح**الة.**

ر. ما ينزمنا هو فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.

٥. قد نجد إيضاح الكلمة الصعبة في العبارة التالية لما.

. ١- حاول أن تكون الإجابة على قدر انسؤال.

١١- مراعاة تحسين الخطء

١٤- السؤال الاختياري يتطلب معارة عالية في الفهم والتركيز وتكتب الإجابة فقطه

١٠- قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد من أن الإجابات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرة.

مال سؤ ل له اختر من شكل ويضاح الى ممارة عالية واشكاله كالاتي:

1. In one sentence summarise the first paragraph.	ء في حملة بخص الفقرة الأولى.
2. Suggest a suitable title.	ـ اقترح عنواتًا بلقطعة.
3. What does the underlined word () refer to?	- إنى ماذا تشير الكلمة التي تحتما خط!
4. Find from the passage words that mean:	•
1 - Laupharennenningskrindermannen kappenannen produktion om beden der der bestrette b	- هات من القصعة كلمات تعلى:
5. What does the word "This"/"These" refer to?	- يجب مراعاة أن _{13.5}) يمكن أن تعود على كلمة واحدة أو جملة كاملة.



Exercises

following passages, then answer the questions.

No part of our environment has escaped the effects of pollution. All over the world, our land, air and water have been contaminated by an increasing number of waste materials and substances that issue daily from factories, homes and vehicles. In some cases, this waste is only an eyesore, which spoils the beauty of our surroundings, while in other cases, it is a serious threat to our health and can result in death.

some of the most dangerous waste substances are, without a doubt, those produced by factories. Industrial waste often contains toxic substances that can kill plant and animal life. When there is no proper government control, factories allow these substances to pour into rivers, while their chimneys fill the atmosphere with poisonous fumes, sometimes in areas no more than a few kilometres from heavily populated cities.

In towns and cities, the use of fossil fuels (oil, coal, and gas) for heating results in large amounts of carbon dioxide filling the atmosphere.

But, each of us is guilty of polluting our environment to some extent. How much longer can we allow this pollution to continue? Scientists tell us that the increased amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere may soon have disastrous effects. They fear that it will raise average temperatures around the world and cause the polar ice caps to melt. If this happens, they say the level of the world's oceans will rise by four to six metres, and vast populated areas of our planet will be covered by water. Can we afford to make such risks by continuing to pollute our environment?

the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(, Which part of the environment is affected by pollution?

a) No part.

b) Each part.

d Water.

į

đ 4

ıĒ

ļ

d

ø

4

4

뒢

幸

d) Air.

LWhat causes pollution to the environment?

a) Animals and planes.

b) Birds and bicycles.

c) factories, homes and vehicles.

d) Computers and printers.

3. What happens when there is no proper government control on factor are They dump their toxics in rivers. 1. They send their waste to homes c) They cause governments to die d' They cause the water level in rivers to osci-4. What do chimneys do to the atmosphere? a) They poison plants and animals ha They emit fossil fuels into the atmosphere They pour their waste into rivers and seas d. They fill the atmosphere with poisonous fumes. 5. What is the cause of global warming? a) The waste from animals. b) The melting of ice caps. c) The increased amount of carbon dioxide. d) The waste in our homes. 6. Who is blamed for polluting the environment? a) The government. b) The factories. C) Chimneys. d) Each of us. 7. It's ugly to see a) a street free of pollution and smoking b) a factory full of population c) our surroundings full of contamination d) many trees on both sides of streets 8. In addition to eyesore, waste may result in a) man's health b) man's death c) man's wealth d) man's breath a) factories b) vehicles c) scientists d) people 10. What is the best title to the passage? a) Contamination and our heath. b) Population and water. c) The rise in water. d) Carbon dioxide and global warming.

Who do you think is the most successful? Who do you think is the least successful? In order to answer these questions, we first need to define success. Everyone achievements, or on reaching various goals. Others associate success with success by how much they can contribute to the well-being of their families, but mostly success is associated with becoming rich, famous, and respected at point successful.

Being successful could mean simply being satisfied with oneself and one's career. For many people, a successful person is someone who feels that his or her work and life in general offer an exceptionally high degree of satisfactions. But how does one get from here to there? How does one reach this feeling of satisfaction with life and career? It seems that successful people consistently do two things; they use their natural abilities in their work and they set career and life goals. In other words, successful people choose careers where they can use their natural abilities, or do what comes naturally to them. For example, successful teachers are people who instinctively know how to help people learn, and the best doctors are those who know how to listen to people. Successful people know where they are starting from, and what direction they want to give their lives and careers, even if it is something as simple and wonderful as raising a happy family.

What are your natural abilities? What are your career and life goals? If you can answer these questions, you are on your way to having a successful career and life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What is the definition of success?
 - a) Getting high marks at school.
 - b) Everyone has a different definition.
 - Acquiring much money at work.
 - di Travelling abroad and working there.
- ^{1.}According to most people, with which is success associated?
 - al Contributing to the community.
 - b) Contributing to the well-being of the families.
 - () Becoming rich, famous, and respected at work.
 - di Getting high marks and joining university.



- 3 Which one of the following can't define successful people?
 - Successful people choose careers that match their skills Successful people know where they are starting from
 - Successful people use their natural abilities.
 - Successful people don't plan their lives
- 4. Who are the successful teachers?
 - a) Successful teachers are those who know how to help peop e learn
 - b) Successful teachers are those who earn much money. Successful teachers are those who come to school early Successful teachers are those who can control their classes.
- 5. What does the underlined word "

"refer to?

Successful doctors.

Successful teachers

Successful people.

Successful businessmen.

- 6. How can human beings as a whole feel the pleasure of being successful?
 - By having material goods.
 - By reaching their life goals.
 - By giving their best to their families or community.
 - d All of these.

e, anger

c) freedom

b content

selfishness

8. The word is the same meaning as bringing up.

becoming

raising

> measuring

d) feeling

9. Success usually makes people.

a satisfied and happy

c) rich and wealthy

happy and greedy

able to earn money

a) acquiring good things

c) being wealthy

b reaching one's goals

d) having many friends

things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal. cardboard glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. Cereal boxes are made of cardboard. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. Let's get back to the process of recycling. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant. There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes.

Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.

You also can recycle yourself at home. You can save all the cans and aluminum containers and sell them in a local recycling centre, yes cans for cash. Use glass jars as containers for the kitchen or the office, you can paint the bottles and use other materials to decorate them. Use empty water bottles as flower pots, just cut off the bottoms, there are many amazing craft projects you can do with recycled material. You can do your part to save the planet. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

hoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

What is recycling?

- Giving old things to other people.
- Destroying unimportant things buy burning them.
- Taking old things and turning them into new things.
- : Painting old bottles and using them again.
- Which one of the following can't be recycled?
 - Things made out of paper.
 - Things made of metal.
 - Things made of cardboard, glass and plastic.
 - Things made of cotton and lying food.



	trial happens when we put all our items to a security of the		
	a) We use them again		
	b) A truck comes to pick them up		
	They are burnt outside the town		
	I hey are taken by our neighbours		
4	. what happens to the materials in the	tecycling plant?	
	yet separated and crushed		
	They are delivered to our homes a	ngain,	
	Companies buy these cubes and t	urn them into new products.	
_	and the street them away.		
5.	How can we do amazing craft projec	ts by recycling?	
	a by sending our materials to recycl	ing plants.	
	By selling rubbish from other countries.		
	e By using empty water bottles as fl	ower and cutting off the bottoms.	
	d By selling them in a local recycling	centre.	
6.	What does the underlined pronoun "	This "refer to?	
	a) The square cubes.	b) The special machines.	
	c) The glass jars.	d) The piles of rubbish.	
7.	The following materials can be recyc	ed except	
	a yogurt	b) books made of paper	
	c soda cans and bags containers	d) magazines and newspapers	
8.	The word means "a vehicle o	ised for lifting and moving heavy objects.".	
	à) machine	b) cubes	
	c) the recycling plant	d) forklift truck	
9.	The best title to the passage is "	# # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # # #	
	a) Recycling cans	b) Recycling saves our planet	
	c, Recycling from past to present	d) How to recycle bottles	
10. Everything goes to a recycling plant. Plant here means			
	a) a room	b) a machine	
	c) a factory	d) a kind of tree	

Electronic books, or elbooks, provide a new cool environmentally friendly and nexpensive way to read Elbooks are stored and used as computer files rather than as ink on paper.

one arena that might soon see the leap to elbook use is the classroom Students would take their elbook readers to the electronic bookstore load their texts

and not notice the extra weight of a dozen full length texts

tooks can be purchased directly on the internet from hundreds of purchased or retail e-bookstores. In either case, pay with your credit or debit card then download it directly as with a free book, or wait for it to arrive as an emalattachment, a disk or a CD.

E-books can be viewed on a computer screen or using a book reader which has

enough memory to store many book files at once.

E-publishers and many of their authors have web pages. These have further information, plot summaries, reviews, pictures, and other good stuff. They usually provide several chapters to read free so you can try-before-you buy some promise to make the experience better than paper with multimed a readers. Others produce audio versions where the author reads it to you ah, indulgence.

If you love paper books to death and just can't imagine reading any other way don't panic. So far, e-books are an alternative to the traditional ones. They

haven't replaced them ... yet.

Keep in mind, you take the same chances buying an electronic book as a paper one. Maybe you won't like it after all. But the majority of electronic publishers screen their books carefully, insist on professional editing, and publish only the best. If you read an excerpt first and buy only from reputable publishers, you won't often be disappointed.

pose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

How are e-books stored and used?

Printed books.

b) Newspapers.

()Computer files.

d) All of these.

Where can we use e-books in a wide-scale?

a) The classroom.

b) The bank.

The playground.

d) The club.

Where can e-books be purchased directly on the internet?

a) Bookshops.

b) Libraries.

() From publishers or e-bookstores.

d) Markets.

4. How can a person buy e books on the internet? a In cash By installments By checks By paying with credit or debit cards 5 What does the underlined pronoun' "refer to? E-books Traditional books. . Publishers. Readers. 6. What advantage do e-books have over printed books? They can be an e-mail attachment, a disk or a CD. They are environmentally-friendly. They are inexpensive way to read and can be easily bought. . All of these 7. E-books are a/an way of reading. expensive b) cheap : terrible d boring 8. E-books can be used a only at homes b) everywhere conly in classrooms d) by illiterates 9. The phrase "try-before-you-buy" means a reading for free taking books to homes buying books with little money d taking books without money 10. The best title to the passage is " ... ". a. E-books are better than traditional ones E-books as a way of entertainment The pros and cons of e-books E-books as a way of reading.

The digital landscape has put increased pressure on teenagers today, and we feel it. There are so many social media channels. Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, Snapchat, etc.

A new study has found that teenagers who engage with social media during the night could be damaging their sleep and increasing their risk of anxiety and depression. Teenagers spoke about the pressure they felt to make themselves available 24/7 and the resulting anxiety if they did not respond immediately to texts or posts. Teens are so emotionally invested in social media that a fifth of secondary school pupils will wake up at night and log on just to make sure they don't miss out. Perhaps the worst thing about this is that teenagers need more sleep than adults do, so night-time social media use could be detrimental to their health. A lack of sleep can make teenagers tired, irritable, and depressed. During the summer holidays, I lost my phone. And for the week that I was phoneless, it felt like a disaster. I love my phone. It gives me quick access to information and allows me to be constantly looped in with my friends, to know exactly what is going on in lives. So, when I didn't have my phone for a week, I felt a slight sense of FOMO, or if you're not up to speed with the lingo, fear of missing out. By the end of the week, I'd got used to not having a phone and I'd quite enjoyed the break from social media. But there was still a lingering sense of sadness at the back of my mind that there would be conversations I had missed, messages that had been sent, funny videos shared and night-time chats that I would probably never get to see.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What are the social media channels mentioned in this article?
 - 1 TVs, and radios.

b) Instagram, Snapchat.

Facebook, Twitter.

d) b and c.

- 2. Why do teens wake up at night and log on?
 - To search for useful information.
 - To send books to their friends.
 - Just to make sure they don't miss out.
 - To ask about their friends' health.

Mur 3

They may deed more than adul	4 a 7
THEY TIEED MORE CLASS	
They need more water.	
Titely need more money	
they need more time	
what does the underlined propour.	*refer to?
vine writer 3 family	16.64.50.
The writer's friends.	
The writer's neighbours.	
' The writer's children	
5 How did the writer feel when he lost his	mobile phone?
THE WAS TRADED.	
The writer was delighted.	
The writer was sad.	
The writer was tired.	
6. What did the writer miss when he lost h	is mobile phone?
estiversations,	•
b) Messages and night-time chats.	
c) Funny videos shared.	
d) All of these.	
7. The study warns teenagers against	Forest see a
er using the digital landscape	
b) using social media all night	
c) using facebook and twitter	
d not using social media	
8. What does "24/7" mean? It means	Middle Oak B.
a) 7 days a month	b) 24 days a month
c) all the time	d) 7 hours a day
9. Using social media too much can	14 to 16
a help teenagers find jobs	b' spoil relations among families
c strengthen ties among people	d) cause mental illness
10. The synonym of the word "anxiety" is	
a) easily annoyed	b) being sad
c) being dead	d) lack of hope

There are many alternative energy sources wind power, solar power geothermal power, and hydroelectric power are some examples

it has a Wind power is the ability to capture the wind in a way to the biades of wind turbines. When the blades rotate, this movement is switched into electrical current with the help of an electrical generator Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and grazing can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a consistent wind to get enough power If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced. Large wind farms can also have a negative visual effect for people who live nearby.

So at Power. Solar energy is used for heating, cooking, making electricity, and even taking salt out of saltwater so the water can be drinkable and used for additional purposes that do not need the salt. Solar power uses sunlight that hits the solar thermal panels to convert the sunlight to heat either air or water. Other methods of using solar power include simply opening up blinds or shades and letting the sunlight pass into the room or using some type of mirror to heat water and produce steam. One advantage of solar power is that it is renewable. As long as there is sunlight, you will be able to harness the power from it. There is also no pollution and it can be used efficiently to heat and light things. You can see the benefits of solar energy in heating swimming pools, spas, and water tanks in many cities across the country.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. What does the movement of the blades result in?
 - a) It results in more wind.
- b) It results in electrical current.
- c) It results in electrical generator
- d) It results in nonrenewable energy.
- 2. Why is wind power considered a renewable source of energy?
 - a) Because it reduces electricity.
 - b) Because the towers are built on wind farms.
 - c) Because it never runs out.
 - d) Because wind farms can be built anywhere.

WIT 3

Service S		
3. When is less electricity produced?		
When the wind speed decreases		
When the wind speed increases		
When solar power is produced		
When solar power increases		
4. What is solar energy used for?		
Cooking and taking salt out of salt	twater	
Heating.		
Making electricity.		
All of these.		
5. What converts the sunlight into heat	1?	
a) The sun.	b) The solar thermal panels	
c Air.	d) Steam,	
6. On what condition is the solar powe	r renewable?	
 a) As long as there is sunlight. 		
b) As long as there is air.		
c) As long as there are solar panels.		
d) As long as there is petrol.		
7. One of the following isn't an advant	ages of wind power.	
a) It lasts forever.		
b' it doesn't pollute the environmen	nt.	
c) It needs a constant wind to get e	nough power.	
d) Wind farms can be built anywhe	re.	
8. The underlined word "propel" mean	15	
a) drive	b) prepare	
c) pull	d) switch	
9. What is the best title to the passage	e?	
a The wind and solar power as renewable energy.		
b) How can we use the wind powe	r.	
c) The wind power as a cheap source of energy.		
d) Why many people use the solar	power.	
10. The antonym of the word "nearby" is		
a) close	b) neighbouring	
4, 4,4,4	w, neighbouring	

c) immediate

d) distant

Over 20 million people are employed in the coffee industry. They grow and sell enough coffee beans for 400,000,000 cups of a coffee a year Coffee is worth more than any other industry in the world except oil. In Brazil alone, about 3,000,000 coffee plants are looked after every year.

The story was though no one really knows the truth - that coffee was discovered in the country known today as Eth opia. A man called Kaldi who was looking after his goats noticed that his goats were very energetic after eating a certain kind of berry. He decided to try the berries himself and found that they gave him a lot of energy. When some priests heard about this, they dried the berries, then made them into a drink with water. Coffee was born!

It was in Turkey, however, that the coffee drink we know today was first made. Two Syrian businessmen brought the beans to istanbul in 1550. The Turks heated the beans over a fire, crushed them and then boiled them in water Coffee drinking became an important part of Turkish life rather like the way tea did in Japan. Also, whereas in Western nations a man often chose a woman to be his wife because she was a good cook, in Turkey men often tested the coffee made by a woman before they thought ser'ously about marrying her

By the 18th century coffee had become an important part of European life as well. In England, in particular, the coffee houses of London became important meeting places for writers and men working in the government.

In some ways Turkish coffee is similar to the Espresso coffee drunk in taly - it is dark and strong and drunk from small cups. However, it is made in a completely different way, and sometimes a spice called cardamom is added. Turkish coffee is served from a pot called a 'cezve'. In the same way that in tea-drinking nations some people tell fortunes from looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup So, in Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at what is left of the coffee in the cup.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Coffee was discovered for the first time in
 - a) America
 - c) Brazil

1

-9

2

- b) Africa
- d) Europe

c'animals 3. Coffee beans were brought to Turkey by a) two Europeans b) two Ethiopian businessmen c) Syrian businessmen d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee it. a) liked b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above	2. The writer mentioned that the coffee	when the paten by		
3. Coffee beans were brought to Turkey by a) two Europeans b) two Ethiopian businessmen c) Syrian businessmen d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone wno knew coffee a) liked b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	a) man	plant cart be eater by		
a) two Europeans b) two Ethloplan businessmen c) Syrian businessmen d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone wno knew coffee it. a) liked c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker	c' animals			
b) two Ethiopian businessmen c) Syrian businessmen d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee it. a) liked b) hated c) heated b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century c) 18th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	3. Coffee beans were brought to Turken			
b) two Ethiopian businessmen c) Syrian businessmen d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee a) liked b) hated c) heated b) hated d) sold 5. in Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker	a) two Europeans	Dy .		
d) two Brazilians 4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee a) liked b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	b) two Ethionian businessman			
4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee a) liked b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. in Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	c) Syrian businessmen			
4. We can notice that everyone who knew coffee it. a) liked b) hated c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	d) two Brazilians			
c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	4. We can notice that everyone to	**		
c) heated d) sold 5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker	a) liked			
5. In Turkey some people tell fortunes from looking at a) what's left in their tea cups b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living b) know the future d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
b) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea		d) sold		
c) the tea leaves c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	a) what's left in their territoriumes fi	om looking at .		
c) the tea roots d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	b) the tea leaves			
d) what's left in their coffee cups 6. Coffee had become an important part of the European life in the a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
a) 19th century b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	6. Coffee had become an in-			
b) 20th century c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	a) 19th continue	t of the European life in the .		
c) 18th century d) 17th century 7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	b) 20th century			
7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	C) 18th century			
7. The similarity between the Turkish coffee and the Espresso coffee is that it is a) dark b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
b) drunk from small cups c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is	and dark			
c) strong d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is				
 d) all of the above 8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is				
8. Through looking at the tea leaves in the bottom of a cup, some people think that they a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is	_			
a) can drink it well b) know the future c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
a) can drink it well b) know the future d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea		ne bottom of a cup, some people think that they		
c) earn their living d) deceive people 9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is				
9. The synonym of the word "energetic" is		-		
a) active b) difficult c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	_	d) deceive people		
c) lazy d) drowsy 10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	3 -1			
10. In Western nations, a woman was chosen to be a wife if she a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea				
a) was a good cooker b) made tasty tea	•			
**				
c) made tasty conee d) was a good cook	_			
	c) made tasty coffee	d) was a good cook		

I travel sickness is confined more to children. The all too familiar symptoms of vomiting sweating and headache affect adults too, more often women than men. Even so, dicidren between three and twelve are those most at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling.

Travel sickness occurs when the information supplied to the brain by the eyes, the inner ear and the sense of physical movement are giving contradictory information. This confusion is experienced when a person is subjected to repeated movements while the body is still at rest.

The centre that brings about the attack of motion sickness is the inner ear, providing as it does a complex mechanism responsible for balance. If the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed, a person no longer suffers motion sickness.

So, it is important for a person who feels a little bit uneasy while travelling, to lie as flat as possible and close his eyes. It's advisable to fix his vision on distant objects or on the horizon. Reading, map-reading and some forms of game playing are inadvisable. Windows should be open as fresh air helps, and adults who are easily attacked by trave sickness should avoid too much drinking or smoking before travelling. As a remedy there are some pills known as K-Wells. They are taken half an hour before travelling. They melt in the mouth and this makes them quick acting. These pils may cause sleepiness or dry mouth. Doctors who prefer natural remedies recommend ginger in one of its many forms.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The contradictory information given to the brain causes
 - a) repeated movements
 - b, travel sickness
 - c) balance in the body
 - d death at once
- 2. The person doesn't suffer motion sickness if
 - a, the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed
 - b) they have more than one nerve in the inner ear
 - c, they are adults
 - d, they are travelling early in the morning

3. The organ that is responsible for bafa	then in the bady of the
al sense of physical movement	ince hi the body is the
b) Inner ear	
c) complex mechanism	
d) the pills known as K-Wells	
4. Those people who are likely to be	attacked by travel sickness are not advised to
before travelling.	travel sickless are not advised to
a) smoke or drink too much	
b) listen to or play music too much	
c) sleep early or get up early	
d) open the windows of the car	
5. A natural remedy of travelling sickne	ss is in any form.
→ coffee	b) tea
< yeast	d) ginger
6. The phrase "at risk of losing their brea	akfast when travelling" means
a) vomiting	b) sweating
c sleeping	d) eating
7. To avoid travel sickness, you may	1001-3001-100
a read a book	b) play a game
c) look on the horizon	d) have big meals
8. The channels which supply the brain	
a) the eyes	
b) the sense of physical movement	
c) the inner ear	
d) all of the above	
9. In order to melt quickly and take acti	on, the pills should .
a) be wet	
b) be soaked in water	
c) kept dry	
d) be taken have an hour before trav	velling
10. The antonym of the word "confusion	n"is
a) misunderstanding	b) clarity
c) mistake	d) chaos

If the sun were turned off suddenly, like an electric lamp, our Earth would begin to cool, Ice would form but never melt. The temperature would drop towards the absolute zero point. Life would stop. The Earth would begin to resemble the planets Jupiter and Saturn, which get almost no heat from the sun Distance from the sun is important in the amount of heat a planet receives. If you've ever sat around a camp fire during a _____, night, you know how pleasant it is to be near the fire. The outer planets, like campers kept at a distance, get very little heat. On the other hand, Mercury and Venus, which are closer to the sun than we are, get more heat than we could stand without protection While almost all our heat comes from the sun, a small amount of it comes from the Earth itself. Most scientists think the Earth was formed several billion years ago, it was a flery, growing liquid mass. Gradually this mass cooled I ke hot chocolate sauce cooling and turning into solid on the sides of a pan, the hot liquid material of the Earth cooled and turned slowly into the solid rock crust we live on today. But deep inside the Earth the heat was held in by the solid outside crust. The ret he cooling was so slow, in fact, that enormous amounts of heat are left in the Earth's core. Miners going to work feel the increasing heat as they go down inside the mine. Even those of us who stay on the surface of the Earth sometimes see violent evidence of the imprisoned heat. A volcano erupts, spewing up fiery liquid lava from deep inside the Earth. The lava flows down the volcano's sides and cools, turning into solid rock.

Thus we see that there are two important sources of heat to keep us from cooling down to absolute zero. The sun is the most important one giving off a steady amount of heat at just the right distance from us. The Earth also helps a bit to keep us warm with the heat that comes very slowly from its centre. But neither of these could keep us alive without the life – saving blanket that circles our Earth-the air.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The amount of heat a planet receives depends on
 - a) how far it is from the farthest planet
 - b) its atmosphere

J

- 4

- c) its distance from the outer planets
- d) Its distance from the sun

- 2. As miners go down inside the mine for work, they feel the

 - c increasing heat

- b) decreasing heat

c) pleasant

- b) rather cold d) dark
- 4. The two sources of heat on our Earth are
 - a) the sun and the earth
- c) the earth and the moon
- b) the sun and the moon d) Mercury, Venus and the sun
- 5. If the sun were turned off suddenly, the Earth would resemble
 - c) Mercury and Venus

- b) all the other planets d) Mars and Mercury
- 6. There would be no life on the earth without...
 - a) the heat from the sun
- b) the air
- c: the heat from the earth
- d) all of the previous
- 7. The heat from inside the earth comes up in the form of

 - b) volcanoes
 - c) winds
 - d) earthquakes
- 8. The antonym of the word "erupt" is
 - a) flare up
 - b) blow up
 - c) go off
 - d) subside
- 9. The underlined word "There" refers to
 - a) in the sun
 - b) outside crust
 - c) deep inside the Earth
 - d) in the rock
- 10. One of the following is untrue .
 - a) the heat from the sun and earth doesn't keep life w thout the air
 - b) almost all our heat comes from the sun
 - c) when the volcano erupts, it sends fiery solid lava
 - d) most of our heat comes from the earth

The of England's greatest witters charges [went was twen in 1812] His factor was careless with money. When he was 12 he had to leave school to work in a chose-dive factors in London because his father had been into somed for deep this experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy and those two has were later expressed in his writing particularly in his descriptions of the poor Victorian factories.

when his father came into inheritance, young Dickens could return to his achool, but the family's fortunes were never very secure. At the age of 15 he left school to join a law firm as a clerk. Then, after four years, he went yournalism, reporting law cases and parliamentary debates. These work expenences helped to develop still further his social awareness, which again arould later be reflected in his novels.

Dickens' success as a writer began when he started writing the Pickwick Papers in 1836. The were originally intended as a humorous narrative to accompany a series of drawings. Within four months, he had become famous. The Pickwick Papers were not only humorous, but also made a serious attempt to look at the legal system and to show how justice was applied. Also, interestingly, it is a clear illustration of how Dickens' private life was reflected in his work, as Mr. Pickwick spent some time in a debtor's prison, just like Dickens' own father.

Dickens' early life had clearly enabled him to write about the poor and dispossessed with understanding and compassion. This compassion also made itself to be felt in practical ways. He helped to establish a home for destitute women and encouraged slum clearance and developments in sanitary provisions.

coose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Orarles Dickens, was born in the century.

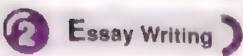
≥ 19th

c 17th d) 18th

Mhy did Charles have to work at an early age?

- Because his father had gone to prison.
- Because his father was careless.
- Because he wanted to leave school.
- Because his father died.

3. Dickens' family didn't have enough money although his father			
a) came to an inheritance			
b) went to prison			
c) let him leave school			
d) allowed him to join a law firm			
4. Dickens was deeply affected by	odda A		
a) his father's imprisonment	a) his father's imprisonment		
b) his early working in a factory			
c) working conditions of the poor			
d) all of these			
5. Writing the Pickwick Papers established	d Dickens as		
a) a poor writer	b) a successful writer		
cha rich English boy	d) a reporter of law cases		
6. As a journalist, Dickens' job was to report law cases and parliamentary			
a) discussions	b) sessions		
c) meetings	d) lessons		
7. This passage speaks about Dickens as a	more than a writer.		
a) humanitarian	b) decision maker		
c) social reformer	d) social worker		
8. The synonym of the word "humorous" is			
a) funny	b) dull		
c) dangerous	d) serious		
9. The best title to the passage is "			
a) Dickens' suffering in the factory			
b) Dickens as a writer			
c) Dickens' suffering and interest in society.			
d) Dickens' early life			
10. The underlined word "These" refers to			
a) Dickens' novels	b) Pickwick Papers		
c) Dickens' bad conditions	d) Dickens' work experiences		
63	o) Dickens work experiences		



· تغيير المقال من الإسئلة ابنَى بواحه الطائب صعوبة فيها. ولدا لا يكون الحصول على درجة المقال كاملة بالأمر اليسير. وهدري معتقق الا بالكتريب المستمر على كنابة المقال

 المقال هو الكتابة عن موضوع محدد بوهمة بظر محددة وينقسم إلى عدد من المقرات المرتبة والمحططة، بحيث يتم توضيع من حواليا المدينة المدينة والمحططة، بحيث يتم توضيع من المقرات المدينة والمحططة، بحيث يتم توضيع من المدينة الم حوايب الموصوع المحتلمة

· تكتابة ممال حيد هناك بعض القواعد العامة المامة التي يحب الباعها، ومنها؛

, peade what kind of essay to ante

- حدد يوم المقال الدي ستكتبه

· يتم تحديد يوم العقال حسب الموضوع المطلوب الكتابة ميه وهناك تقسيمات عبيدة لأنواع المقالات ولكن يمكن تحبير حمسة أنواع هي الأكثر استخدامـًا وهي:

المقال القصصى (حكاية قصة)

A. Narrative Essay المقال الوصني (وصف شيء أو مكان) 8. Descriptive Essay

المقال التفسيري (عرض حقائق ومعلومات عن موضوع محدد)

المقال الحدلي (تعاول اكثر من وحمة نظر للموصوع الواحدا

المقال الاقداعي (تداول أكثر من وجمة نظر للموضوع الواحد مع تفضيل وحمة محددة)

D. Argumentative Essay E. Persuasive Essay

C. Expository Essay

Brainstorm your topic.

٣ - هم تعصف تحتى لامكار حاصة بالموضوع الذي تقوم بالكتابة عنه.

· وهنا يتم تحديد عند من الأفكار والنقلط التي سيتم تناولها في المقال، ويمكن تقسيم هذه المرحلة إلى: (١) سرد الأمكار والنقاط بلا ترتيب بل بحسب ورودها في تفكيرك (كما يمكن الاستعانة بمصادر خارجية إن لم يكن اديك العلم بالموضوع).

(ب) ترتيب وتخطيط الأفكار بحيث يتم وضع نسق محدد للموضوع.

2 Outline your essay,

٣- هند. الخطوط العريضة للمقال.

و العقصود هذا تحديد الفقرات وعددها حسب نوع المقال والأمكار التي سيتم تناولها، ويمكن تقسيم فقرات المقال كالتقي.

A. Introduction (paragraph 1)

صلب الموضوع

B. Main body (paragraphs 2-3) C. Conclusion (paragraph 4)

الحائمة

مع ملاحظة أن المقال بمكن أن يتكون من عدد أقل أو أكثر من الفقرات.

4 Write a draft of your essay.

هم يكتابة مسودة أولية مستحدمًا الأمكار والخطوط العريصة التي قمت بتقسيم المقال على أساسما.

5 Review your essay to correct mistakes.

٥- قم بتقييم المقال لتصحيح الأخطاء،

قم بقراءة الموضوع وحاول تصحيح الأخطاء التي يمكن أن تكتشفها مركزًا على الثالي :

A. Spelling mistakes

الأخطاء الهجائية

8. Grammar mistakes

أخطاء قواعد اللغة

6. Finish your essay

٦- أنه كتابة مقالك

بعد أن قمت بالخطوات السابقة قم بكتابة النسخة النهائية للمقال حتى تكون قد انتميث من كتابة المقال في أفضل صورة،

General Outlines of Energy Writing

The introduction: 2,134

Introduction

برشد المقدمة القارى الى المقال من خلال تقديم الموضوع الجندان ليد البعث الثيام القارئ، يمكن ان يكون هذا متناسا أو تشابها، أو سؤالا أوما إلى ذلك المداحدات تتناه القارئ، يحب أن تقدم الممدمة تعص المعلومات الاساسية حول الموضوع أويجب أن تكون الأمكار الموجودة في العقدمة عامة بما تكمى ليتمكن القارئ من مهم الاتجام الرئيسي، ويصبح بدريجيّ اكثر تحديدًا ليقود إلى ليان هذا الاتجام.

Main Body

The main body:

سلب الموشوع

Main idea (1)

يدعم يص المقالة التقاط الرئيسية الواردة من المقدعة ايتم تطوير كل نقط<mark>ة بواسطة فقرة واحدة</mark> و اكثر، ويتم دعمها لتماصيل محددة اوبالإصافة إلى هذا الدعم، فإن مناقشته للموضوع يربط الإمكار معنا، ويستحلص النتائج التي تدعم الاتجاه الرئيسي ليمقال.

Main Body Main idea (2)

The conclusion:

الخاتمة

Conclusion

يجمع الاستنتاج بين جميع التقاط الرئيسية للمقال، يشير إلى بيان الأفكار الرئيسية للمقال، ويترك المراء مكرًا تعانيًّا عن طريق حل أي أمكار تم طرحها في المقالة، ولا ينتغي تقديم مواصيع أو أفكار جديدة لم يتم تطويرها في المقال.



Narrative Essay

، المقال القصصى هو الذي تحكى فيه قصة أو تجربة، ولا يقف عند وصف ما حدث فقط، بن يفصل أيضًا ما شعرت به في ذلك الوقت، وكيف أثرث عنيك، وما تعلمته منه. والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هي كالتالي:

Outline of a Narrative Essay

سِمَا مُدُم الموضوع أو الحدث لذى ترويه، واشرح سبب أهميته بالنسبة لك. كما يمكنك أن تلخص بسرعة ما تعلمته أو شعرت به نتيجة للحدث الذى تصفه .

سوف نتحدث الأن عن الجدث الذي ترويه، وأثناء القيام بذلك، تأكد من تضمين جميع النقاط المعمة من شنرك؟ أين حدث هذا؟ لملذا حصل هذا؟ صف بالضبط ما حدث وقد يتم ذلك في فقرة واحدة أو اكثر.

ارجع إلى ما تعلمته من الحبث، وكيف أثر على فهمك أو نظرتك للموضوع المطروح. وقد لا يتضمن هذا الموضوع خاتمة (خاصة إذا كنت تصف حدثا لم يؤثر بشكل كبير عليك).

Sample Narrative Essays

A wedding party that I attended

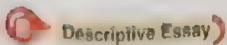
Last week, I was invited to my cousins wedding party which I attended with my wife. The party was in a big half at a famous hotel in Cairo. It was so amazing and everything was exciting. I can say that it is one of the most exciting events that I have attended lately.

When we arrived at the wedding hall, my wife and I were taken by the big size of the place. There were about 30 tables of 10 people. Most of the guests were relatives and friends. When all the guests arrived, the waiters began to serve all kinds of juice and soft drinks, while the band was playing music. The camera man was filming everything that was happening. Then, the bride and the groom made their wonderful entrance. Everyone was gazing at them happily. The bride was wearing a fabulous white dress, and the groom was wearing a nice suit. Next, the band started its show with a famous singer who sang beautiful songs while other guests were taking pictures with the bride and groom.

A few minutes later, we sat down at the dinner table and we had a very nice and delicious dinner. They brought us delicious dishes of vegetables and meat and a plate of roasted chicken for every table. The party lasted till five in the morning, the time when the two married couple went out followed by some guests.

To tell the truth, the wedding was really beautiful and unforgettable, and I was so happy that day. My wife was much impressed by it and she reminded me of our wedding party which was simpler than this one, but we always remember it with great excitement and joy. We were very happy to see these couple begin their new life just as we did years ago.





الممال الوصعى هو المقال الذي تضم عيه شيئا أو شدمت أو مكار الو عملية، و حددة وتكون هدمك هو انشاء تدرية قراءة دية أو الممال الوصعى هو المقال الذي تضم عيه شيئا أو شدمت أو مكار الو عملية، و حددة وتكون هدمك هو انشاء تدرية قراءة دية المرمر مدلا من الرواية والخطوط الرئيسية لكنابة قد النوع من المقال هي كالنائي

Outline of a Descriptive Essay

introduction

يقدم المقدمة لمحة عامة موحرة على موصوع المقال، تحدد عدها الشيء أو الموقف الدي ستقوم بوصعه كما يمكن اعطاء بعص الانطباعات أو الاتحافات أو الاتحافات أو الازاء الحاصة بالموصوع، وعادة ما يحصل القراء على تلميح عما ستكون عليه المقالة من الفقرة الاولى.

Main body

متم استغرض مومسوع الممال الوصفيين وشرحه بالتعميل في نص المقال المكلف ال اعتمادًا على ما تعتبره معمّات عاده استخدم الكاتب مجموعات كبيرة ومشوعة من الصفات والطاروف لمعيل المقال اكثر حبويات و ثارة للاهتمام للقاراء أيصاد في هذا القساعين يمكن بنكائب تقديم امثلة محدده لتحسين وصف الموضوع (الشابيء الموصوف) وتسفيل فعمه للحمد ورا يوقر هذا الجارة من المقال للقراء نظرة شاملة لكل جوانب الوصف

Conclusion

مي هد انجرء نقدم ملحصنا لما تعتقده اهم نقاط الوصعة، كما يتصمل امكارات الدامية وشعورات عيما يحصى موصوع المقال وهذا يعتقد نشكل كبير على الموب الكتابة والحيال والمهارات التطبيبة للكاتب

Sample Descriptive Essays

My favourite holiday place

As a child, I always enjoyed spending time at our chalet in Marsa Matroun. It was a place where you could go and get away from the busy life in the city and enjoy doing things that you might not be able to do back home. We always tried to go at least a couple of times during the summer when my father would get his vacation from work. There was so much to do and see. Even though things have changed now, I won't forget all of the memories that I have from when I was a child.

The first time we went there, I noticed a difference in the way the air smelled I took in a deep breath of air and noticed how clean it smelled. I couldn't help myself. I wanted to breathe in more and more to keep taking it a...in. felt my lungs clearing from all the pollution and stale air back home. I never wanted to let go of this feeling of freshness.

1. Introductio

2. Main body

Introduction

Main body

Conclusion

At night, it was so quiet you could have heard a pin drop. The sky was clear and the sea was so nice. It was a sight that was far unlike anything I could have ever imagined. You could sit outside for hours just listening and watching nature in its truest form.

Now, I have my own family and I always spend all summer vacations with them here. I am thinking of moving to Marsa Matrouh live here permanently. Now, my family get to enjoy the fresh air and relaxed atmosphere. Those experiences as a child opened my eyes to something far better beyond the city that I get to remember every day with my family.



Expository Essay

العقال التعسيري هو الدى تقوم فيه بشرح حقائق متصلة بموضوع ما أو توضيح شيء بطريقة يصبح واضحنا للقراء؛ لدلك يعكن يكون تحقيفا أو تقييمنا لاهمية الموضوع المتناول للتوضيح.

Outline of an Expository Essay

تحتوي المعدمة على تحديد الموضوع المراد الكتابة عنه مع عرض موجز للحوانب التي ستقوم بتفصيلها وسردها في المقال ويجب الا تتضمن أي تفاصيل عن هذه الجوانب.

في مقرتين أو ثلاث قم بسرد كل الجوائب والحقائق عن الموضوع ويمكن تصمين بعض الأدلة والتفاصيل الخلصة بكل حالب من حوائب الموضوع؛ مع ملاحظة أن الموضوع لا يتضمن أي وجمة نظر محددة، بل هو سرد للمعلومات الخاصة بالموضوع المراد توضيحه للقارئ.

تتضمن الخاتمة تلخيصنا موجرًا للحقائق التي تم عرضها في المقال، ويمكن إبراج أي تقييم للموضوع الذي تم توضيع جواتبه المختلفة، ويمكن أن تتصمن الخاتمة حثًا للقارئ للبحث عن جوانب وحقائق أخرى لهذا الموضوع.



Sample Expository Essays

The history of chess

Chess is perhaps the most popular and treasured board game in the world. Millions of people play it daily, and millions of dollars of sponsorship go into the world championships of chess. It seems to be getting even more popular as the years goes on.

There are many legends surrounding the origin of chess, and also the rules of the game have transformed so much during its about 1500 years of history, that it is difficult to trace exactly when "chess" came into being as we know it. In each region, chess took on different rules, pieces and boards However, we know that chess originated from the Gupta Empire (600CE), of India. The pieces come from the primary military elements of that time the infantry, the elephants, the cavalry and the chariots. Some experts have claimed that the game could have originated in China, but these assessments are in the minority.

From India, chess travelled to Persia. Several variations of chess evolved in Persia. The queen and bishop had limited movement at this time, unlike the wide movement it has now. The form of chass which finally arrived in Europe was already being played in Persia some 1,350 years ago. The game became very popular in the Muslim world, and it was carried back, throughout Islam across North Africa and eventually into Europe. Also, in Persia, the first recognisable chess pieces began to emerge that are similar to our modern ones.

Chess is a game of about 1,500 years that originated in India, travelled to Persia, and through Muslim influence, spread throughout Europe. In that progression, its rules have changed, and its pieces have also transformed. There are still several variations of chess in multiple countries, like China, Japan, Korea, and more. However, the international chess we play today was developed in Europe by giving the queen and bishop greater power—making the game more thrilling, and at the same time, subtle.



Argumentative Essay

ا فر الاسقال المدائر هو المقال الدي بقهم الخارب ميه بعرص أمكار أو أراء مكتلمة حول موصوع واحد. وقد بتكد موقفتا من تهريج الإس ممال عمار ميد الم بعاول الكاند اقدام القراء بفهم وجمة نظره حول موسوع ما ودعمها عن طريق ذكر أسانه وتقديم اطلاعي

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction

the

the

ig as

CE),

ime.

red in e the Jrope very cross able

ta

ears of

poards.

nsorship ven more

> بجب أن تحدد المقدمة العكرة الأساسية للمعال، ودومر معلومان أساسية صرورية لفهم المكرة وتريي الحوائب أو الآراء المجتلفة للموسوم التى سوف تقوم بعرضها إمثل المزارا والعيوب لموصوع المقال)، ويمكن إن تحدد الجلمك الأساسي مي الموصوم الذي ستناقش حواتيه

Main body

يثالف المقال الجدني النمونجي من فقرتين أو أكثر تشرح أسباب دعمك لرأيك، يجب أن تغطى كل فقرة فكرة ممتلعة أو دليلًا محثلتا حيث تقوم بعرض وجعات النظر المتعارضة. حيث إن تقديم الحقائق والنظر في موشوع من كل راوية يضيف مصداقية، وسيساعدك على كسب ثقة القارئ.

Conclusion

هنة. يجب، عليك تلحيمي رأيك وكل وجمة بخار من قسم المقال يجب أن تجنب الماتمة القارئ وتغرص هجة رأبك كما سب أن يضع من اعتبارك أيمننا أن الفقرة تبريط مقط الجوانب المركدرية للمقال، ولا يمكنها تقنيم موج أو مقائق جعيدة.

(431



Sample Argumentative Essays

Should public libraries be shut down?

Introduction

As online learning becomes common more and more resources are converted to digital form, some people have suggested that public libraries should be shut down and, in their place, everyone should be given an iPad with an e-reader subscription.

Point of View (1)

Point of View (2)

Proponents of this idea state that it will save local cities and towns money because libraries are expensive to maintain. They also believe it will encourage more people to read because they won't have to travel to a library to get a book; they can simply click on what they want to read and read it from wherever they are. They could also access more materials because libraries won't have to buy physical copies of books; they can simply rent out as many digital copies as they need.

Main body

However, it would be a serious mistake to replace libraries with tablets or iPads. First, digital books and resources are associated with less learning and more problems than print resources, more Additionally, staring too long at a screen has been shown to cause numerous health problems, including blurred vision, dizziness, dry eyes, headaches, and eye strain, at much higher instances than reading print does. People who use tablets and mobile devices excessively also have a higher incidence of more serious health problems such as shoulder and back pain, and muscle strain. We should add to these problems by giving people, especially young people, more reasons to look at screens.

Conclusion

While replacing libraries with tablets may seem like a simple solution, it would encourage people to spend even more time looking at digital screens, despite the problems of this overuse. It would also end access to many of the benefits of libraries that people have come to rely on in many areas, libraries are such an important part of the community network that they could never be replaced by a simple object.

432



are

be

צחי : it rel

to

re S;

ÌS.

ı,

introduction

Main body

Conclusion

Persuasive Essay

المقال الإضاعي هو المقال الدي بشرح الكاتب فيه موصوعنا ويحاول اقناع القاري بوجهة بظر محددة تحاه هذا الموصوع. والفرق المقال الإضاعي هو المقال الدي مشرح الكاتب فيه موصوعنا. ويحاول اقناع القاري توحصه بسر. دين المقال الإفناعي والجدلي هو مناقشة مكرة واحدة أميرة أو عنب اللموصوع الذي تثم الكتابة عنه، مع شرح أسناب وأي الظار

Outline of a Persuasive Essay

الغرض الرئيسي من المقدمة هو تحديد الحواتب الرئيسية لموصوعك واتجاهك الأساسي بشكل موجز، ويمكن ذكر أسمات هذا الانحاة (التي سوف تناقشما بالتفصيل بعد ذلك)، ويجب أن تكون مي شكل موجز

يتكون من فقرتين أو ثلاث تركز كل منها على فكرة منعصلة أو سنب من الأسباب المؤيدة لوجهة نظرك مع أدلة داعمة تحمل المّارئ يقتبع بوجعة نظرك تجاه الموضوع،

تتكون من ملخص قصير للنقاط الرئيسية التي أيدت وجمة بظرك في المقال، وذلك لتعزيز التأثير العقنع للقارئ. ولذلك يجب أن تكون واضحة ومنطقية.

The advantages of online learning (education)

It seems everything is moving online these days. Even our education is transferring onto the internet. Online learning is now considered the best way of education in our modern world. There are reasons for this you can learn whatever you want, it is more comfortable in a variety of ways and the cost of virtual education is often lower than traditional education

The freedom to choose your educational path is an enduring quality of online education. For more creative people, or people who want to focus on a single activity, this can be a dream come true. With online education, you can take any program or course present in traditional four-year universities So, the ease of access to the courses and majors you are striving to study are widely available online. This increases opportunities to gain the education we desire instead of making needless compromises.

Similarly, comfort takes centre stage for many students. Countless students choose online education in order to avoid wasting time travelling and on many other activities in order to attend physical Education Institutions. Students listen to lectures and complete assignments sent to them electronically, with no need to fight traffic, leave work early for class, or miss important fam y time. Rather than miss important class sessions (due to weather conditions, students in online courses can always "attend" by participating in discussion boards or chat sessions, turning in their work on time, and watching lectures or reading materials.

Finally, the cost of getting an online education is cheaper on average than receiving a traditional education. For example, there are no commuting costs, and sometimes required course materials, such as textbooks, are available online at no cost. In addition, many colleges and universities accept credits earned via free massive open online courses. Thus, there are a variety of reasons why an online education costs less.

Receiving an online education is becoming more and more popular due to a multitude of advantages it has over traditional instruction. These advantages include, to name a few: students can learn whatever they want, it is more comfortable, online courses often look great on resumes, the pacing of learning is managed by the pupil, and the cost is often lower than traditional education. With these reasons, it is hard to not see why this form of education is on the rise.



related proves of paragraphs. aparagraph is a related group of sentences that develops one main idea. Each paragraph nevid be centered around just one idea.

المقرة هي مجموعة من الجمل دات الصلة التي بطور فكرة رئيسية واحدة. يحت أن تدور كل مقرة حول مكرة واحدة.

gich paragraph should contain:

كل خفرة لابد أن تحتوي على:

topic sentence that states the main or controlling idea.

جملة افتتاحية توضح الفكرة الرئيسية أو المسيطرة.

...pporting sentences to explain and develop the point you're making

· جملة داعمة لشرح وتطوير النقصة التي تطرحما.

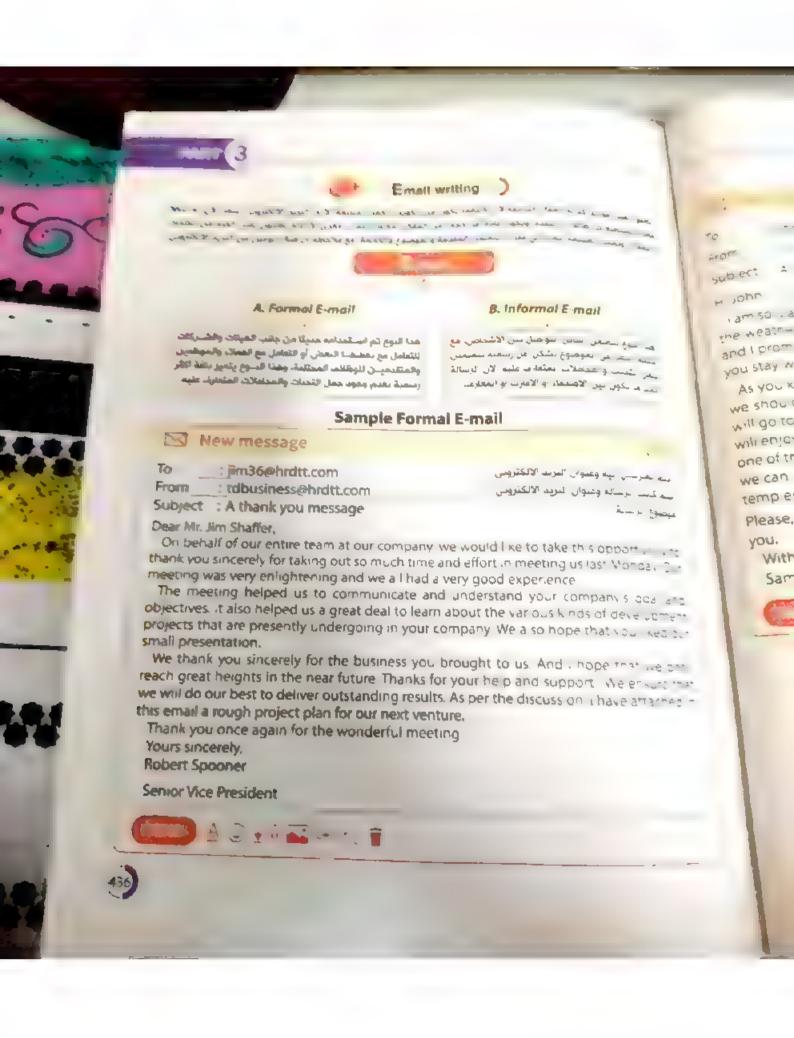
evidence from your reading or an example from the subject area that supports your point

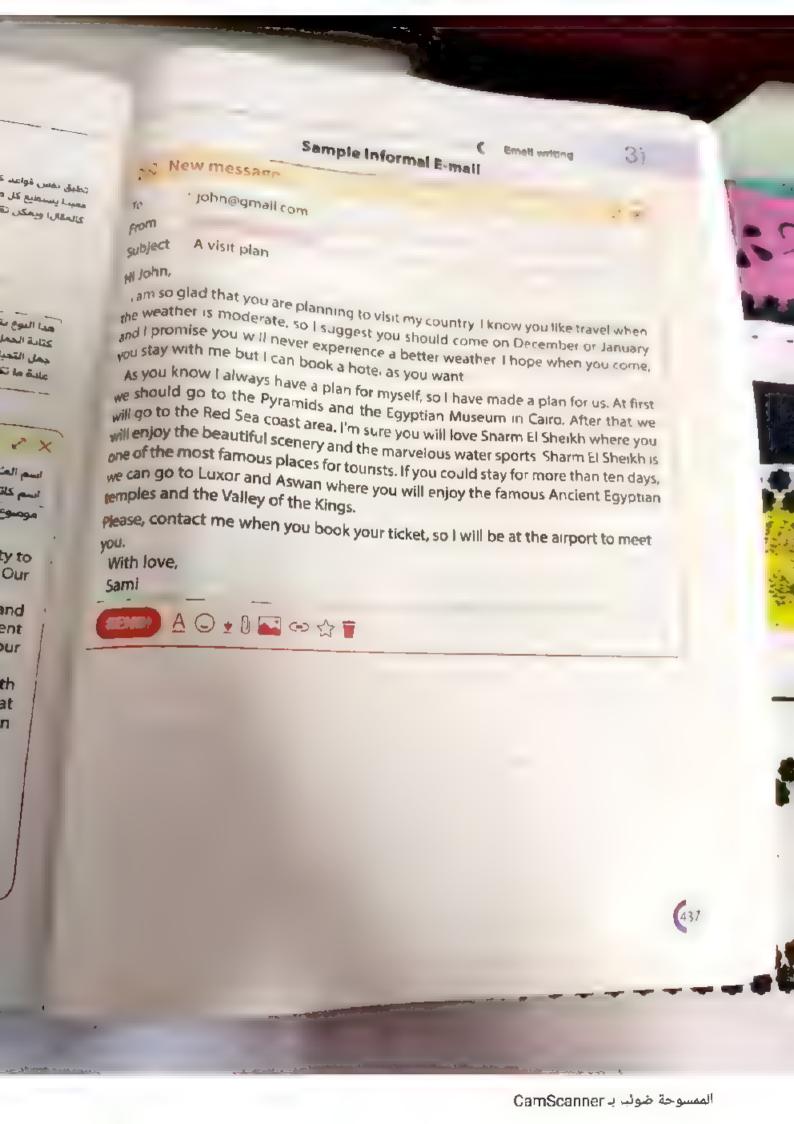
طيل من قراءتك أو مثال حول الموضوع يدعم وجهة نظرك.

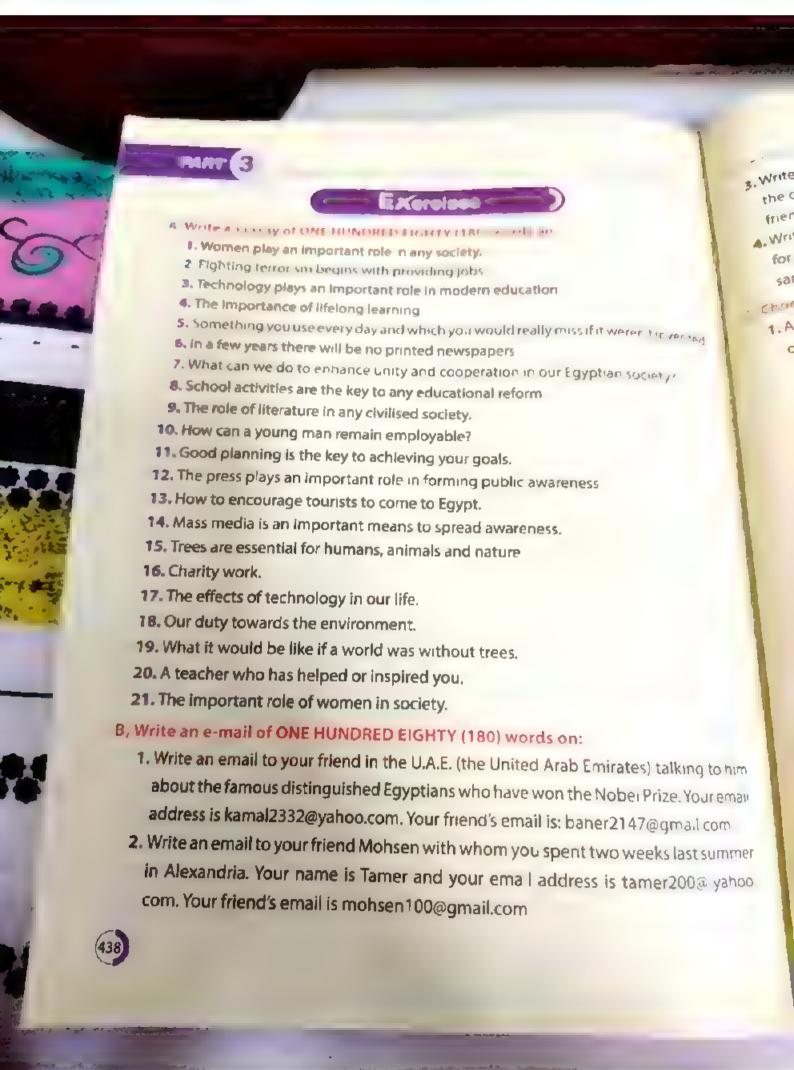
a concluding sentence that restates your point, analyses the evidence, or acts as a transition to the next paragraph.

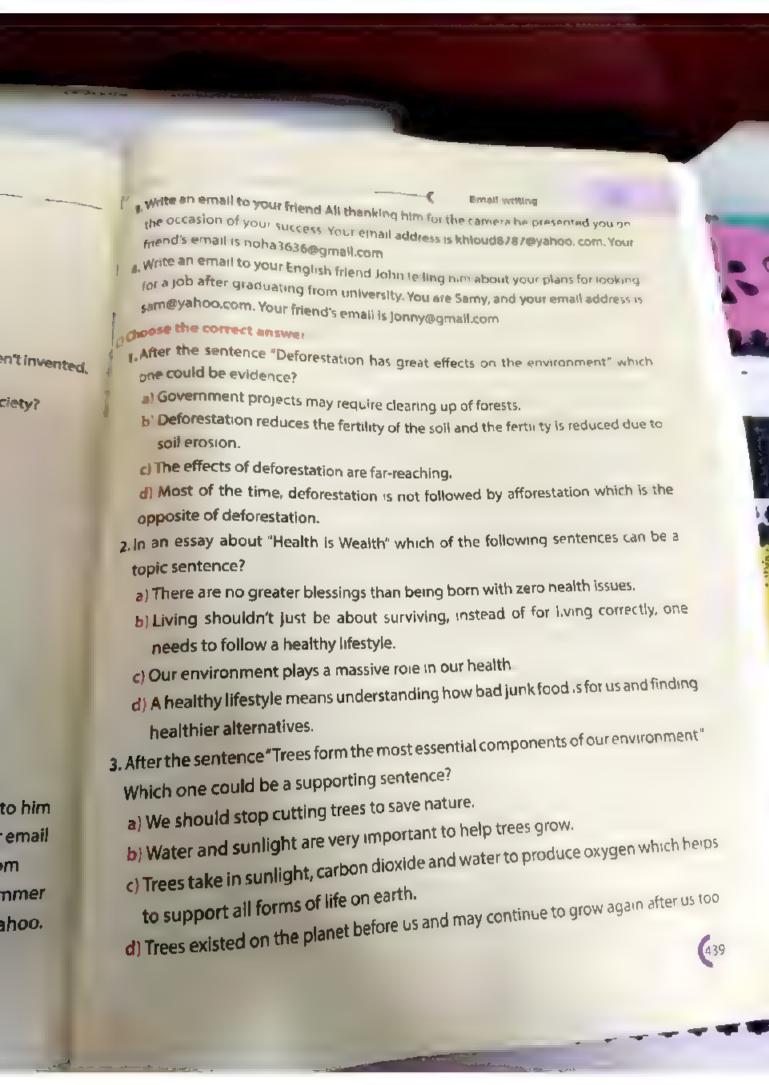
جملة حتامية تؤكد وجمة نظرت، وتحلل الأدلة أو تعمل بمثابة انتقال إلى الفقرة التالية.

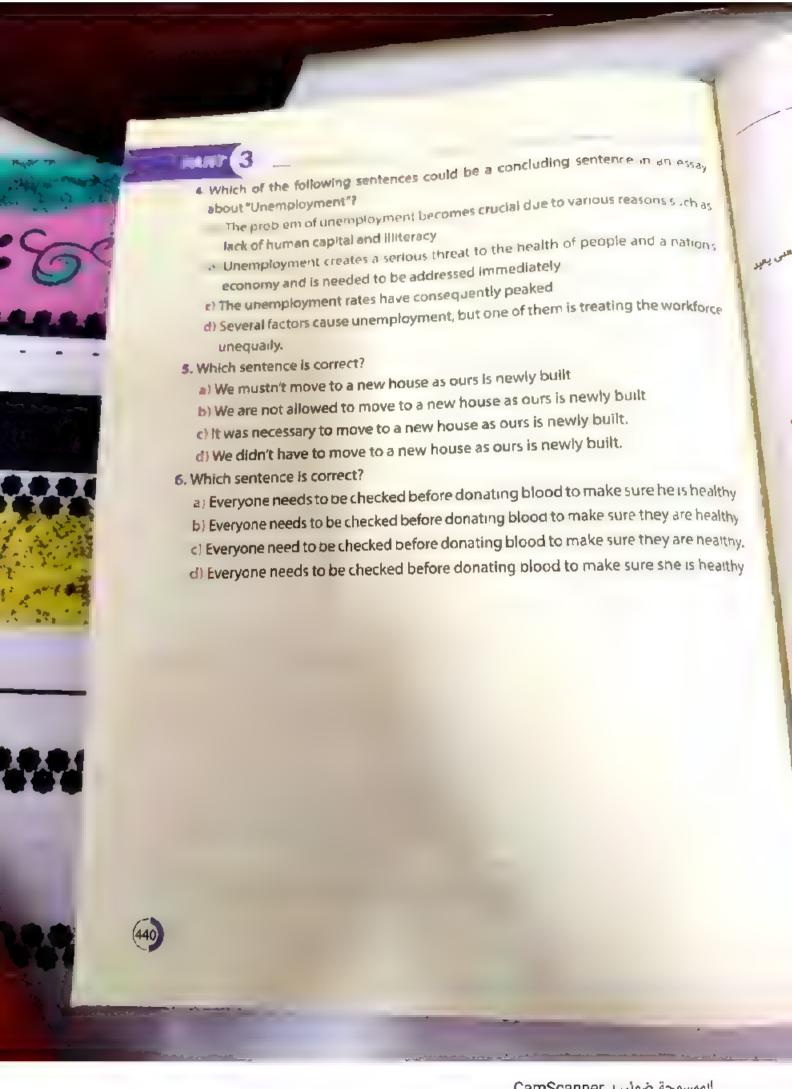
Although the Braille system gained immediate popularity with the blind students at the Institute in Paris, it was slow to gain acceptance, because sighted teachers and leaders had ultimate control over the spread of Braille resources View Control teachers at the Royal Institute for Bind Youth resisted learning Bindle because their round the touch method of reading difficult to learn. Over time, however, with the increasing motive to make social contribution possible for all, teachers began to appreciate the usefulness of Braille's system, realizing that access to reading could help improve the productivity and integration of the blind. It took approximate y 30 years, and the French government eventually approved the Braille system, and it was established throughout the country.











an essay

such as

nation's

kforce

thy.

thy. thy.

thy.

Subject

الغامل

الفاعل

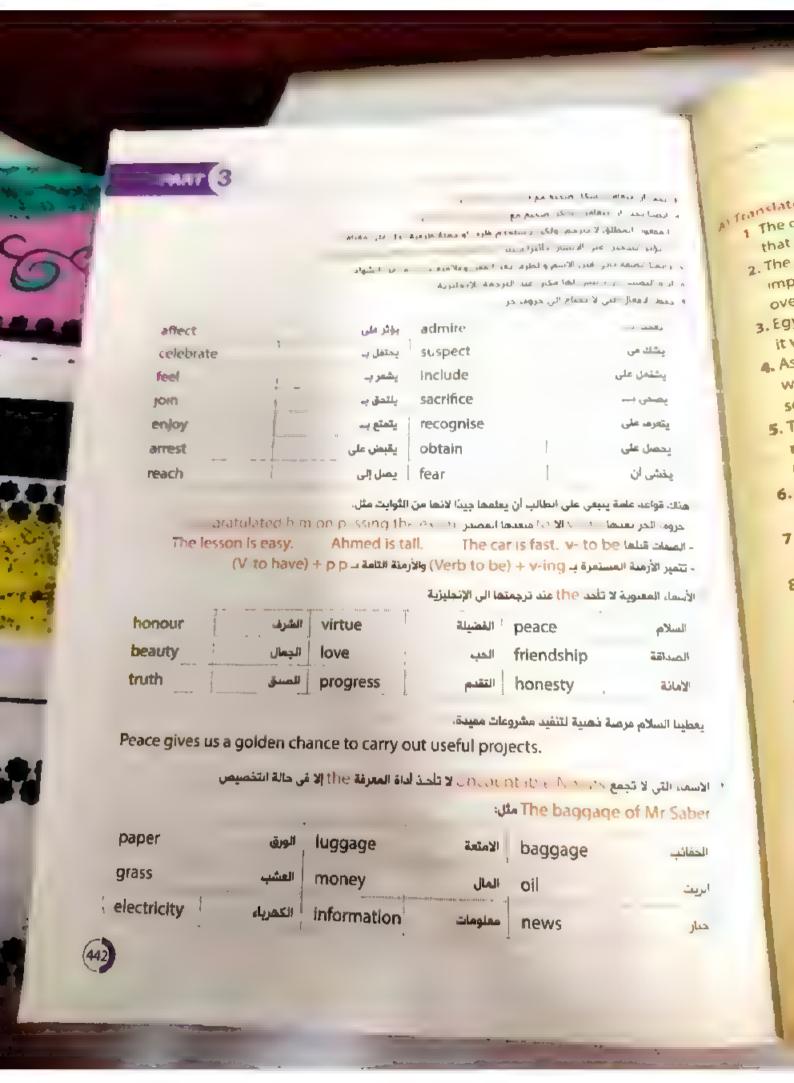
Ahmed

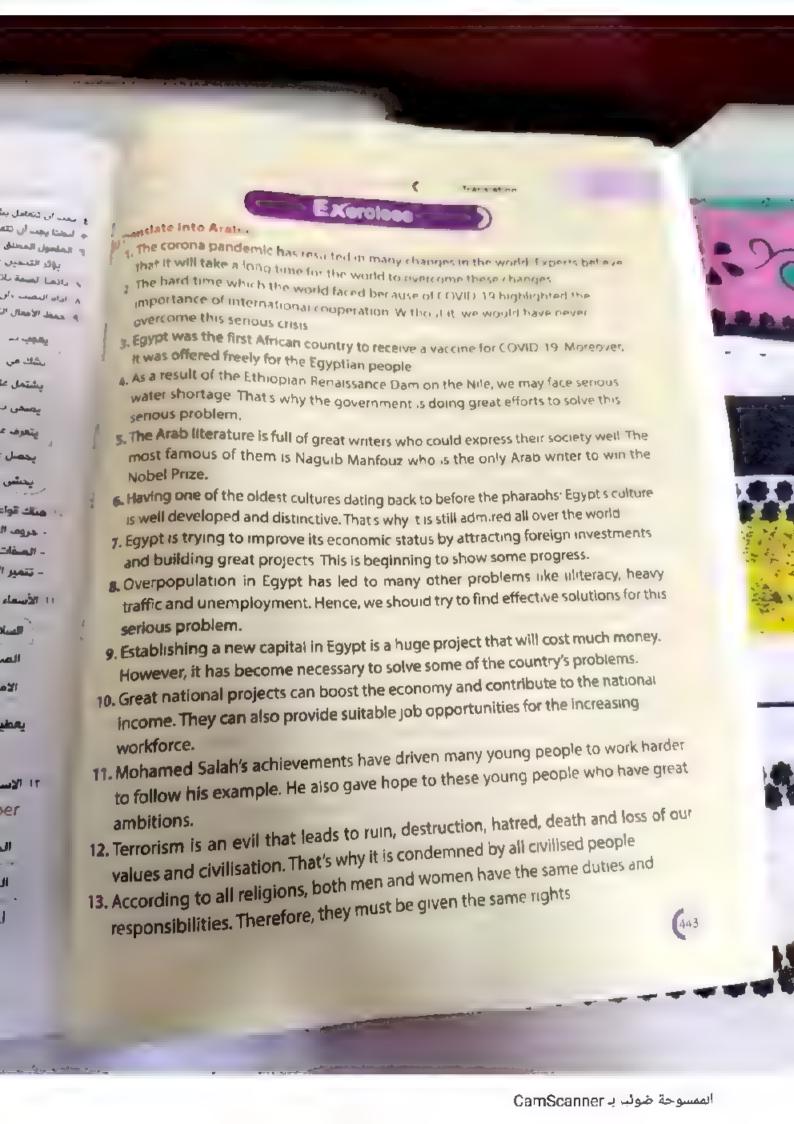
الفاعل

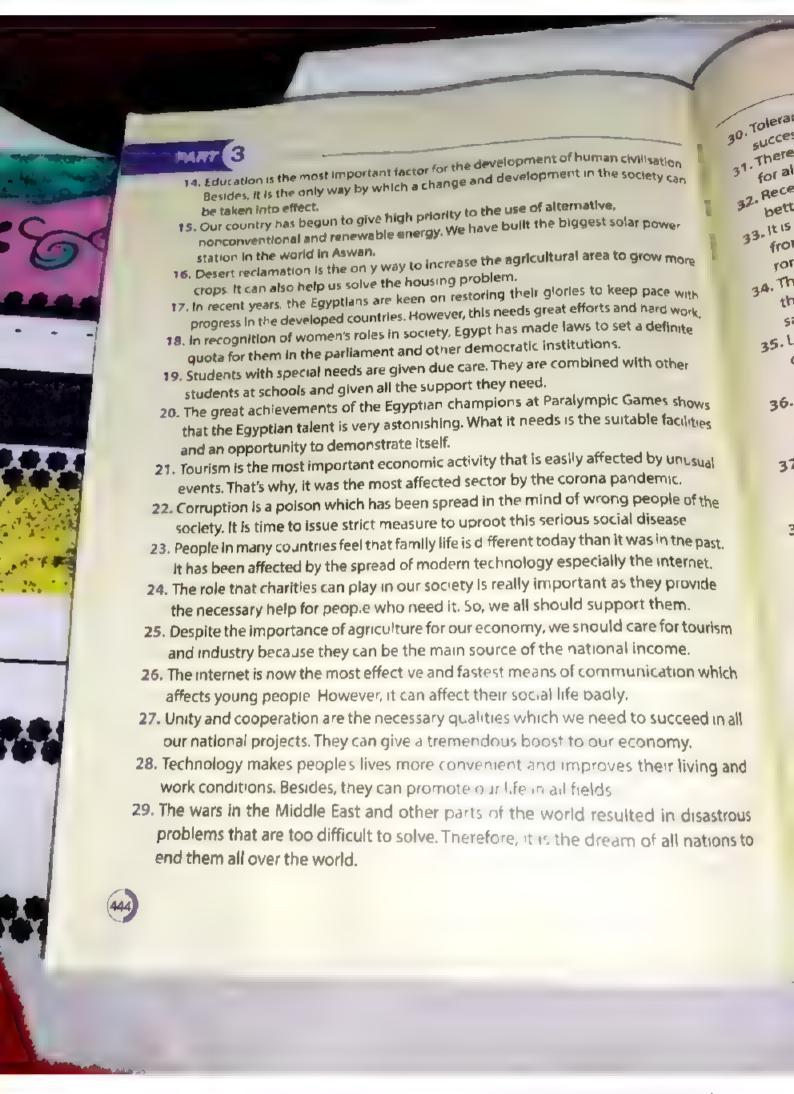
Egypt

القعل

تحتوي الجملة هنا على أكثر من زمن. الجزء الأول من الجملة يحتوي على زمن مضارع، والأخر مستقبل. انظر كيف تكون الترمة My brother has succeeded and got high marks and he will join the faculty of medicine ٢ تجب دائمنا الترجمة الحرفية







ivilisation, ociety can

power

w more

ce with d work. finite

her

hows ilities

usual

fthe

past. t. le

sm

ich

all nd

15

0

Tolerance helps groups of people to live together without arguing and to do their jobs successfully. It is an important moral quality that should be taught at an early age. There is a comprehensive plan for the educational reform which is the responsibility for all sectors. Using modern technology is at the heart of this important plan. Recent researches have showed that pleasure and positive states of mind are

better for our health. However, they aren't gained as easily as we think. It is said that poetry represents the media in which people can have time to escape from the worries of everyday life. It is admired mostly by people who believe in romanticism of life.

The United Nations urges countries of the world to issue more and more laws for the equality between men and women. It asserts that women should be given the came rights as men.

35. Lifelong learning is a continuous lifelong process, going on from birth to the end of our life. It has become a necessity to acquire the suitable skills for the world of work nowadays.

36. Environmental change is a global problem which people need to take seriously before it's too late for the planet. It has already had serious effect on many parts of the world.

37. Teachers must be aware that their methods must develop coping with the new generations. That's why the ministry of education is offering continuous training for them.

38. Because of the high cost of living, many people can't balance their work and their families. They have to work hard to support their family ignoring some important social matters.

39. Distance learning makes use of educational experts in the various branches of knowledge all over the world. It is the best solutions for those who haven't

40. A writer's experiences in life affect his works and his style. It is said that literature is the mirror in which writers reflect society's merits and demerits.

41. Encouraging children to read is a good way to increase their general knowledge. That's why school libraries should be provided with all available and exciting books.

42. Some people think that space exploration is a waste of money which should be spent wisely on earth. Yet, scientists argue that it can do any benefits to humanity. 43. Modern technology has led to many new jobs which require new skills and

qualifications. Therefore, the Egyptian government has established new universities with new colleges and departments.

PART 3

44. Our engineering abilities have given us a great deal of comfort in our lives, but we still live with uncertainty about nature. We can't control many natural phenomena such as hurricanes and earthquakes.

45. Voluntary work and sharing in society activity add much to any applicant's CV. Social service and good social skills are becoming important qualities in the world

of work.

46. Greed is considered a major source of evil that is the root cause for stealing, killing and treason. It leads greedy people to violating others' rights in order to get what he wants.

47. Many people believe that landing people on Mars isn't only science fiction. NASA has a project for this mission that is expected to complete in 2030.

48. Computer and language skills have become essential qualifications for most jobs nowadays. That's why they are given much care at schools and universities.

49. Festivals are a good opportunity for people to relax and forget the pressures of their everyday life. Hence, all countries have their own special festivals.

50. The pharaohs are considered the first great builders for all the temples and pyramids they left behind.

51. Cutting trees means that we add more and more poisons to the air we breathe.
Trees are one of the most important factors to solve global warming.

52. Throughout history, the Egyptians proved their ability to carry out great architectural projects. The Pyramids, the Suez Canal and the High Dam are great examples for this.

53. One of the disadvantages of freelance work is the irregular income which many people can't afford. However, it may suit young and ambitious employees.

54. Meeting a deadline is one of the most serious work stress which many workers can't handle. However, companies think that it is one of the best ways to do good work.

55. Modern technology has made it possible for anyone to enjoy music from other cultures around the world. Through social media, you can enjoy music from all countries.

56. Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out permanently during an eclipse. But, this is scientifically incorrect.

57. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. It is a problem that needs all efforts to eliminate.

58. Despite our advanced technological abilities, there are still many things that we cannot do. One of these things is how to achieve success and happiness in life.

59. It is the responsibility of the elders to teach the youth how to face the obstacles of their practical life. Through their experiences, they can help them avoid mistakes.

60. Rules and laws are designed to ensure fairness, safety and respect for other people's rights. People shouldn't only think of their rights ignoring others.

ives, but we henomena

a mansiate into English:

licant's CV. the world

killing and he wants. on. NASA

nost jobs 35.

sures of

athe.

d

great

many

can't ork.

tures

d

ve

s of es.

🌾 بولك الأطباء والمؤسسات الطبية على أهمية التباعد الاجتماعي وارتداء الكمامة والحفاظ على النظافة الشخصية للوقاية من

 لايتت جائمة كورونا أهمية تحقيق الاكتفاء الذائي من الغذاء حتى تأمن مصر من الأخطار التي قد تحدد الأمن القومي النيار ₹ رغم وصول بعض شركات الأدوية إلى لقامات لفيروس كورونا إلا أن اتفاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية الصحية ما زالت هامة حتى تؤاور

كان لوائحة كورونا آثار التصادية واجتماعية كبيرة ليس فقط في الدول الفتيرة ولكن أيضًا الدول الفنية، ويعتقد الغيراء إن جود عادم.

وقع استعرار انتشار فيروس كورونا في العالم إلا أن هناك من يتظاهرون عند عودة إجراءات الفلق وحظر التجول التي اضطري

تقوم الحكومة المصرية بجهود كبيرة لترشيد المياه وتوفير مصادر المياه العذبة مثل تطهير الترع وإنشاء محطات تحلية الميار حتى تتمكن من مواجعة مشكلة نقص المياه في المستقبل-

٧ تعتم الحكومة العصرية بتوفير الرعاية الصحية لكل المصريين؛ ولذا قامت بكثير من المبادرات لمُحص العرضي وتوفير الأدوية اللازمة لهم بالمجان.

٨ حققت مصر تجلفا كبيرًا في علاج أعراض الكيد في كثير من القرى المصوية من أهمها تحقيق نسب شفاء عالية لعرض الكيد الوبائي

تعتم مصر بتحسين علاقاتها مع كل دول العالم وخلصة الدول الصديقة مما يزيد من عودة مصر المكانتها المتعيزة بين دول العالم.

١٠ تشارك العرأة المصرية بفاعلية كبيرة في كل مجالات ونشاطات المجتمع والسياسة مما يؤكد دورها المتميز الذي لعبته على مر التاريخ القديم والمعاصر.

١١ إن التعليم هو أساس الثقدم للشعوب والبلاد؛ لذلك تهتم الحكومات في كل أنحاء العالم بالتطوير المستمر لكل أمواته وتوفير الإمكانيات اللازمة للمدارس.

١٣ في نظام التعليم الحديث يجب على المدرس الجيد أن يكون ملمًا بأحدث الطرق التي تفيد الطلاب، وعن أهم هذه الطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في نظم التعليم.

🦮 أسعمت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في نشر الأفكار سواء الصالحة أو الفاسدة في جميع أنحاء العالم؛ لذا يتّادي الكثيرون بفرض رقابة عليها رغم معارضة الشباب لذلك

١٤ إن تحرير العراة لا يعنى رفض التقاليد واتباع «الموضة» بل يعنى الالتزام بالمبادئ والقيم الإنسانية التي سادت المجتمع المصري عير القرون.

هُ تَعْتِيرِ الوحدة الوطنية مِنْ أَهُم تَعَائِمُ المَحِتَمِعِ المُصرِي التي تُحْمِيهِ مِنَ الْفَتَنَةُ الطائفية والصراعات الاجتماعية التي تنتشر في يعض الدول العجاورة.

١٦ لقد أثبت الشعب المصري أنه يرفض الإرهاب بكل صوره ولنن تزيده الأعمال الإرهابية إلا تصميعًا على بناء الوطن ومطربة كل الأفكار العدامة ومحاولات هدم الأوطان.

٧١ يحدّر الخبراء من الأثر السيئ لمواقع التواصل الاجتماعي على الأطفال؛ لذا يجب حمايتهم منها والحد من المشكلات التي قد يولجمونها ثنيجة الاستخدام السيئ لها.

التحمل وسائل الإعلام مسلولية تثقيف الناس وتعريفهم بحقيقة ما يجرى حولهم مما يزيد من أهمية تحرى الخبر الصادق والبعد

١٩ إن التلوث أحد أخطر التحديات التي تعدد حياة الإنسان ومستقبله على الأرض.

إن زيادة الإنتاج هي السبيل الوحيد لبناء المجتمع المثالي الذي نأمل جميعًا في الوصول إليه ولا يتحقق ذلك إلا بالعمل الجاد

PART (3)

- ج زادت مشكلة المياد مع اليوبيا من أهمية ترخيد المياه والمقاط على مياه النبل لذا يجب نشر هذا الومي بين الناس ومعالبة
- بر بنفق المكومة أموالًا طائلة على مشروعات تطوير سيناء حيث إن تطوير سيناه وتوفير فرهن العمل هو الهسيلة المثلى لمحارية
- بعد الوظيفة الحكومية همقًا يصعى إليه الشباب الطموح المتطلع إلى غد أفضل، وتشجع الحكومة ذلك التوجه بتوفير القروش
- وه يعدد الكتاب الإلكتروش مكاثة المكتبات في نشر الثقافة والمعرفة وذلك بسبب تفضيل الشباب لاستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة
- وه كان لاختراع الورق والطباعة دور كبير في نقل المعرفة والعلوم من جيل إلى جبل لكن البعض يظن أنهما سرعان ما سيصبحان
- ﴾ إنَّ القلق وضغط العمل هما العدو الجُفي الذي يسبب ضررًا ومعاناة أكثر من أي مرض أخرا لذا ينصح الأملياء بتخصيص وقت للولحة والاسترخاء
- ٧٧ تمن ندين بالكثير لوائدينا ومعلمينا الذين لم يدخروا جهدًا لتقديم كل الدعم والنصح لنا فهم مثل الشعوع التي تحترق لتضيء طريق الأخرين.
- ٨٧ أسهم مترو الأنفاق كثيرًا في حل مشكلة المواصلات في القاهرة كما أصبح وسيلة النقال الأكثر أمانًا والأقل تلويثًا مما يدفع الحكومة المصرية لبناء العزيد من الخطوط.
- 🞮 تتميز مصر بالعديد من العجائب الهندسية القديمة مثل الأهرامات والمعابد العنتشرة في جميع انحاء صعيد مصر والتي ما رُالت تَجِذَبِ اعتَمام السياح والخبراء من جميع أنحاء العالم.
 - ٣٠ أصبحت الأعاصير والفيضانات حدثًا متكررًا في الكثير من دول العالم بسبب التغير المناخي.
- ٣ حصل ثلاثة من المصريين على جائزة نوبل مما يعتبر مصدر فقر لكل المصريين ودليلًا على تميزهم في كثير من المجالات.
- ٣٢ أسممت التكنولوجيا الحديثة في تطوير طرق التعليم والاتصال بين المعلم والمتعلم مما كان له أهمية كبيرة في الاعتماد على التعليم عبر الإنترنت خلال أزمة فيروس كورونا.
 - ٣٣ يستخدم علماء النفس الموسيقا في علاج بعض الأمراض التي قد تعجز الأدوية عن علاجما.
- ٢٤ المدرس هو العمود الفقري الذي يجب الاعتماد عليه لتحقيق أي إصلاح حقيقي للتعليم مما يستلزم اطلاعه العستمر على الطرق التربوية الحبيثة.
- ٢٥ لقد حل التليفون المحمول محل القراءة وممارسة الرياضة مما أثر على صحة الشباب ومعارفهم العامة فمعظمهم يعاني من قلة المعارف العامة.
- ٣ أدت الحروب والنزاعات في الشرق الأوسط إلى تفاقم مشكلة اللاجئين في أوروبا مما يدل على أن العالم أصبح كمكان صغير يتأثر بعضه يبعض سريفا.
- ٧٧ يجب أن يدرك الجعيع أهمية دور المدرسة في تنمية القيم والأخلاق في المجتمع؛ لذا يحب أن تصبح مكانًا معتمًا لا ينفر منه الطلاب
- ٢٨ كلنا نعيش بالأمل، وبدونه يسود اليأس والتشاؤم مما يؤدي إلى آثار سيئة على حياتنا، أما التفاؤل فيؤدي إلى التجاح في كل مشروعاتنا الحالية والمستقبلية.
- ٣٠ دافع الكثير من راندات العمل الاجتماعي مثل هدي شعراوي ونبوية موسى وبنت الشاطئ عن حقوق المرأة في التعليم والعمل مثل الرحال. وكان لجمودها أثر كبير في تحقيق ذلك.
- ٤٠ لقد بدأت مصر مشروع إنشاء المقاعل النووي للاستفادة منه في توليد الكهرباء التي نحتاج إليها كأحد مصادر الطاقة المتجددة ألتى لا تلوث البيئة.

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٠ / ٢٠٠٠

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ۱۲٤/۲/۱٤/۱۰٤ رقم

